



PRO-200S series Online Manual

Contents

Appendix.	12
Online Manual.	13
Symbols Used in This Document.	14
Trademarks.	15
Licenses.	16
Basic Operations.	42
Printer Parts.	43
Front.	44
Back / Side.	46
Inside.	48
Operation Panel.	49
Entering Numbers, Letters, and Symbols.	50
Using the Printer.	52
Turning the Printer On and Off.	53
Placing Multi-purpose Tray.	55
Cautions When Printing with Multi-purpose Tray.	56
Placing a Printable Disc.	57
Before Placing a Printable Disc.	58
Placing a Printable Disc.	59
Removing a Printable Disc.	63
Placing Printable Nail Stickers.	65
Before Placing Printable Nail Stickers.	66
Placing Printable Nail Stickers.	67
Removing Printable Nail Stickers.	71
Handling Paper.	73
Loading Paper.	74
Paper Sources to Load Paper.	75
Loading Paper in the Top Feed.	77
Loading Paper in the Manual Feed Tray.	81
Loading Envelopes in the Top Feed.	85
Register Paper Information.	89

Information about Paper.	91
Media Types You Can Use.	92
Paper Load Limit.	96
Unsupported Media Types.	99
Handling Paper.	100
Before Printing on Art Paper.	101
Settings.	103
Changing Settings from Operation Panel.	104
LCD and Operation Panel.	105
Setting Items on Operation Panel.	108
Maintenance.	109
LAN settings.	110
Print settings.	117
Other printer settings.	118
Language selection.	119
Firmware update.	120
Paper-related settings.	121
Energy saving settings.	122
Quiet setting.	123
Reset settings.	124
Web service setup.	125
Printer information.	126
AirPrint print settings.	127
Smartphone photo print settings.	128
Setting Administrator Password on Operation Panel.	129
Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer (Windows).	131
Changing the Print Options.	132
Managing the Printer Power.	133
Reducing the Printer Noise.	135
Changing the Printer Operation Mode.	136
Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer (macOS).	138
Registering a Changed Printing Profile.	139
Managing the Printer Power.	140
Changing the Printer Operation Mode.	141
Updating Media Information in Printer Driver.	142

Correcting Media Information in Printer Driver (When Printer Used in Shared Environment). . . .	144
Reducing the Printer Noise.	145
Handling Printer Configuration Using the Web Browser.	146
Configuration Changes / Display Printer Status Using Web Browser.	147
Registering Printer's Root Certificate to Web Browser for SSL/TLS Communication (Remote UI)	152
Settings That Can Be Changed From the Browser.	156
Setting Password.	158
Generating Server Certificate.	160
Not Accessible From Web Browser.	163
Registering Printer's Root Certificate to Web Browser for SSL/TLS Communication (Remote UI). . . .	152
Registering Printer's Root Certificate to Local Computer for SSL Communication.	168
Network Setting.	174
Sharing the Printer on a Network (Windows).	175
Setting Up a Shared Printer.	176
Restrictions on Printer Sharing.	178
Sharing the Printer on a Network (macOS).	179
Settings on Print Server.	180
Settings on Client PC.	181
Restrictions on Printer Sharing.	182
Maintenance.	183
Adjustments for Better Print Quality.	185
Maintenance Procedure.	186
Checking for Nozzle Clogging.	188
Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern.	189
Cleaning the Print Head.	191
Deep Print Head Cleaning.	193
Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Align Colors.	195
Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Align Colors.	196
Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Align Colors.	198
Replacing Consumables.	201
Replacing Ink Tanks.	202
Checking Ink Level.	207
Cleaning the Printer.	208

Cleaning the Printer Exterior.	209
Cleaning Paper Feed Rollers.	210
Performing Bottom Plate Cleaning.	214
Performing Maintenance Functions from Your Computer (Windows).	216
Opening the Maintenance Tool (Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool).	217
Cleaning the Print Heads.	219
Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern.	221
Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool Description.	222
Performing Maintenance Functions from Your Computer (macOS).	227
Opening Remote UI for Maintenance.	228
Cleaning the Print Heads.	229
Checking Ink Status from Your Computer.	231
Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern.	232
Other Maintenance.	233
Transporting Your Printer.	234
Printer Information.	235
Safety.	236
Safety Precautions.	237
Regulatory Information.	239
WEEE.	241
Handling Precautions.	254
When Repairing, Lending, or Disposing of the Printer.	255
Legal Restrictions on Printing.	256
Ink Tips.	257
Specifications.	258
Specifications.	259
Print Area.	262
Printing Area.	263
Standard Sizes.	265
Sizes for 0.98 inch (25 mm) Margin Paper.	266
Envelopes.	267
Printable Discs.	268
Printing.	269

Printing from Your Computer (Windows).	270
Basic Printing Setup.	271
Main Controls (Basic Settings Tab).	273
Basic Settings Tab Description.	274
Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Media Type).	282
Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Paper Size).	284
Registering a Frequently Used Printing Profile.	286
Preventing Printing Errors.	288
Set Media Type, Quality, etc. (Media/Quality Tab).	289
Media/Quality Tab Description.	290
Switching the Paper Source to Match the Purpose.	296
Printing a Color Document in Monochrome.	298
Adjusting Tone.	300
Specifying Color Correction.	303
Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data.	304
Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver.	306
Printing with ICC Profiles.	308
Interpreting the ICC Profile.	311
Adjusting Color Balance.	312
Adjusting Brightness.	314
Adjusting Contrast.	316
Set the Layout of Printed Documents (Page Setup Tab).	318
Page Setup Tab Description.	319
Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order.	329
Perform Borderless Printing.	331
Page Layout Printing.	333
Tiling/Poster Printing.	334
Booklet Printing.	336
Duplex Printing.	337
Setting Up Envelope Printing.	338
Printing on Postcards.	339
Setting Paper Dimensions (Custom Size).	340
Overview of the Printer Driver.	342
Canon IJ Printer Driver.	343
Opening Printer Driver's Setup Screen.	344

Canon IJ Status Monitor.	345
Checking Ink Status from Your Computer.	346
Instructions for Use (Printer Driver).	347
Canon IJ Preview.	349
Updating Media Information in Printer Driver.	350
Deleting the Undesired Print Job.	352
Maintenance Tab Description.	353
Canon IJ Status Monitor Description.	356
Canon IJ Preview Description.	359
Updating the Driver.	362
Printing from Your Computer (macOS).	364
Basic Printing Setup.	365
Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Media Type).	368
Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Paper Size).	370
Various Printing Methods.	372
Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order.	373
Perform Borderless Printing.	375
Scaled Printing.	377
Page Layout Printing.	378
Setting Up Envelope Printing.	380
Printing on Postcards.	381
Setting Paper Dimensions (Custom Size).	382
Setting the Stapling Margin.	383
Scaling the Printing to Fit the Paper Size.	385
Switching the Paper Source to Match the Purpose.	387
Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data.	389
Setting the Print Quality Level (Custom).	390
Printing a Color Document in Monochrome.	391
Specifying Color Correction.	392
Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data.	394
Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver.	396
Printing with ICC Profiles (Specifying an ICC Profile from the Application Software).	398
Printing with ICC Profiles (Specifying an ICC Profile from the Printer Driver).	400
Interpreting the ICC Profile.	402
Adjusting Tone.	403

Adjusting Color Balance.	406
Adjusting Brightness.	408
Adjusting Contrast.	409
Printing Using AirPrint.	410
macOS Printer Driver.	412
Overview of the Printer Driver.	413
Canon IJ Printer Driver.	414
How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Dialog.	415
Page Setup Dialog.	416
Print Dialog.	417
Canon IJ Printer Utility2.	419
Opening the Canon IJ Printer Utility2.	420
Displaying the Printing Status Screen.	421
Instructions for Use (Printer Driver).	422
Deleting the Undesired Print Job.	423
Description of Print Dialog.	424
Quality & Media.	425
Color Options.	427
Advanced Paper Settings.	429
Page Processing.	430
Updating the Printer Driver.	431
Installing the Printer Driver.	432
Obtaining the Latest Printer Driver.	433
Delete the Unnecessary Canon IJ Printer from the Printer List.	434
Before Installing the Printer Driver.	435
Printing from Printer.	436
Printing Templates Such as Lined or Graph Paper.	437
Frequently Asked Questions.	439
Network Settings and Common Problems.	443
Network Communication Problems.	446
Cannot Find Printer on Network (Windows/macOS).	447
Cannot Find Printer on Network.	448
Wireless Router Problems.	453

Network Key (Password) Unknown.	454
Printer Cannot Be Used After Replacing Wireless Router or Changed Router Settings.	456
Printer Settings/Smartphone/Tablet Troubles for Network.	458
Solve Network Troubles with The Printer's Diagnostic Functions.	459
Checking Network Information of Printer.	467
Printing Network Settings.	470
Restoring Printer's LAN Settings to Defaults.	476
Default Network Settings.	477
Connecting with Wireless Direct.	479
Cannot Print from Smartphone/Tablet.	483
Printing Problems.	487
Printer Does Not Print.	488
Printer Does Not Pick Up or Feed the Paper/"No Paper" Error.	493
Cannot Print on the Disc Label.	496
Ink Does Not Come Out/Blurry or Fuzzy/Inaccurate or Bleeding Colors/Streaks.	498
Lines Are Misaligned/Distorted.	501
Paper Is Smudged/Printed Surface Is Scratched/Ink Blots/Paper Curl.	503
Lines Incomplete or Missing (Windows).	507
Back of Paper Is Smudged.	509
Uneven or Streaked Colors.	511
Change to Offline (Windows)/Cannot Communicate (Windows).	513
Mechanical Problems.	515
Printer Does Not Turn On.	516
Printer Turns Off Unexpectedly or Repeatedly.	517
USB Connection Problems.	518
Switching Printer's Connection to Network or Devices.	520
Wrong Language Appears in Operation Panel.	523
Installation and Download Problems.	524
Failed to MP Drivers (Printer Driver) Installation (Windows).	525
Cannot Proceed Beyond Printer Connection Screen (Cannot Find Printer Connected via USB).	527
Updating MP Drivers (Printer Driver) in Network Environment (Windows).	529
Errors and Messages.	530
When Error Occurred.	531
Message Is Displayed.	533
Connecting to a Printer.	536

Restrictions.	539
Detect Same Printer Name.	541
Switching Printer's Connection to Network or Devices.	520
Network Connection Tips (Windows/macOS).	545
Setting Up IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise).	546
Wi-Fi Connection Assistant (Windows).	550
Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.	551
Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.	552
Diagnosing and Repairing Network Settings.	553
Performing/Changing Network Settings.	554
Canon Wi-Fi Connection Assistant Screen.	555
Performing Network Settings.	559
Performing/Changing Wired LAN Connection (Ethernet Cable) Settings (Supported models only)	560
Performing/Changing Wi-Fi Settings.	563
Assigning Printer Information.	568
List of Models Which Does Not Support Diagnosis and Repair Function.	569
List of Models Which Does Not Support IPv6 Configuration via USB Connection.	570
Wi-Fi Connection Assistant (macOS).	572
Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.	573
Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.	574
Diagnosing and Repairing Network Settings.	575
List of Models Which Does Not Support Diagnosis and Repair Function.	576
List of Support Codes for Printer Errors.	577
List of Support Codes for Printer Errors (Paper Jams).	579
1300.	580
Paper Is Jammed inside Printer.	583
1000.	586
1013.	588
1200.	589
1250.	590
1401.	591
1600.	592
1660.	593

1688.	594
1689.	595
1700.	596
1890.	597
2114.	598
2115.	601
4103.	604
5100.	605
5200.	606
5B00.	607
6000.	608
C000.	609

Appendix

- [Online Manual](#)
- [Symbols Used in This Document](#)
- [Trademarks](#)
- [Licenses](#)

Online Manual

* Models used in illustrations and videos in this manual, may differ from your model.

Screenshots in This Manual

For Windows:

The screenshots used in this manual are the screens that appear when the operating system Windows 10 is used.

For macOS:

The screenshots used in this manual are the screens that appear when the operating system macOS Ventura 13 is used.

Symbols Used in This Document

Warning

Instructions that, if ignored, could result in death, serious personal injury, or property damage caused by incorrect operation of the equipment. These must be observed for safe operation.

Caution

Instructions that, if ignored, could result in personal injury or property damage caused by incorrect operation of the equipment. These must be observed for safe operation.

Important

Instructions including important information that must be observed to avoid damage and injury or improper use of the product. Be sure to read these instructions.

Note

Instructions including notes for operation and additional explanations.

Basics

Instructions explaining basic operations of your product.

Note

- Icons may vary depending on your product.

Trademarks

- Microsoft, Excel, Internet Explorer, Microsoft Edge, Microsoft Store, OneDrive, PowerPoint, Windows and Windows Vista are trademarks of the Microsoft group of companies.
- This device incorporates exFAT technology licensed from Microsoft.
- Mac, Mac OS, macOS, OS X, AirPort, App Store, AirPrint, the AirPrint logo, Safari, Bonjour, iPad, iPad Air, iPad mini, iPadOS, iPhone and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- The Mopria® word mark and the Mopria® Logo are registered and/or unregistered trademarks of Mopria Alliance, Inc. in the United States and other countries. Unauthorized use is strictly prohibited.
- IOS is a trademark or registered trademark of Cisco in the U.S. and other countries and is used under license.
- Google Cloud Print, Google Chrome, Chrome OS, Chromebook, Android, Google Drive, Google Apps and Google Analytics are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Google LLC. Google Play and Google Play Logo are trademarks of Google LLC.
- Adobe, Acrobat, Flash, Photoshop, Illustrator, Adobe RGB and Adobe RGB (1998) are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- Adobe, Acrobat, Flash, Photoshop, Photoshop Elements, Lightroom, Adobe RGB and Adobe RGB (1998) are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- Amazon, Echo and Alexa are trademarks of Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates.
- Google, Google Home, and YouTube are trademarks of Google LLC.
- LINE is a registered trademark or trademark of LY Corporation.
- LINE Clova is a registered trademark of LY Corporation.
- Google Docs, and Google Drive are trademarks of Google LLC.
- App Store is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- Bluetooth is a trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc., U.S.A. and licensed to Canon Inc.
- AOSS™ is a trademark of BUFFALO INC.
- Autodesk and AutoCAD are registered trademarks or trademarks of Autodesk, Inc., and/or its subsidiaries and/or affiliates in the USA and/or other countries.
- QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED in Japan and in other countries.
- HP-GL and HP-GL/2 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of HP Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.
- Mozilla Firefox is a trademark or registered trademark of Mozilla Foundation in the U.S. and/or other countries.
- Wi-Fi, WPA, WPA2 and WPA3 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance.
- All other company names and products mentioned in this guide may be registered trademarks or trademarks of their respective companies.

Licenses

Copyright (c) 2003-2015 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of Apple Inc. ("Apple") nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY APPLE AND ITS CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL APPLE OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Apache License

Version 2.0, January 2004

<http://www.apache.org/licenses/>

TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR USE, REPRODUCTION, AND DISTRIBUTION

1. Definitions.

"License" shall mean the terms and conditions for use, reproduction, and distribution as defined by Sections 1 through 9 of this document.

"Licensor" shall mean the copyright owner or entity authorized by the copyright owner that is granting the License.

"Legal Entity" shall mean the union of the acting entity and all other entities that control, are controlled by, or are under common control with that entity. For the purposes of this definition, "control" means (i) the power, direct or indirect, to cause the direction or management of such entity, whether by contract or otherwise, or (ii) ownership of fifty percent (50%) or more of the outstanding shares, or (iii) beneficial ownership of such entity.

"You" (or "Your") shall mean an individual or Legal Entity exercising permissions granted by this License.

"Source" form shall mean the preferred form for making modifications, including but not limited to software source code, documentation source, and configuration files.

"Object" form shall mean any form resulting from mechanical transformation or translation of a Source form, including but not limited to compiled object code, generated documentation, and conversions to other media types.

"Work" shall mean the work of authorship, whether in Source or Object form, made available under the License, as indicated by a copyright notice that is included in or attached to the work (an example is provided in the Appendix below).

"Derivative Works" shall mean any work, whether in Source or Object form, that is based on (or derived from) the Work and for which the editorial revisions, annotations, elaborations, or other modifications represent, as a whole, an original work of authorship. For the purposes of this License, Derivative Works shall not include works that remain separable from, or merely link (or bind by name) to the interfaces of, the Work and Derivative Works thereof.

"Contribution" shall mean any work of authorship, including the original version of the Work and any modifications or additions to that Work or Derivative Works thereof, that is intentionally submitted to Licensor for inclusion in the Work by the copyright owner or by an individual or Legal Entity authorized to submit on behalf of the copyright owner. For the purposes of this definition, "submitted" means any form of electronic, verbal, or written communication sent to the Licensor or its representatives, including but not limited to communication on electronic mailing lists, source code control systems, and issue tracking systems that are managed by, or on behalf of, the Licensor for the purpose of discussing and improving the Work, but excluding communication that is conspicuously marked or otherwise designated in writing by the copyright owner as "Not a Contribution."

"Contributor" shall mean Licensor and any individual or Legal Entity on behalf of whom a Contribution has been received by Licensor and subsequently incorporated within the Work.

2. Grant of Copyright License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable copyright license to reproduce, prepare Derivative Works of, publicly display, publicly perform, sublicense, and distribute the Work and such Derivative Works in Source or Object form.
3. Grant of Patent License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable (except as stated in this section) patent license to make, have made, use, offer to sell, sell, import, and otherwise transfer the Work, where such license applies only to those patent claims licensable by such Contributor that are necessarily infringed by their Contribution(s) alone or by combination of their Contribution(s) with the Work to which such Contribution(s) was submitted. If You institute patent litigation against any entity (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit) alleging that the Work or a Contribution incorporated within the Work constitutes direct or contributory patent infringement, then any patent licenses granted to You under this License for that Work shall terminate as of the date such litigation is filed.
4. Redistribution. You may reproduce and distribute copies of the Work or Derivative Works thereof in any medium, with or without modifications, and in Source or Object form, provided that You meet the following conditions:
 1. You must give any other recipients of the Work or Derivative Works a copy of this License; and
 2. You must cause any modified files to carry prominent notices stating that You changed the files; and

3. You must retain, in the Source form of any Derivative Works that You distribute, all copyright, patent, trademark, and attribution notices from the Source form of the Work, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works; and
4. If the Work includes a "NOTICE" text file as part of its distribution, then any Derivative Works that You distribute must include a readable copy of the attribution notices contained within such NOTICE file, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works, in at least one of the following places: within a NOTICE text file distributed as part of the Derivative Works; within the Source form or documentation, if provided along with the Derivative Works; or, within a display generated by the Derivative Works, if and wherever such third-party notices normally appear. The contents of the NOTICE file are for informational purposes only and do not modify the License. You may add Your own attribution notices within Derivative Works that You distribute, alongside or as an addendum to the NOTICE text from the Work, provided that such additional attribution notices cannot be construed as modifying the License.

You may add Your own copyright statement to Your modifications and may provide additional or different license terms and conditions for use, reproduction, or distribution of Your modifications, or for any such Derivative Works as a whole, provided Your use, reproduction, and distribution of the Work otherwise complies with the conditions stated in this License.

5. Submission of Contributions. Unless You explicitly state otherwise, any Contribution intentionally submitted for inclusion in the Work by You to the Licensor shall be under the terms and conditions of this License, without any additional terms or conditions. Notwithstanding the above, nothing herein shall supersede or modify the terms of any separate license agreement you may have executed with Licensor regarding such Contributions.
6. Trademarks. This License does not grant permission to use the trade names, trademarks, service marks, or product names of the Licensor, except as required for reasonable and customary use in describing the origin of the Work and reproducing the content of the NOTICE file.
7. Disclaimer of Warranty. Unless required by applicable law or agreed to in writing, Licensor provides the Work (and each Contributor provides its Contributions) on an "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, either express or implied, including, without limitation, any warranties or conditions of TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. You are solely responsible for determining the appropriateness of using or redistributing the Work and assume any risks associated with Your exercise of permissions under this License.
8. Limitation of Liability. In no event and under no legal theory, whether in tort (including negligence), contract, or otherwise, unless required by applicable law (such as deliberate and grossly negligent acts) or agreed to in writing, shall any Contributor be liable to You for damages, including any direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages of any character arising as a result of this License or out of the use or inability to use the Work (including but not limited to damages for loss of goodwill, work stoppage, computer failure or malfunction, or any and all other commercial damages or losses), even if such Contributor has been advised of the possibility of such damages.
9. Accepting Warranty or Additional Liability. While redistributing the Work or Derivative Works thereof, You may choose to offer, and charge a fee for, acceptance of support, warranty, indemnity, or other liability obligations and/or rights consistent with this License. However, in accepting such obligations, You may act only on Your own behalf and on Your sole responsibility, not on behalf of any other Contributor, and only if You agree to indemnify, defend, and hold each Contributor harmless for any liability incurred by, or claims asserted against, such Contributor by reason of your accepting any

such warranty or additional liability.
END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

---- Part 1: CMU/UCD copyright notice: (BSD like) ----

Copyright 1989, 1991, 1992 by Carnegie Mellon University

Derivative Work - 1996, 1998-2000

Copyright 1996, 1998-2000 The Regents of the University of California

All Rights Reserved

Permission to use, copy, modify and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose and without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice appears in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation, and that the name of CMU and The Regents of the University of California not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific written permission.

CMU AND THE REGENTS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL CMU OR THE REGENTS OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM THE LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

---- Part 2: Networks Associates Technology, Inc copyright notice (BSD) ----

Copyright (c) 2001-2003, Networks Associates Technology, Inc

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- * Neither the name of the Networks Associates Technology, Inc nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 3: Cambridge Broadband Ltd. copyright notice (BSD) ----

Portions of this code are copyright (c) 2001-2003, Cambridge Broadband Ltd.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- * The name of Cambridge Broadband Ltd. may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER ``AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 4: Sun Microsystems, Inc. copyright notice (BSD) ----

Copyright c 2003 Sun Microsystems, Inc., 4150 Network Circle, Santa Clara, California 95054, U.S.A. All rights reserved.

Use is subject to license terms below.

This distribution may include materials developed by third parties.

Sun, Sun Microsystems, the Sun logo and Solaris are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- * Neither the name of the Sun Microsystems, Inc. nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR

SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 5: Sparta, Inc copyright notice (BSD) -----

Copyright (c) 2003-2012, Sparta, Inc

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- * Neither the name of Sparta, Inc nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 6: Cisco/BUPTNIC copyright notice (BSD) -----

Copyright (c) 2004, Cisco, Inc and Information Network Center of Beijing University of Posts and Telecommunications.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- * Neither the name of Cisco, Inc, Beijing University of Posts and Telecommunications, nor the names of their contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS ``AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE

ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 7: Fabasoft R&D Software GmbH & Co KG copyright notice (BSD) ----

Copyright (c) Fabasoft R&D Software GmbH & Co KG, 2003 oss@fabasoft.com

Author: Bernhard Penz <bernhard.penz@fabasoft.com>

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- * The name of Fabasoft R&D Software GmbH & Co KG or any of its subsidiaries, brand or product names may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER ``AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 8: Apple Inc. copyright notice (BSD) ----

Copyright (c) 2007 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of Apple Inc. ("Apple") nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY APPLE AND ITS CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES

OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL APPLE OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 9: ScienceLogic, LLC copyright notice (BSD) ----

Copyright (c) 2009, ScienceLogic, LLC

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- * Neither the name of ScienceLogic, LLC nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 10: Lennart Poettering copyright notice (BSD-like) ----

Copyright 2010 Lennart Poettering

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

---- Part 11: IETF copyright notice (BSD) ----

Copyright (c) 2013 IETF Trust and the persons identified as authors of the code. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

- * Neither the name of Internet Society, IETF or IETF Trust, nor the names of specific contributors, may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 12: Arista Networks copyright notice (BSD) ----

Copyright (c) 2013, Arista Networks, Inc.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

- * Neither the name of Arista Networks, Inc. nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 13: VMware, Inc. copyright notice (BSD) ----

Copyright (c) 2016, VMware, Inc.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

* Neither the name of VMware, Inc. nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

---- Part 14: USC/Information Sciences Institute copyright notice (BSD) ----

Copyright (c) 2017-2018, Information Sciences Institute

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

* Neither the name of Information Sciences Institute nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

MIT License

Copyright (c) 1998, 1999, 2000 Thai Open Source Software Center Ltd

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Copyright 2000 Computing Research Labs, New Mexico State University

Copyright 2001-2015 Francesco Zappa Nardelli

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COMPUTING RESEARCH LAB OR NEW MEXICO STATE UNIVERSITY BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Written by Joel Sherrill <joel@OARcorp.com>.

COPYRIGHT (c) 1989-2000.

On-Line Applications Research Corporation (OAR).

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose without fee is hereby granted, provided that this entire notice is included in all copies of any software which is or includes a copy or modification of this software.

THIS SOFTWARE IS BEING PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY. IN PARTICULAR, THE AUTHOR MAKES NO REPRESENTATION OR WARRANTY OF ANY KIND CONCERNING THE MERCHANTABILITY OF THIS SOFTWARE OR ITS FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

(1) Red Hat Incorporated

Copyright (c) 1994-2009 Red Hat, Inc. All rights reserved.

This copyrighted material is made available to anyone wishing to use, modify, copy, or redistribute it subject to the terms and conditions of the BSD License. This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY expressed or implied, including the implied warranties of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. A copy of this license is available at <http://www.opensource.org/licenses>. Any Red Hat trademarks that are incorporated in the source code or documentation are not subject to the BSD License and may only be used or replicated with the express permission of Red Hat, Inc.

(2) University of California, Berkeley

Copyright (c) 1981-2000 The Regents of the University of California.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- * Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The FreeType Project LICENSE

2006-Jan-27

Copyright 1996-2002, 2006 by

David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg

Introduction

=====

The FreeType Project is distributed in several archive packages; some of them may contain, in addition to the FreeType font engine, various tools and contributions which rely on, or relate to, the FreeType Project.

This license applies to all files found in such packages, and which do not fall under their own explicit license. The license affects thus the FreeType font engine, the test programs, documentation and makefiles, at the very least.

This license was inspired by the BSD, Artistic, and IJG (Independent JPEG Group) licenses, which all encourage inclusion and use of free software in commercial and freeware products alike. As a consequence, its main points are that:

- o We don't promise that this software works. However, we will be interested in any kind of bug reports. ('as is' distribution)

- o You can use this software for whatever you want, in parts or full form, without having to pay us. ('royalty-free' usage)

- o You may not pretend that you wrote this software. If you use it, or only parts of it, in a program, you must acknowledge somewhere in your documentation that you have used the FreeType code. ('credits')

We specifically permit and encourage the inclusion of this software, with or without modifications, in commercial products.

We disclaim all warranties covering The FreeType Project and assume no liability related to The FreeType Project.

Finally, many people asked us for a preferred form for a credit/disclaimer to use in compliance with this license. We thus encourage you to use the following text:

""

Portions of this software are copyright © <year> The FreeType Project (www.freetype.org). All rights reserved.

""

Please replace <year> with the value from the FreeType version you actually use.

Legal Terms

=====

0. Definitions

Throughout this license, the terms 'package', 'FreeType Project', and 'FreeType archive' refer to the set of files originally distributed by the authors (David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg) as the 'FreeType Project', be they named as alpha, beta or final release.

'You' refers to the licensee, or person using the project, where 'using' is a generic term including compiling the project's source code as well as linking it to form a 'program' or 'executable'.

This program is referred to as 'a program using the FreeType engine'.

This license applies to all files distributed in the original FreeType Project, including all source code, binaries and documentation, unless otherwise stated in the file in its original, unmodified form as distributed in the original archive.

If you are unsure whether or not a particular file is covered by this license, you must contact us to verify this.

The FreeType Project is copyright (C) 1996-2000 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg. All rights reserved except as specified below.

1. No Warranty

THE FREETYPE PROJECT IS PROVIDED 'AS IS' WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT WILL ANY OF THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES CAUSED BY THE USE OR THE INABILITY TO USE, OF THE FREETYPE PROJECT.

2. Redistribution

This license grants a worldwide, royalty-free, perpetual and irrevocable right and license to use, execute, perform, compile, display, copy, create derivative works of, distribute and sublicense the FreeType Project (in both source and object code forms) and derivative works thereof for any purpose; and to authorize others to exercise some or all of the rights granted herein, subject to the following conditions:

- o Redistribution of source code must retain this license file ('FTL.TXT') unaltered; any additions, deletions or changes to the original files must be clearly indicated in accompanying documentation. The copyright notices of the unaltered, original files must be preserved in all copies of source files.

- o Redistribution in binary form must provide a disclaimer that states that the software is based in part of the work of the FreeType Team, in the distribution documentation. We also encourage you to put an URL to the FreeType web page in your documentation, though this isn't mandatory.

These conditions apply to any software derived from or based on the FreeType Project, not just the unmodified files. If you use our work, you must acknowledge us. However, no fee need be paid to us.

3. Advertising

Neither the FreeType authors and contributors nor you shall use the name of the other for commercial, advertising, or promotional purposes without specific prior written permission.

We suggest, but do not require, that you use one or more of the following phrases to refer to this software in your documentation or advertising materials: 'FreeType Project', 'FreeType Engine', 'FreeType library', or 'FreeType Distribution'.

As you have not signed this license, you are not required to accept it. However, as the FreeType Project is copyrighted material, only this license, or another one contracted with the authors, grants you the right to use, distribute, and modify it.

Therefore, by using, distributing, or modifying the FreeType Project, you indicate that you understand and accept all the terms of this license.

4. Contacts

There are two mailing lists related to FreeType:

o freetype@nongnu.org

Discusses general use and applications of FreeType, as well as future and wanted additions to the library and distribution.

If you are looking for support, start in this list if you haven't found anything to help you in the documentation.

o freetype-devel@nongnu.org

Discusses bugs, as well as engine internals, design issues, specific licenses, porting, etc.

Our home page can be found at

<http://www.freetype.org>

--- end of FTL.TXT ---

The TWAIN Toolkit is distributed as is. The developer and distributors of the TWAIN Toolkit expressly disclaim all implied, express or statutory warranties including, without limitation, the implied warranties of merchantability, noninfringement of third party rights and fitness for a particular purpose. Neither the developers nor the distributors will be liable for damages, whether direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential, as a result of the reproduction, modification, distribution or other use of the TWAIN Toolkit.

JSON for Modern C++

Copyright (c) 2013-2017 Niels Lohmann

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Copyright (c) 2011 - 2015 ARM LIMITED

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of ARM nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright (c) 2014, Kenneth MacKay

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright (c) 2006, CRYPTOGAMS by <appro@openssl.org> All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain copyright notices, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- * Neither the name of the CRYPTOGAMS nor the names of its copyright holder and contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

ALTERNATIVELY, provided that this notice is retained in full, this product may be distributed under the terms of the GNU General Public License (GPL), in which case the provisions of the GPL apply INSTEAD OF those given above.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

ISC License

Copyright (c) 2013-2017

Frank Denis <j at pureftpd dot org>

Permission to use, copy, modify, and/or distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND THE AUTHOR DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Copyright (c) 2008 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc.

All rights reserved.

This code is derived from software contributed to The NetBSD Foundation by Lennart Augustsson (lennart@augustsson.net) at Carlstedt Research & Technology.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE NETBSD FOUNDATION, INC. AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR

PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright (c) 2000 Intel Corporation

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- * Neither name of Intel Corporation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL INTEL OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Lua

Copyright © 1994–2014 Lua.org, PUC-Rio.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated

documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the

rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to

permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

LuaSocket

LuaSocket 2.0.2 license

Copyright © 2004-2007 Diego Nehab

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

LuneScript

Copyright (c) 2018 ifritJP

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Copyright (c) 2002-2019, Jouni Malinen <j@w1.fi> and contributors
All Rights Reserved.

This software may be distributed, used, and modified under the terms of BSD license:

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name(s) of the above-listed copyright holder(s) nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright (C) 2019, Broadcom Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and/or distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND THE AUTHOR DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

The certificate files "Amazon Root CA 1", "Amazon Root CA 2", "Amazon Root CA 4" are licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NoDerivatives 4.0 International License.

The following applies only to products supporting Wi-Fi.

(c) 2009-2013 by Jeff Mott. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions, and the following disclaimer.
- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions, and the following disclaimer in the documentation or other materials provided with the distribution.
- * Neither the name CryptoJS nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS," AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright 2008, Google Inc.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- * Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

* Neither the name of Google Inc. nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS AS IS AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright (c) 1998-2010, Brian Gladman, Worcester, UK. All rights reserved.

The redistribution and use of this software (with or without changes) is allowed without the payment of fees or royalties provided that: source code distributions include the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer; binary distributions include the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in their documentation.

This software is provided 'as is' with no explicit or implied warranties in respect of its operation, including, but not limited to, correctness and fitness for purpose.

Disclaimer: IMPORTANT: This Apple software is supplied to you, by Apple Inc. ("Apple"), in your capacity as a current, and in good standing, Licensee in the MFi Licensing Program. Use of this Apple software is governed by and subject to the terms and conditions of your MFi License, including, but not limited to, the restrictions specified in the provision entitled "Public Software", and is further subject to your agreement to the following additional terms, and your agreement that the use, installation, modification or redistribution of this Apple software constitutes acceptance of these additional terms. If you do not agree with these additional terms, please do not use, install, modify or redistribute this Apple software.

Subject to all of these terms and in consideration of your agreement to abide by them, Apple grants you, for as long as you are a current and in good-standing MFi Licensee, a personal, non-exclusive license, under Apple's copyrights in this original Apple software (the "Apple Software"), to use, reproduce, and modify the Apple Software in source form, and to use, reproduce, modify, and redistribute the Apple Software, with or without modifications, in binary form. While you may not redistribute the Apple Software in source form, should you redistribute the Apple Software in binary form, you must retain this notice and the following text and disclaimers in all such redistributions of the Apple Software. Neither the name, trademarks, service marks, or logos of Apple Inc. may be used to endorse or promote products derived from the Apple Software without specific prior written permission from Apple. Except as expressly stated in this notice, no other rights or licenses, express or implied, are granted by Apple herein, including but not limited to any patent rights that

may be infringed by your derivative works or by other works in which the Apple Software may be incorporated.

Unless you explicitly state otherwise, if you provide any ideas, suggestions, recommendations, bug fixes or enhancements to Apple in connection with this software ("Feedback"), you hereby grant to Apple a non-exclusive, fully paid-up, perpetual, irrevocable, worldwide license to make, use, reproduce, incorporate, modify, display, perform, sell, make or have made derivative works of, distribute (directly or indirectly) and sublicense, such Feedback in connection with Apple products and services. Providing this Feedback is voluntary, but if you do provide Feedback to Apple, you acknowledge and agree that Apple may exercise the license granted above without the payment of royalties or further consideration to Participant.

The Apple Software is provided by Apple on an "AS IS" basis. APPLE MAKES NO WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, REGARDING THE APPLE SOFTWARE OR ITS USE AND OPERATION ALONE OR IN COMBINATION WITH YOUR PRODUCTS.

IN NO EVENT SHALL APPLE BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE, REPRODUCTION, MODIFICATION AND/OR DISTRIBUTION OF THE APPLE SOFTWARE, HOWEVER CAUSED AND WHETHER UNDER THEORY OF CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), STRICT LIABILITY OR OTHERWISE, EVEN IF APPLE HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Copyright (C) 2009 Apple Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Copyright (c) 2012-2013 Apple Inc. All rights reserved.

Copyright (C) 2013 Apple Inc. All Rights Reserved.

The following applies only to products supporting the cloud service (formerly known as PIXUS Cloud Link, PIXMA Cloud Link, or MAXIFY Cloud Link).

THE BASIC LIBRARY FUNCTIONS

Written by: Philip Hazel

Email local part: ph10

Email domain: cam.ac.uk

University of Cambridge Computing Service, Cambridge, England.

Copyright (c) 1997-2012 University of Cambridge

All rights reserved.

PCRE JUST-IN-TIME COMPILATION SUPPORT

Written by: Zoltan Herczeg
Email local part: hzmester
Email domain: freemail.hu
Copyright(c) 2010-2012 Zoltan Herczeg
All rights reserved.

STACK-LESS JUST-IN-TIME COMPILER

Written by: Zoltan Herczeg
Email local part: hzmester
Email domain: freemail.hu
Copyright(c) 2009-2012 Zoltan Herczeg
All rights reserved.

THE C++ WRAPPER FUNCTIONS

Contributed by: Google Inc.
Copyright (c) 2007-2012, Google Inc.
All rights reserved.

THE "BSD" LICENCE

-----Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

* Neither the name of the University of Cambridge nor the name of Google Inc. nor the names of their contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE

LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

Basic Operations

➤ **Printer Parts**

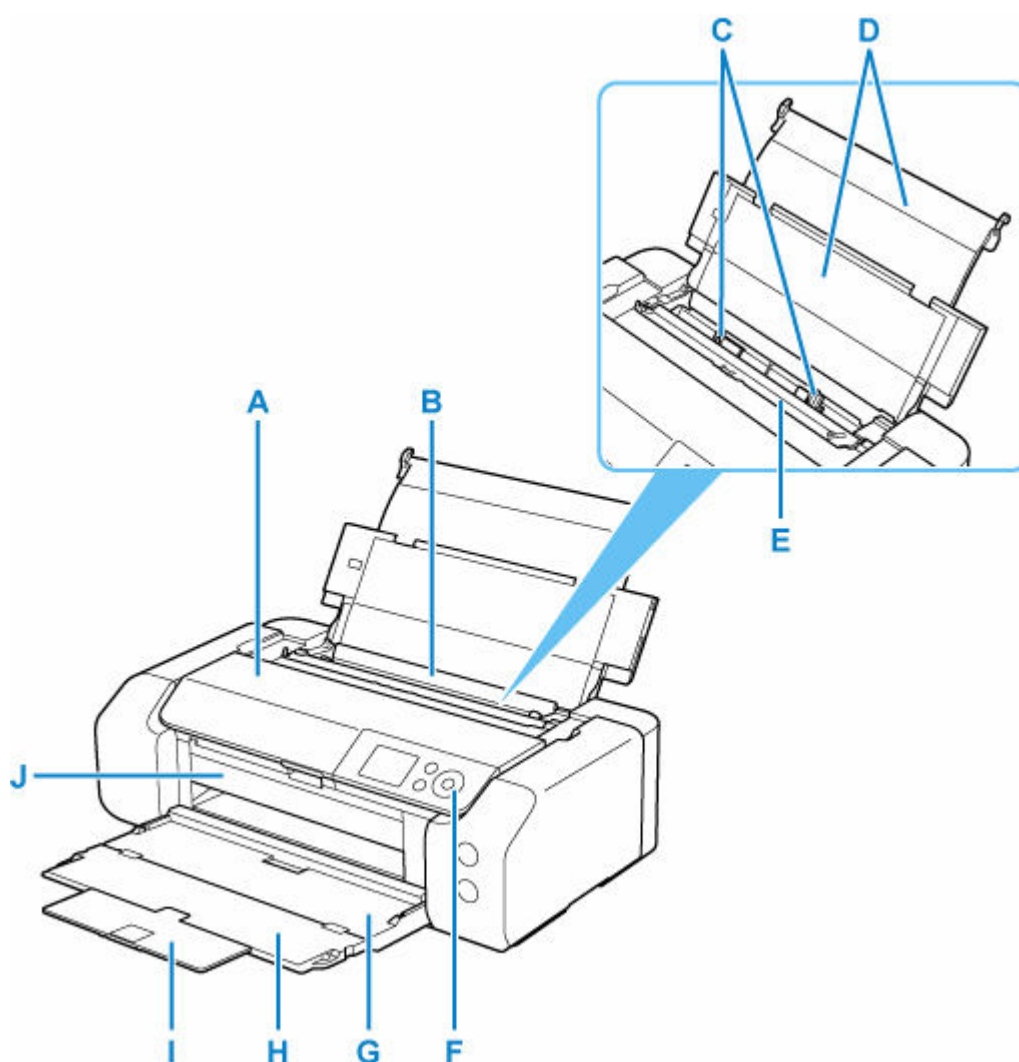
- Front
- Back / Side
- Inside
- Operation Panel

➤ **Using the Printer**

- Turning the Printer On and Off
- LCD and Operation Panel
- Loading Paper in the Top Feed
- Loading Paper in the Manual Feed Tray
- Loading Envelopes in the Top Feed
- Placing Multi-purpose Tray

Printer Parts

- **Front**
- **Back / Side**
- **Inside**
- **Operation Panel**

**A: Top Cover**

Open to replace an ink tank or to remove jammed paper inside the printer.

B: Top Feed

Two or more sheets of the same size and type of paper can be loaded at the same time, and fed automatically one sheet at a time.

- ➡ [Loading Paper in the Top Feed](#)
- ➡ [Loading Envelopes in the Top Feed](#)

C: Paper Guides

Align with both sides of the paper stack.

D: Paper Support

Open to load paper in the top feed.

E: Feed Slot Cover

Prevents anything from falling into the feed slot.

Open it to slide the paper guides, and close it before printing.

F: Operation Panel

Use to change the settings of the printer or to operate it.

➡ [Operation Panel](#)

G: Paper Output Tray

Printed paper is ejected. Open it before printing.

H: Output Tray Extension

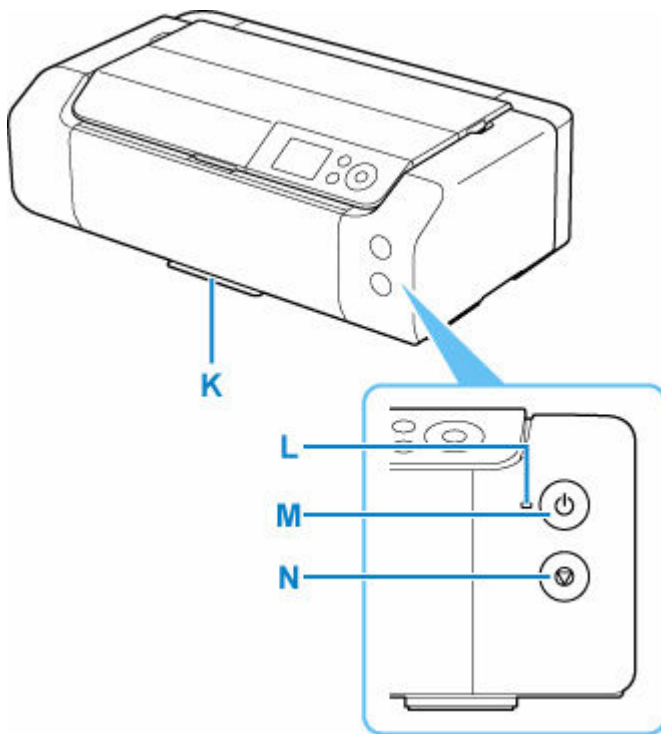
Open to support ejected paper.

I: Paper Output Support

Pull out to support ejected paper.

J: Multi-purpose Tray Guide

Place the multi-purpose tray here.

**K: Multi-purpose Tray Storage Compartment**

The multi-purpose tray supplied with the printer can be stored here.

L: ON lamp

Lights after flashing when the power is turned on.

M: ON button

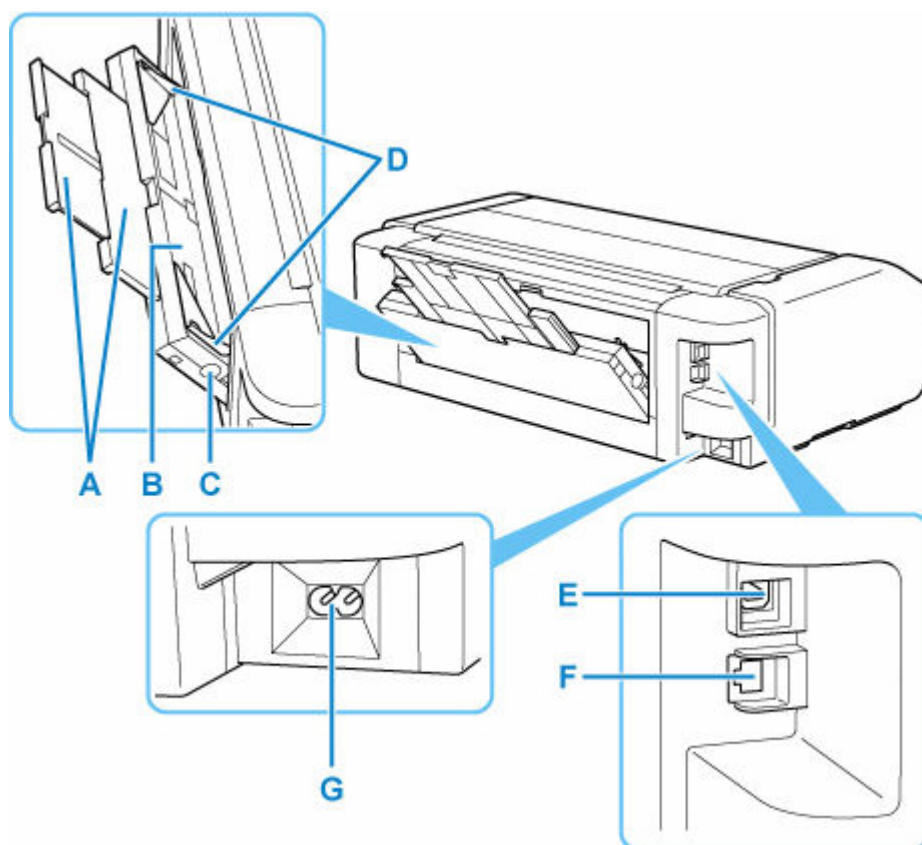
Turns the power on or off.

➡ [Turning the Printer On and Off](#)

N: Stop button

Cancels a print job in progress.

Back / Side



A: Paper Support

Pull out to load paper in the manual feed tray.

B: Manual Feed Tray

Load one sheet of 8" x 10" (20 x 25 cm) size paper or larger, or thick paper at a time.

➡ [Loading Paper in the Manual Feed Tray](#)

C: Paper Jam Clearing button

Press this button when removing paper jammed in the manual feed tray.

D: Paper Guides

Align with both sides of the paper stack.

E: USB Port

Plug in the USB cable to connect the printer with a computer.

F: Wired LAN Connector

Plug in the LAN cable to connect the printer to a LAN.

G: Power Cord Connector

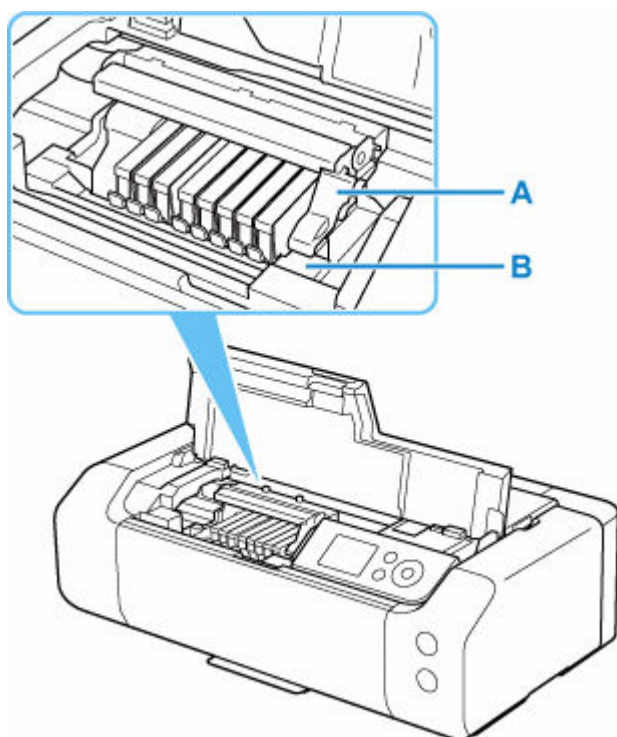
Plug in the supplied power cord.

»» Important

- Do not touch the metal casing.

- Do not plug in or unplug the USB cable or LAN cable while the printer is printing with the computer. This can cause trouble.

Inside



A: Print Head Lock Lever

Locks the print head into place.

B: Print Head Holder

Install the print head here.

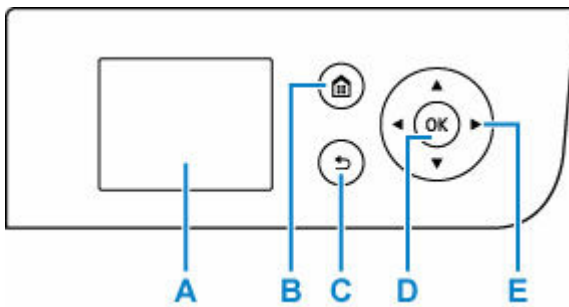
►► Important

- Do not raise the print head lock lever after installing the print head.

►► Note

- For details on replacing an ink tank, see [Replacing Ink Tanks](#).

Operation Panel



A: LCD (Liquid Crystal Display)

Displays messages, menu items, and the operational status.

➡ [LCD and Operation Panel](#)

➡ [Entering Numbers, Letters, and Symbols](#)

B: HOME button

Used to display the HOME screen.

C: Back button

Returns the LCD to the previous screen.

D: OK button

Finalizes the selection of a menu or setting item. This button is also used to resolve an error.

E: ▲, ▼, ◀, and ▶ buttons

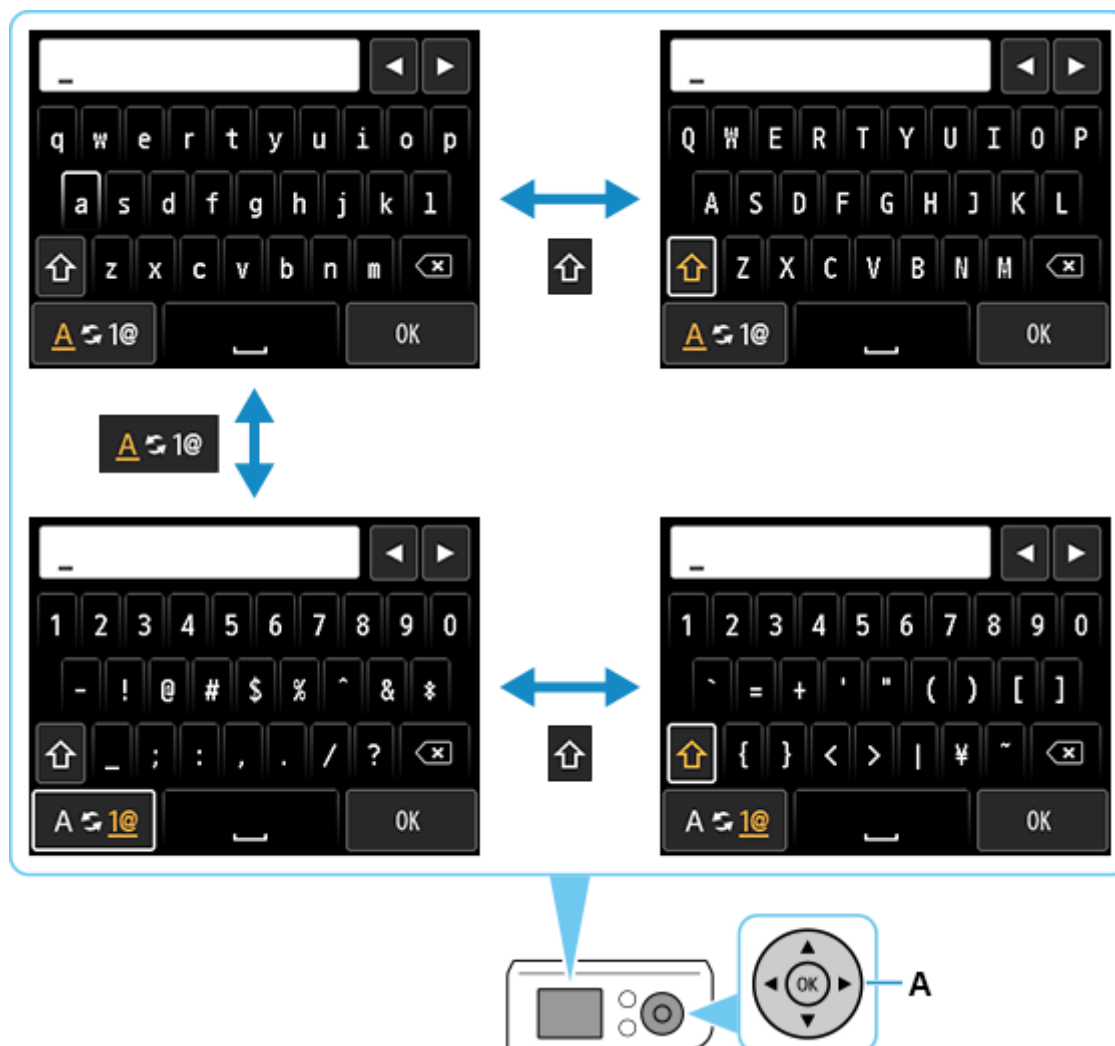
Used to select a menu or setting item.

➡ [LCD and Operation Panel](#)

➡ [Entering Numbers, Letters, and Symbols](#)

Entering Numbers, Letters, and Symbols

You can enter text when a keyboard is shown on the printer. Follow the procedure below.



1. Use the ▲ ▼ ◀ ▶ buttons (A) to select the character you want to enter, and then press



Switches between "lower case letters" and "numbers and symbols."



Switches between upper and lower case letters while letters of the alphabet appear. Switches symbol types while numbers and symbols appear.



Inserts a space.



Deletes the character at the cursor. Use  or  to move the cursor to the target character.

2. Repeat 1 until text entry is complete.

»» Note

- To insert characters, move the cursor to the character on the right of the target position using  or , and then enter characters.

Using the Printer

- **Turning the Printer On and Off**
- **LCD and Operation Panel**
- **Loading Paper in the Top Feed**
- **Loading Paper in the Manual Feed Tray**
- **Loading Envelopes in the Top Feed**
- **Placing Multi-purpose Tray**
 - Cautions When Printing with Multi-purpose Tray
 - Placing a Printable Disc
 - Placing Printable Nail Stickers

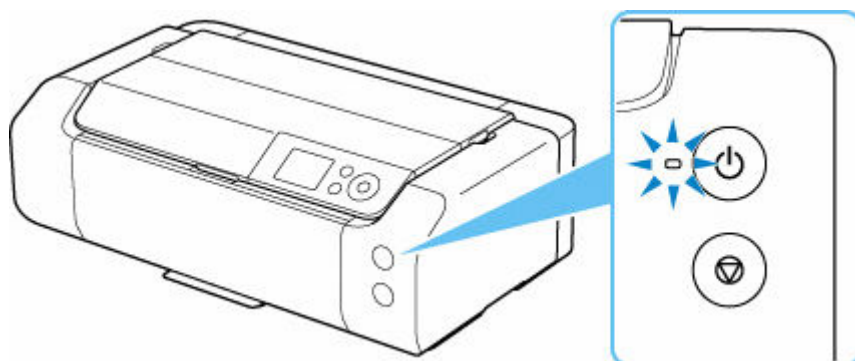
Turning the Printer On and Off

- ➔ [Checking that Power Is On](#)
- ➔ [Turning on the printer](#)
- ➔ [Turning off the printer](#)

Checking that Power Is On

The **ON** lamp is lit when the printer is turned on.

Even if the LCD is off, if the **ON** lamp is lit, the printer is on.



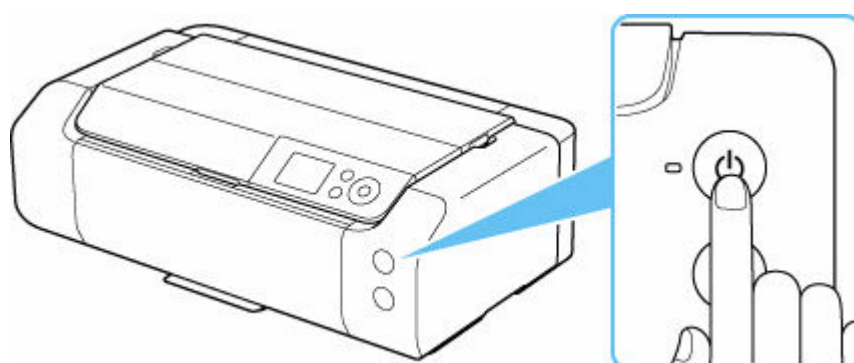
►►► Note

- The LCD will turn off if the printer is not operated for about 3 minutes. To restore the display, press any button or perform the print operation. You cannot change the wait time before the LCD turns off.

Turning on the printer

Press the ON button to turn on the printer.

The **ON** lamp flashes and then remains lit.



►►► Note

- It may take a while for the printer to start printing immediately after you turn on the printer.
- You can set the printer to automatically turn on when a print operation is performed from a computer connected by USB cable or via network. This feature is set to off by default.

From the printer

➔ [Energy saving settings](#)

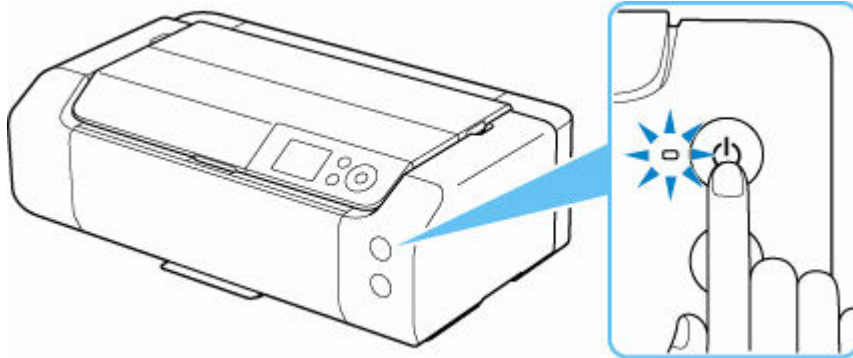
From the computer

➔ [Managing the Printer Power](#) (Windows)

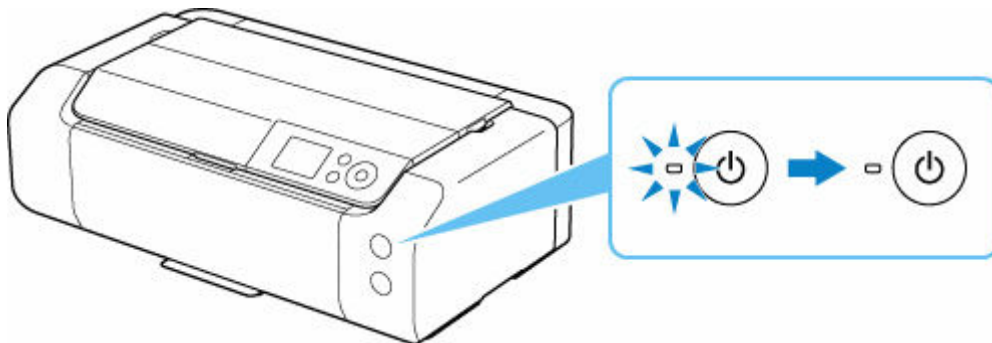
➔ [Managing the Printer Power](#) (macOS)

Turning off the printer

1. Press the **ON** button to turn the printer off.

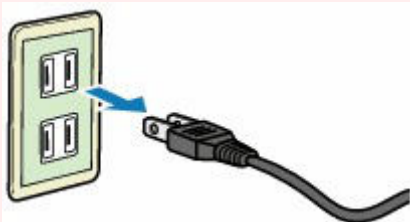


2. Confirm that the **ON** lamp is off.



»» Important

- When you unplug the power cord, press the **ON** button, then confirm that the **ON** lamp is off. Unplugging the power cord while the **ON** lamp is lit or flashing may cause drying or clogging of the print head and print quality may be reduced.



Placing Multi-purpose Tray

➤ Cautions When Printing with Multi-purpose Tray

➤ Placing a Printable Disc

- Before Placing a Printable Disc
- Placing a Printable Disc
- Removing a Printable Disc

➤ Placing Printable Nail Stickers

- Before Placing Printable Nail Stickers
- Placing Printable Nail Stickers
- Removing Printable Nail Stickers

Cautions When Printing with Multi-purpose Tray

Cautions Common to using Multi-purpose Tray

- Be sure to use the multi-purpose tray supplied with this printer.
- Do not mount the multi-purpose tray while the printer is in operation.
- Do not remove the multi-purpose tray while the printer is in operation. Doing so may damage the printer, the multi-purpose tray, or the media.
- Do not get dirt on the multi-purpose tray or scratches on the reflectors. The printer may not be able to recognize that a media is loaded, or printing may become misaligned. If the multi-purpose tray becomes dirty, wipe the reflector clean with a soft and dry cloth, taking care not to scratch it.
- After printing, allow the printing surface of the media to dry naturally. Do not use hairdryers or expose the media to direct sunlight to dry the ink. Do not touch the printing surface until the ink has dried.

Cautions When Printing onto Printable Disc

- Remove any dirt from the multi-purpose tray before placing printable discs on it. Loading discs on a dirty multi-purpose tray may scratch the recording surface of the discs.
- Do not print onto printable discs that are not compatible with inkjet printing. The ink will not dry and may cause problems with the disc itself or DVD players or other devices it is loaded into.
- Do not print onto a printable disc's recording surface. Doing so will make data recorded onto discs unreadable.
- Hold printable discs by their edges. Do not touch either the label surface (printing surface) or recording surface.
- The multi-purpose tray may become dirty if software other than Easy-PhotoPrint Editor is used.

Cautions When Printing on Printable Nail Stickers

- For precautions on **Printable Nail Stickers**, refer to the instructions supplied with the **Printable Nail Stickers**.
- The multi-purpose tray may become dirty if an application other than Nail Stickers Creator is used.

Placing a Printable Disc

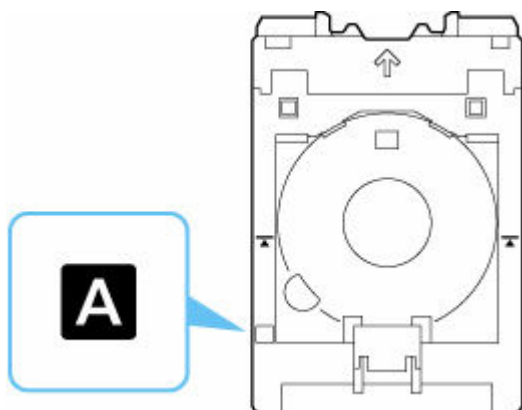
- **Before Placing a Printable Disc**
- **Placing a Printable Disc**
- **Removing a Printable Disc**

Before Placing a Printable Disc

A printable disc differs from regular disc (BD/DVD/CD, etc.) in that its label surface has been specially processed or printing by an inkjet printer.

The following items are needed to print onto the printable disc.

- Multi-purpose tray (supplied with the printer)



* Use the multi-purpose tray with "A" on the surface.

- 4.72 in. (12 cm) printable disc



Obtain a printable disc with a label surface compatible with inkjet printing.

Placing a Printable Disc

To print onto a printable disc, place it on the supplied multi-purpose tray, and then insert it into the printer.

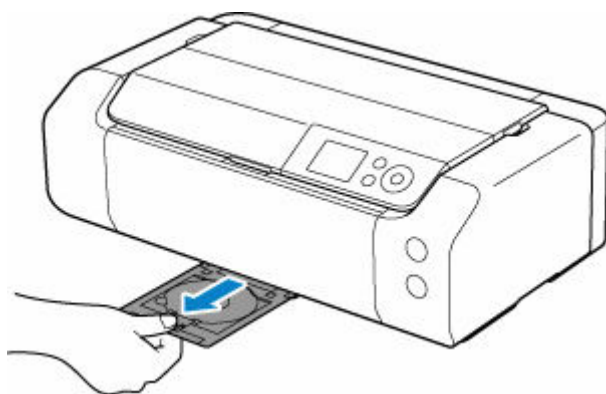
Important

- Do not mount the multi-purpose tray until the message prompting you to load the printable disc appears. Doing so can damage the printer.
- Remove any paper in the manual feed tray.

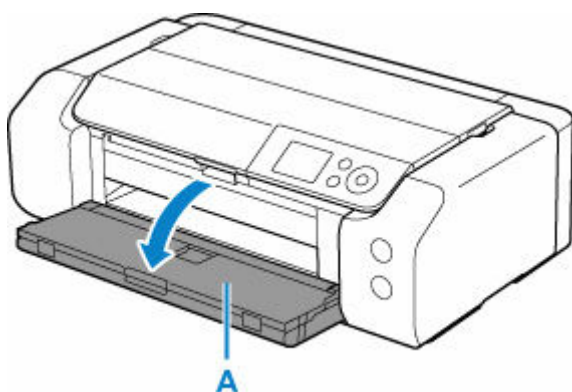
Note

- If test printing is executed onto test printing paper, depending on the paper type, the printer may not be able to read its size correctly, preventing the border areas from being printed. Test printing paper should be used for purposes of checking the envisioned layout.

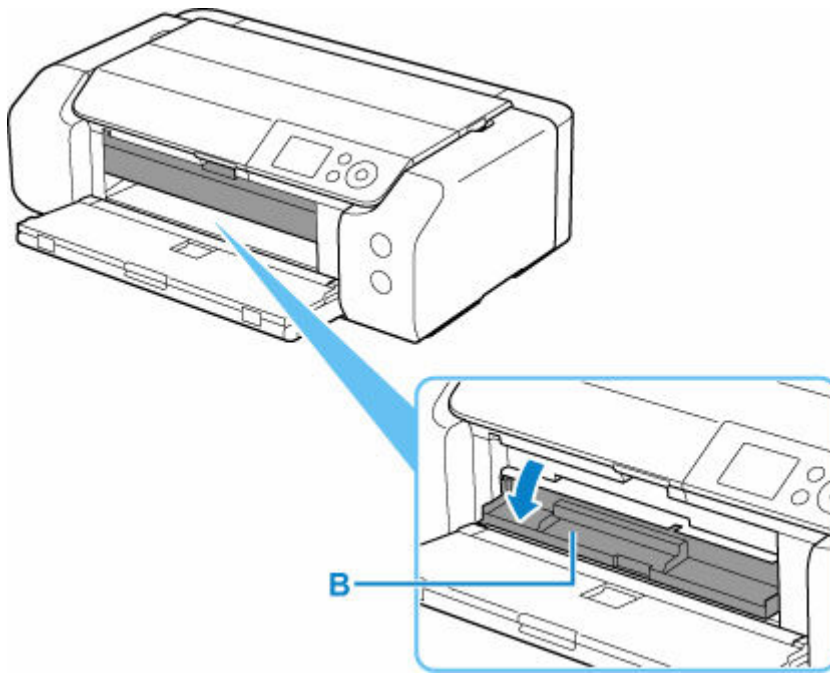
1. Take out multi-purpose tray from multi-purpose tray storage compartment.



2. Open the paper output tray (A) gently.



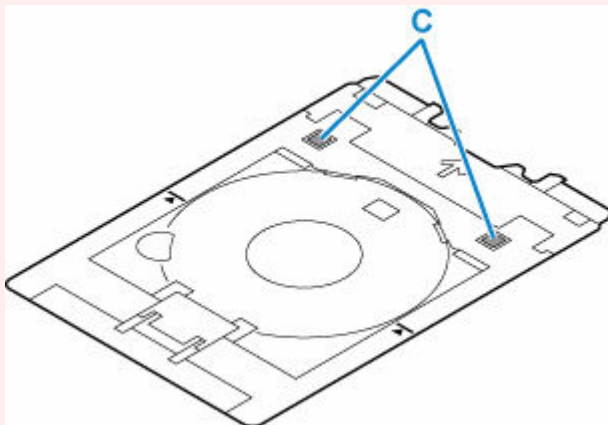
3. When message prompting you to load printable disc appears, open the multi-purpose tray guide (B).



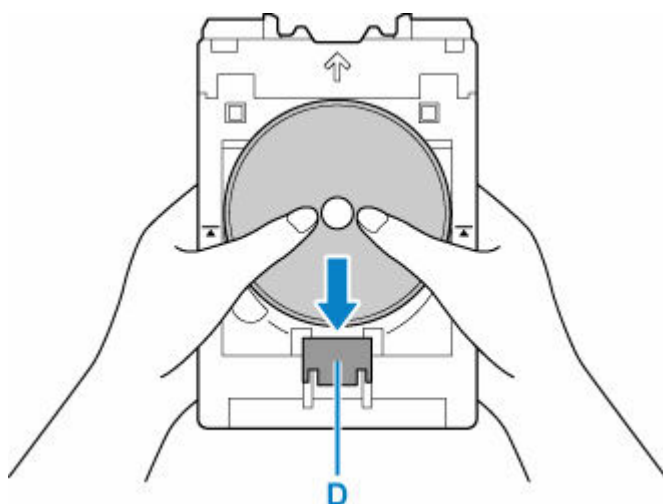
4. Place printable disc on multi-purpose tray.

Important

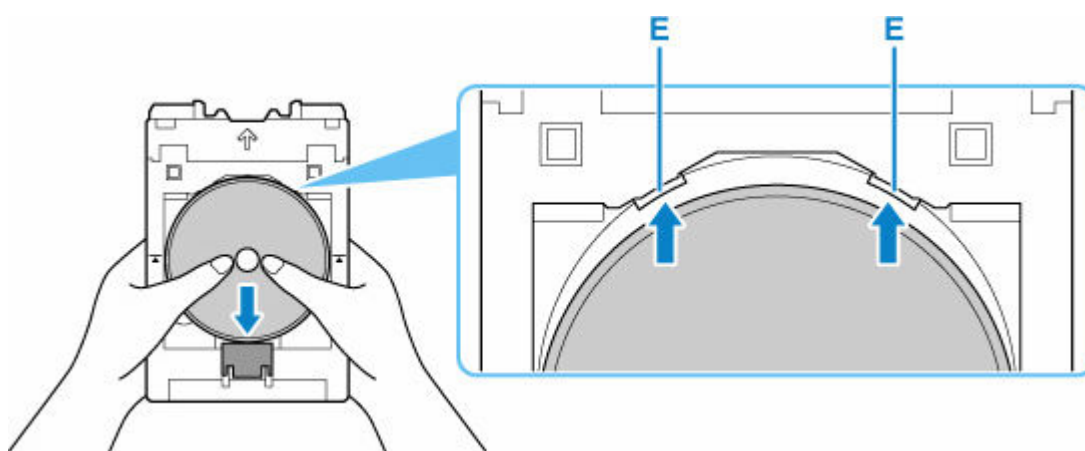
- Check that there is no dirt on the multi-purpose tray before placing a printable disc on it.
- When placing a printable disc on the multi-purpose tray, do not touch the printing surface of the disc or the reflectors (C) on the multi-purpose tray.



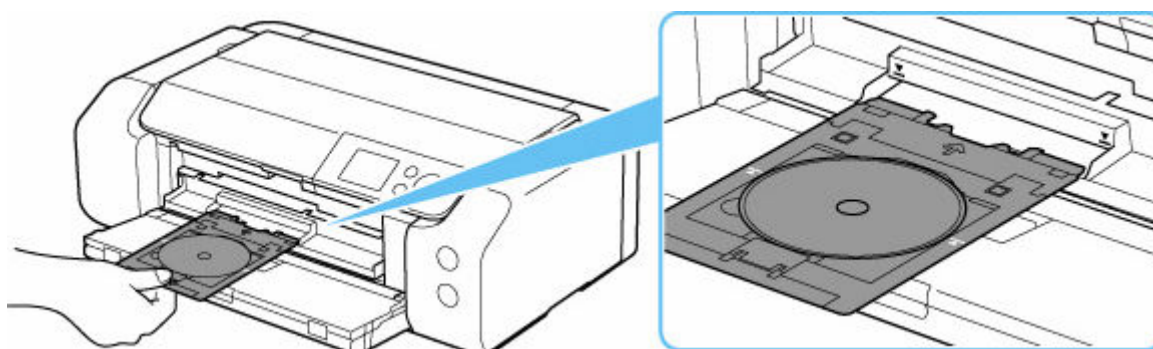
1. WITH PRINT SIDE FACING UP, place printable disc, and press it against lock (D) at bottom.



2. While pressing down lock with printable disc, insert top of printable disc into slits (E).



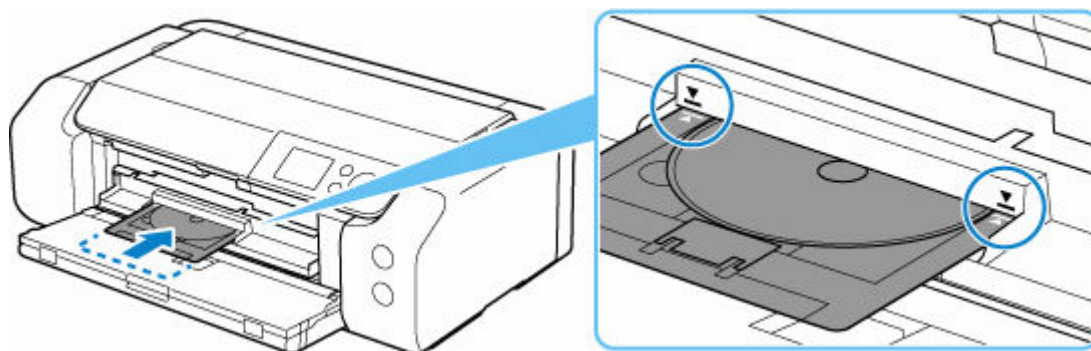
5. Place multi-purpose tray on multi-purpose tray guide.



6. Insert multi-purpose tray straight in in horizontal direction until arrow (▼) on multi-purpose tray guide is approximately aligned with arrow (▲) on multi-purpose tray.

►► Important

- Do not insert the multi-purpose tray beyond the arrow (▼) on the multi-purpose tray guide.

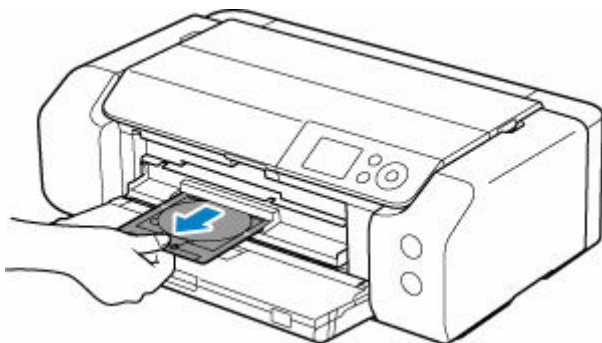


»» Note

- The multi-purpose tray may be ejected after a certain amount of time passes. In such a case, follow the on-screen instructions to place the multi-purpose tray again.

Removing a Printable Disc

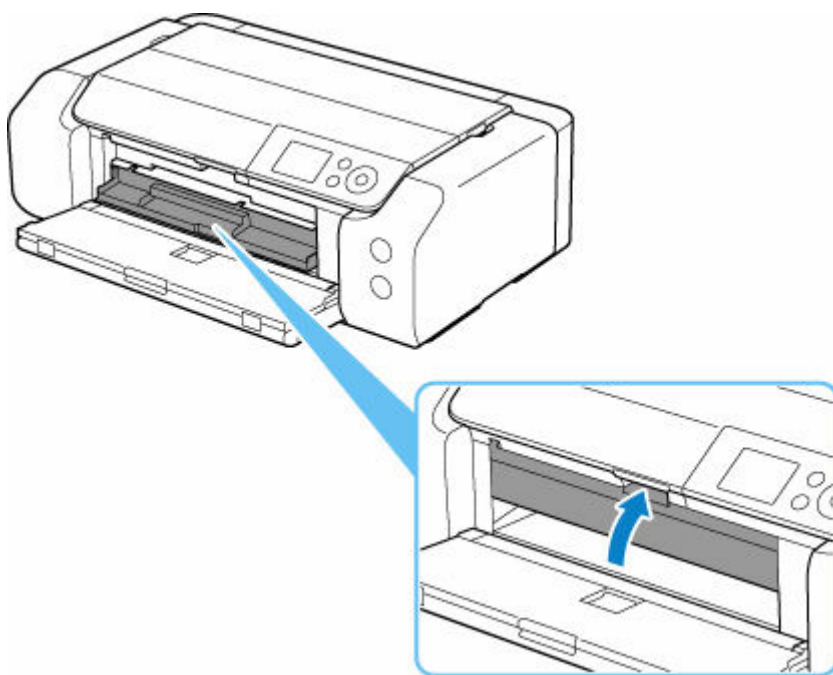
1. Pull out multi-purpose tray.



2. Close the multi-purpose tray guide.

»» Important

- If the multi-purpose tray guide is opened, you cannot print on paper as it will not feed properly. Make sure that the multi-purpose tray guide is closed.



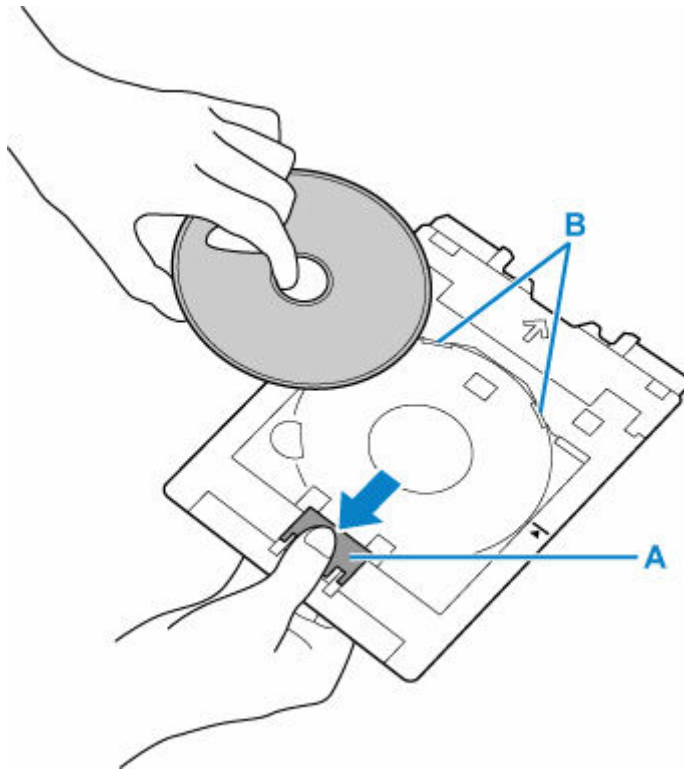
3. While pressing down lock (A), take out printable disc from slits (B) on multi-purpose tray, and remove it.

»» Important

- Do not touch the printing surface when removing the disc from the multi-purpose tray.

»» Note

- Allow the printing surface to dry before removing the disc. If you see printing on the multi-purpose tray or on the transparent parts of the inner or outer diameters of the printable disc, wipe them clean after the printing surface has dried.



4. Insert multi-purpose tray straight into multi-purpose tray storage compartment.

When not using the multi-purpose tray, store it in the multi-purpose tray storage compartment.

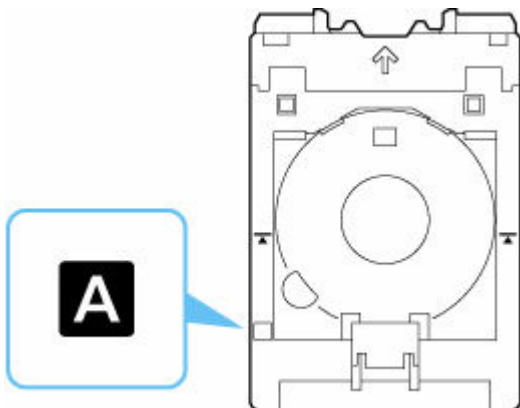
Placing Printable Nail Stickers

- **Before Placing Printable Nail Stickers**
- **Placing Printable Nail Stickers**
- **Removing Printable Nail Stickers**

Before Placing Printable Nail Stickers

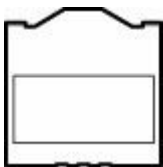
The following items are needed to print onto **Printable Nail Stickers**.

- Multi-purpose tray (supplied with the printer)



* Use the multi-purpose tray with "A" on the surface.

- **Printable Nail Stickers** (NL-101)



»» Note

- For the latest information on **Printable Nail Stickers**, access our website.

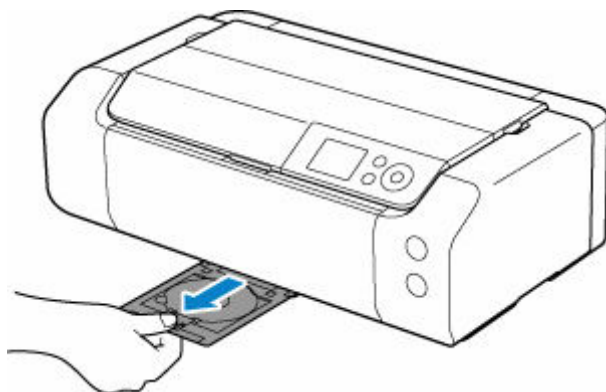
Placing Printable Nail Stickers

To print onto **Printable Nail Stickers**, place them on the multi-purpose tray supplied with the printer, and then insert them into the printer.

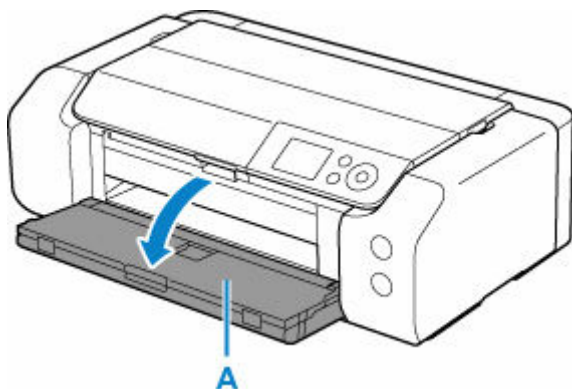
»» Important

- Do not mount the multi-purpose tray until the message prompting you to load **Printable Nail Stickers** appears. Doing so can damage the printer.

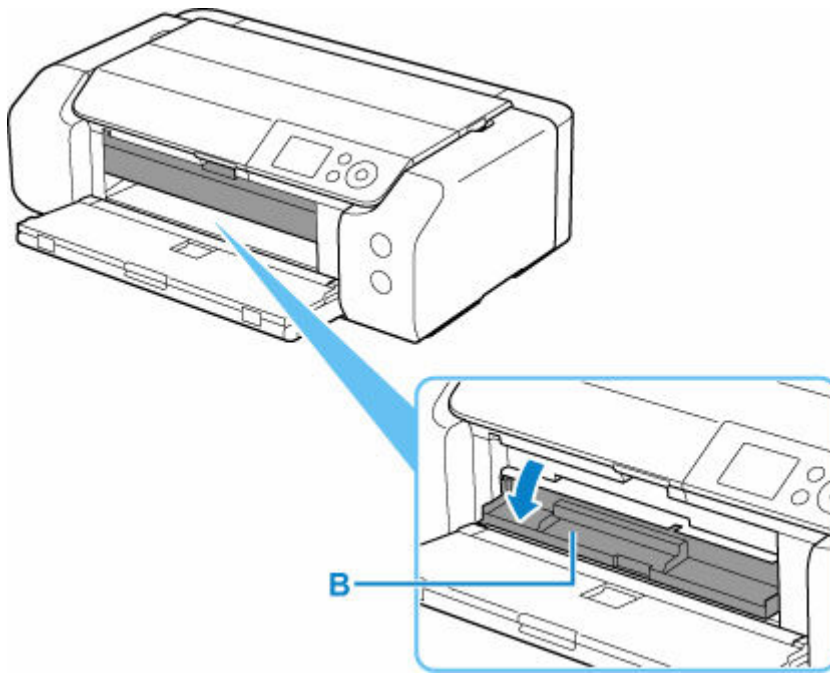
1. Take out multi-purpose tray from multi-purpose tray storage compartment.



2. Open the paper output tray (A) gently.



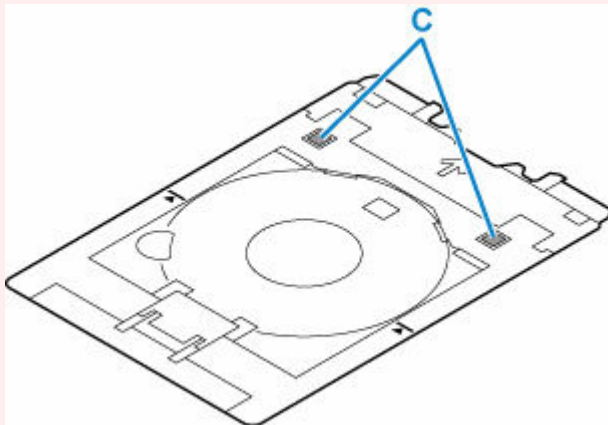
3. When message prompting you to load **Printable Nail Stickers** appears, open the multi-purpose tray guide (B).



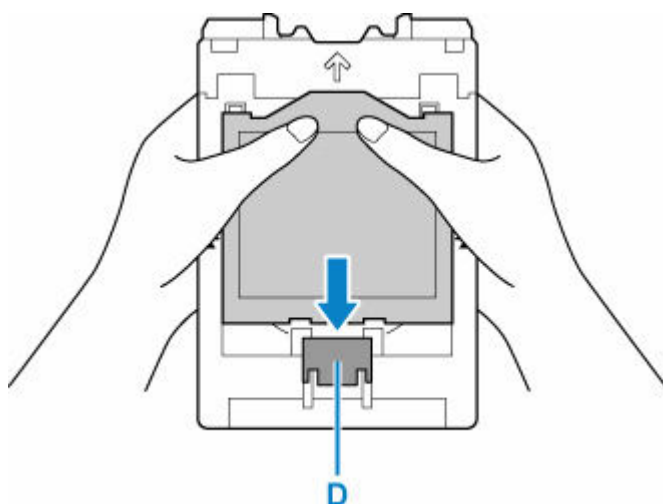
4. Place **Printable Nail Stickers** on multi-purpose tray.

»» Important

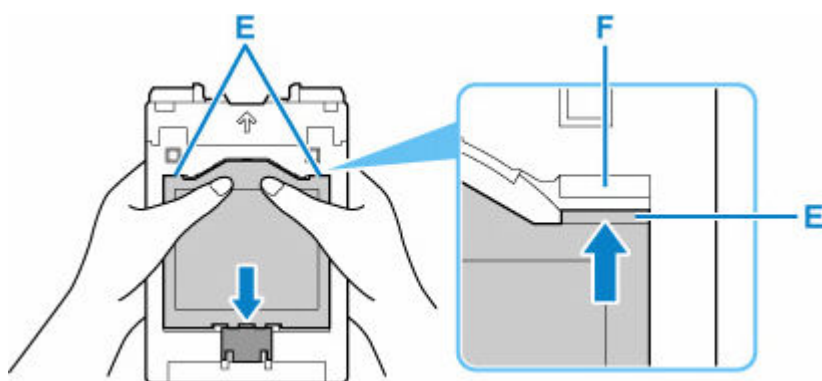
- Check that there is no dirt on the multi-purpose tray before placing **Printable Nail Stickers** on it.
- To prevent getting dirt or fingerprints on **Printable Nail Stickers**, hold the stickers by their edges. If the print side gets any dirt or is damaged, it may cause poor print quality.
- When placing **Printable Nail Stickers** on the multi-purpose tray, do not touch the reflectors (C) on the multi-purpose tray.



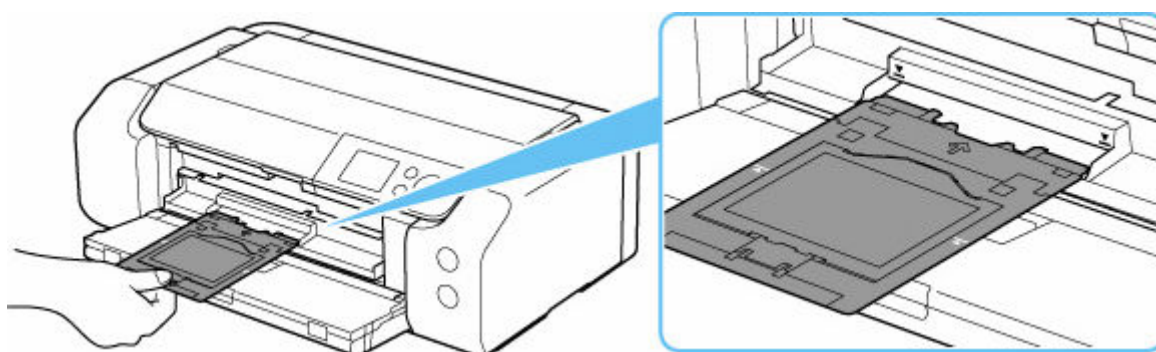
1. WITH PRINT SIDE FACING UP, place **Printable Nail Stickers** and press it against lock (D) at bottom.



2. While pressing down lock with **Printable Nail Stickers**, insert two tabs (E) on top into slits (F) on multi-purpose tray.



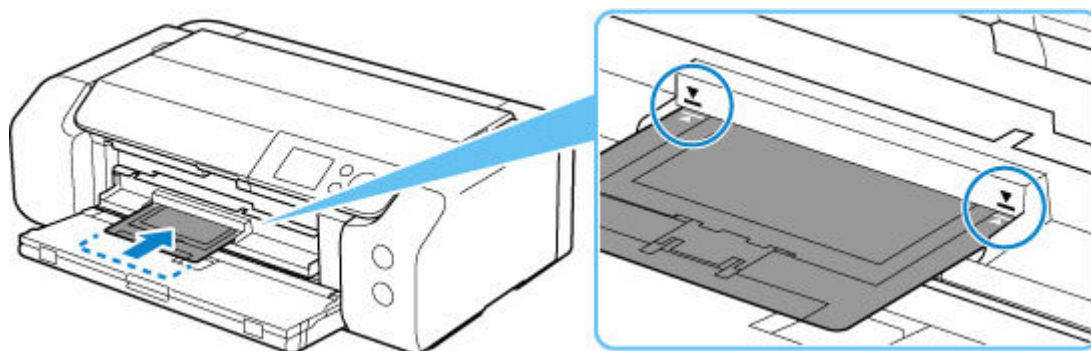
5. Place multi-purpose tray on multi-purpose tray guide.



6. Insert multi-purpose tray straight in in horizontal direction until arrow (▼) on multi-purpose tray guide is approximately aligned with arrow (▲) on multi-purpose tray.

►►► Important

- Do not insert the multi-purpose tray beyond the arrow (▼) on the multi-purpose tray guide.

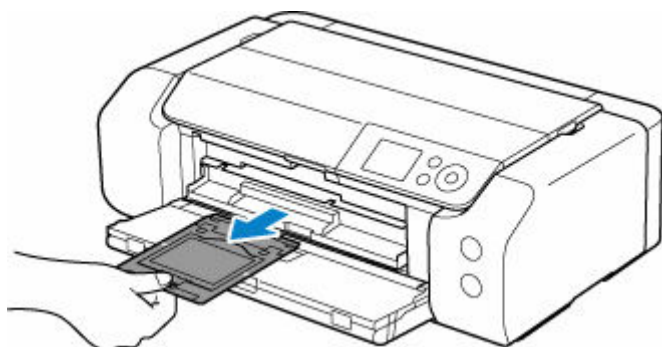


»» Note

- The multi-purpose tray may be ejected after a certain amount of time passes. In such a case, follow the on-screen instructions to place the multi-purpose tray again.

Removing Printable Nail Stickers

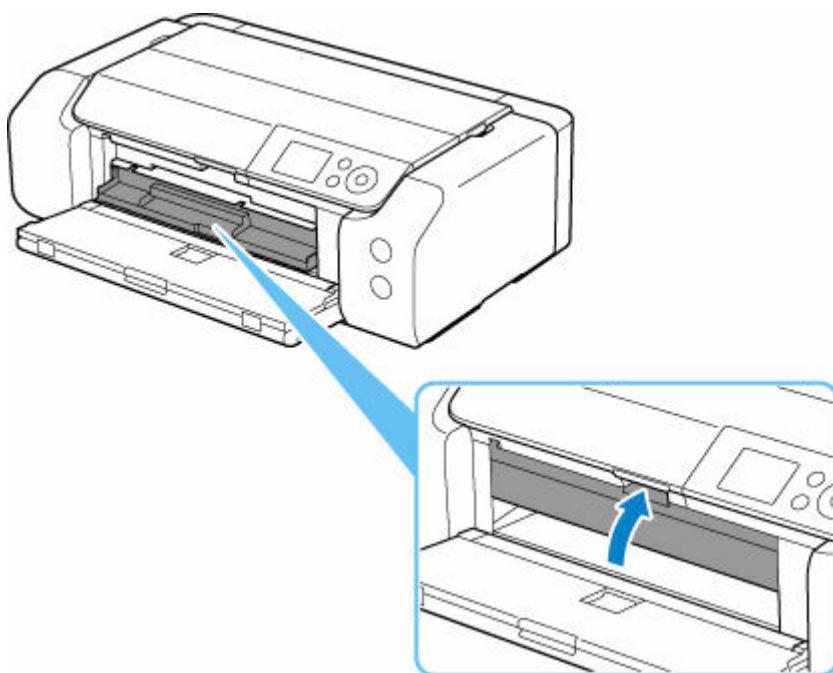
1. Pull out multi-purpose tray.



2. Close the multi-purpose tray guide.

»» Important

- If the multi-purpose tray guide is opened, you cannot print on paper as it will not feed properly. Make sure that the multi-purpose tray guide is closed.



3. Remove **Printable Nail Stickers**.

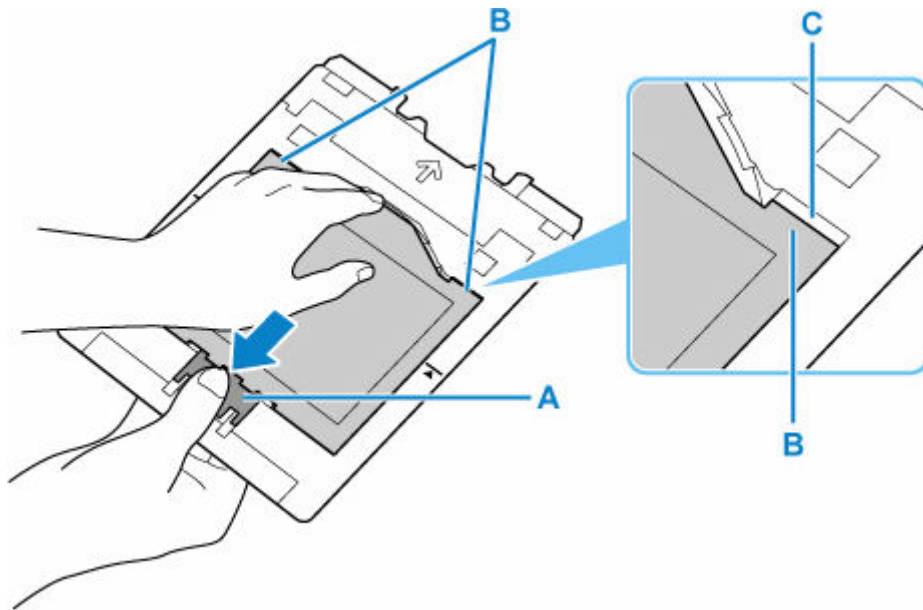
While pressing down lock (A), remove two tabs (B) on the top out of slits (C).

»» Important

- Do not touch the printing surface when removing **Printable Nail Stickers**.

»» Note

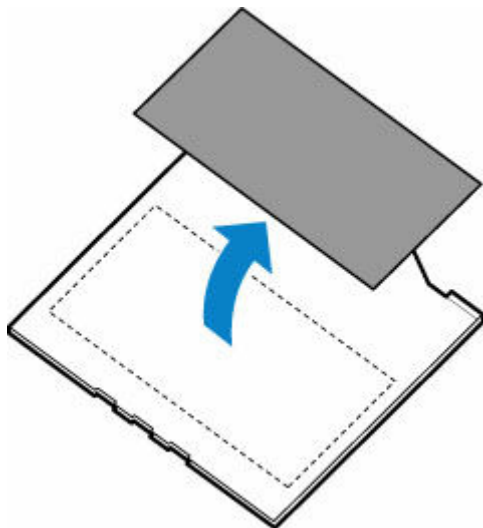
- Allow the printing surface to dry before removing **Printable Nail Stickers**. If you see printing on the multi-purpose tray or outside the **Printable Nail Stickers**, wipe them clean after the printing surface has dried.



4. Peel a sheet of **Printable Nail Stickers** from adapter.

»» Important

- Allow the printing surface to dry before tearing off **Printable Nail Stickers** from its edges.



5. Insert multi-purpose tray straight into multi-purpose tray storage compartment.

When not using the multi-purpose tray, insert it in the multi-purpose tray storage compartment.

Handling Paper

➤ Loading Paper

- Paper Sources to Load Paper
- Loading Paper in the Top Feed
- Loading Paper in the Manual Feed Tray
- Loading Envelopes in the Top Feed
- Register Paper Information

➤ Information about Paper

- Media Types You Can Use
- Paper Load Limit
- Unsupported Media Types
- Handling Paper
- Before Printing on Art Paper
- Managing Paper Information on Printer Using Media Configuration Tool

Loading Paper

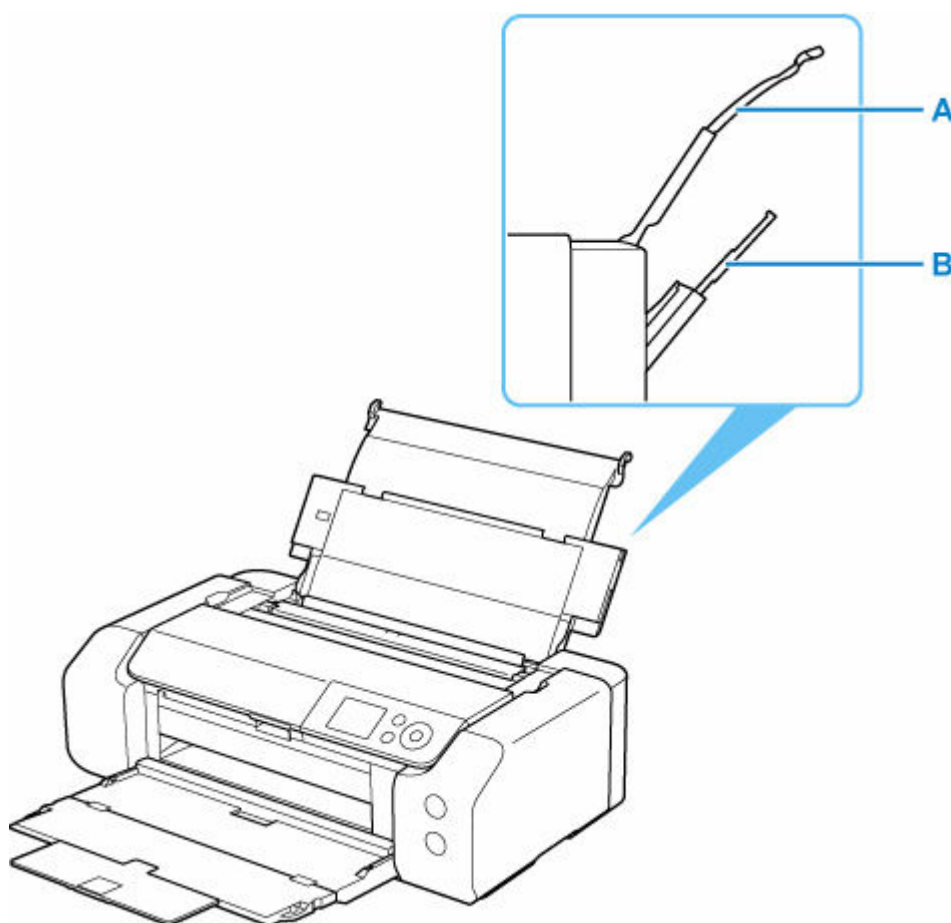
- **Paper Sources to Load Paper**
- **Loading Paper in the Top Feed**
- **Loading Paper in the Manual Feed Tray**
- **Loading Envelopes in the Top Feed**
- **Register Paper Information**

Paper Sources to Load Paper

The printer has two paper sources for feeding paper, the top feed (A) and manual feed tray (B).

Important

- The paper source used depends on the page size and media type.
 - ➡ [Media Types You Can Use](#)
 - ➡ [Paper Load Limit](#)
- When printing, select the correct page size, media type, and paper source. If you select the wrong page size or media type, the printer may not print with the proper print quality.



Top Feed

Load paper from 4" x 6" (10 x 15 cm) size to A3+ size.

Two or more sheets of the same size and type of paper can be loaded at the same time, and fed automatically one sheet at a time.

Load plain paper in the top feed.

- ➡ [Loading Paper in the Top Feed](#)
- ➡ [Loading Envelopes in the Top Feed](#)

Manual Feed Tray

Load paper from 8" x 10" (20 x 25 cm) size to A3+ size.

Load a sheet of paper at a time.

Load thick paper such as art paper in the manual feed tray.

➡ [Loading Paper in the Manual Feed Tray](#)

Loading Paper in the Top Feed

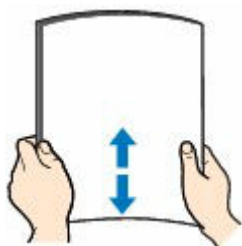
You can load multiple sheets of paper of the same type and size in the top feed.

You can also load envelopes on the top feed.

➡ [Loading Envelopes in the Top Feed](#)

1. Prepare paper.

Align the edges of paper. If paper is curled, flatten it.



»» Note

- Align the edges of paper neatly before loading. Loading paper without aligning the edges may cause paper jams.
- If paper is curled, hold the curled corners and gently bend them in the opposite direction until the paper becomes completely flat.
For details on how to flatten curled paper, see [Check 3](#) in [Paper Is Smudged/Printed Surface Is Scratched/Ink Blots/Paper Curl](#).
- When using **Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss SG-201**, even if the sheet is curled, load one sheet at a time as it is. If you roll up this paper to flatten, this may cause cracks on the surface of the paper and reduce the print quality.

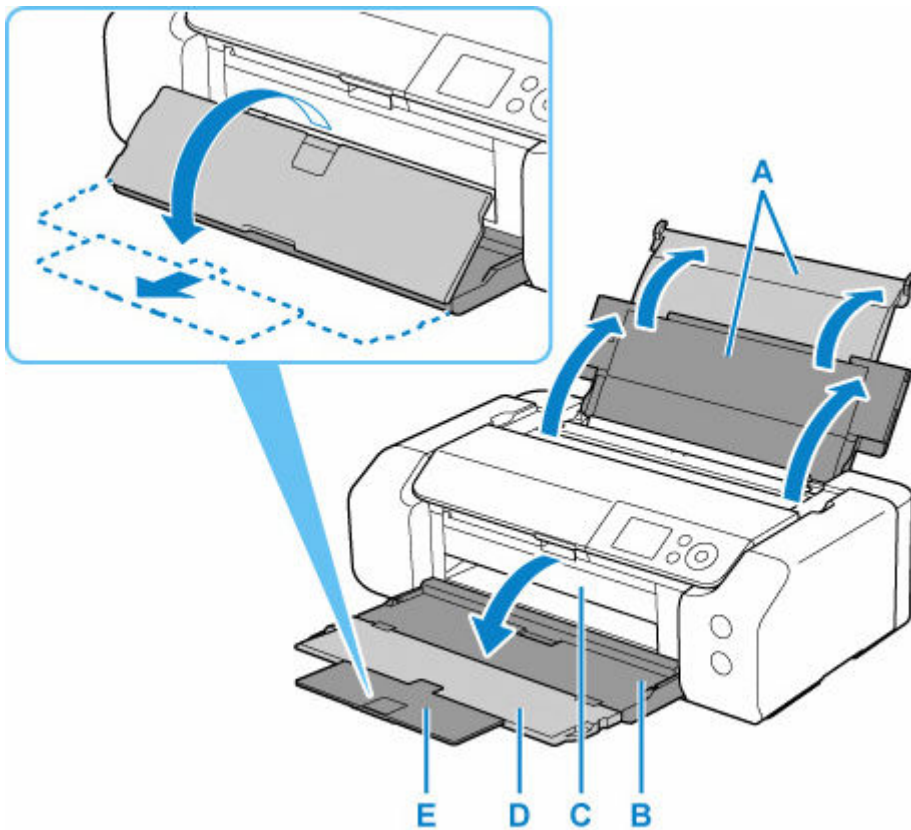
2. Open the paper support (A) of the top feed.

3. Open the paper output tray (B) gently.

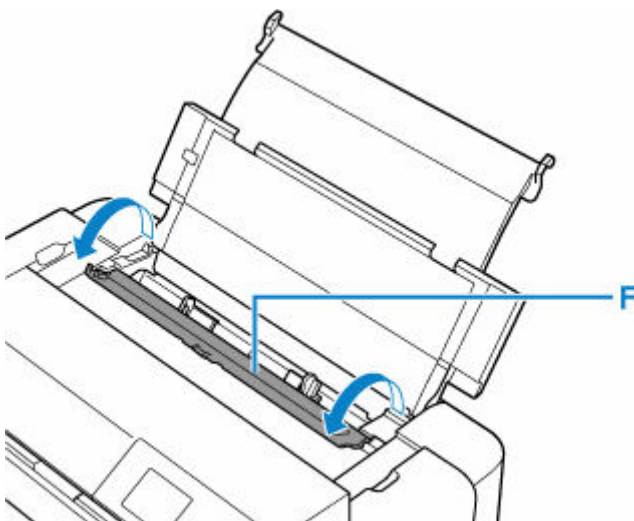
»» Important

- If the multi-purpose tray guide (C) is open, be sure to close it.

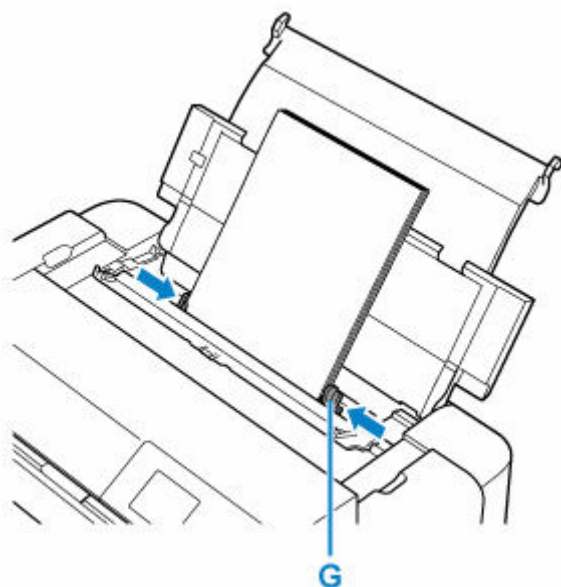
4. Open the output tray extension (D), then pull out the paper output support (E).



5. Open the feed slot cover (F).

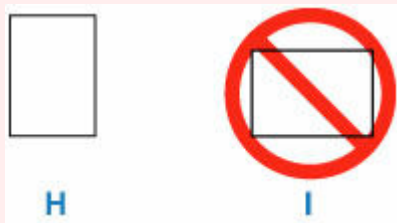


6. Slide right paper guide (G) to open both paper guides and load the paper in the center of the top feed WITH THE PRINT SIDE FACING YOU.
7. Slide right paper guide (G) to align both paper guides with both sides of the paper stack.
Do not slide the paper guides too hard against the paper. The paper may not be fed properly.



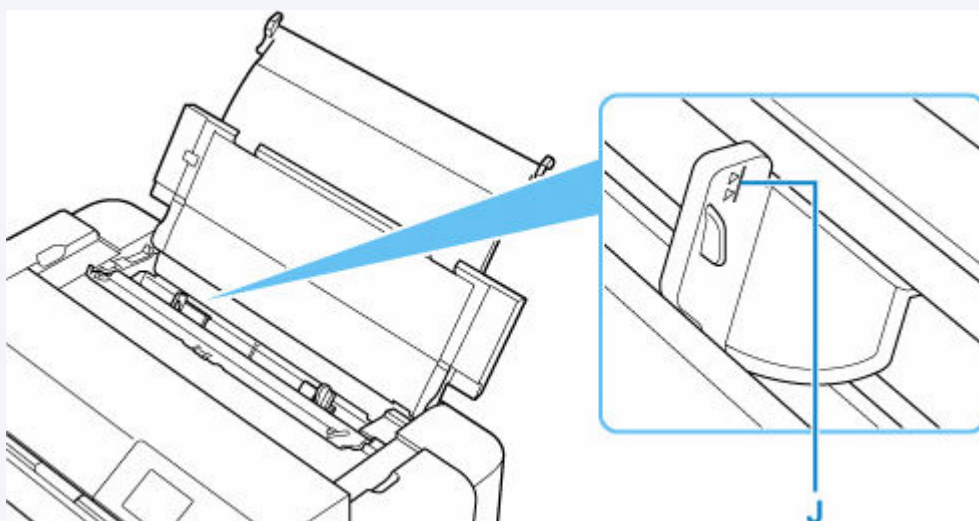
»» Important

- Always load paper in the portrait orientation (H). Loading paper in the landscape orientation (I) can cause paper jams.



»» Note

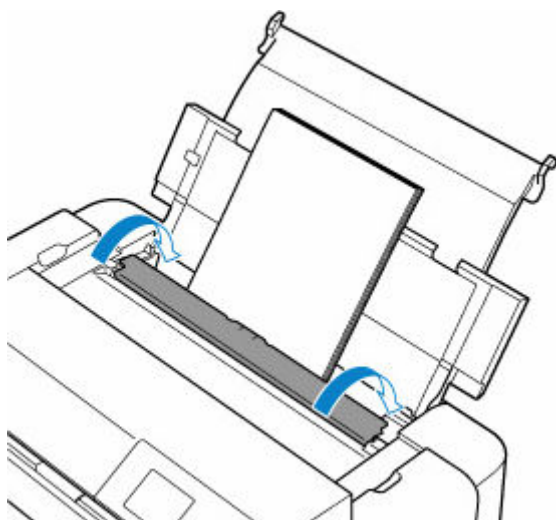
- Do not load sheets of paper higher than the load limit mark (J).



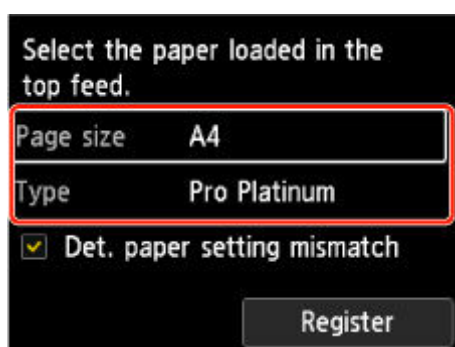
- For loading long-length paper (paper that the length is up to 39.00 in. (990.6 mm)), the leading edges of paper are lifted depending on the paper weight and printouts may be misaligned. Prevent the leading edges of paper from lifting by holding the parts protruding from the tray or other ways.

8. Close feed slot cover gently.

The paper information registration screen for the top feed is displayed on the LCD.



9. Select the size and type of paper loaded in the top feed at **Page size** and **Type**, select **Register**.



▶▶▶ **Note**

- There are various types of paper, such as paper with a special surface coating for printing photos at optimal quality and paper suitable for documents. Each media type has specific preset settings (how ink is used and sprayed, distance from nozzles, etc.), that allow you to print to that type with optimal image quality. The wrong paper settings may cause poor printout color quality or scratches on the printed surface. If you notice blurring or uneven colors, increase the print quality setting and try printing again.
- To prevent incorrect printing, this printer has a function that detects whether the settings for the paper loaded on the top feed matches the paper settings. Before printing, make print settings in accordance with the paper settings. When this function is enabled, an error message is displayed if these settings do not match to prevent incorrect printing. When this error message is displayed, check and correct the paper settings.
- For printing on long-length paper (paper that the length is up to 39.00 in. (990.6 mm)), hold ejected paper with your hand or use the printer at the location that paper does not fall. If paper falls, the printed surface may get dirty or be damaged. If you hold paper with your hand, do not pull it forcibly while printing.

Loading Paper in the Manual Feed Tray

You can load one sheet of 8" x 10" (20 x 25 cm) size paper or larger in the manual feed tray at a time.

»» Note

- The manual feed tray does not accept plain paper. When printing on plain paper, load it in the top feed.

1. Prepare paper.

If paper is curled, flatten it.

»» Note

- If paper is curled, hold the curled corners and gently bend them in the opposite direction until the paper becomes completely flat.

For details on how to flatten curled paper, see **Check 3** in [Paper Is Smudged/Printed Surface Is Scratched/Ink Blots/Paper Curl](#).

- When using **Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss SG-201**, even if the sheet is curled, load one sheet at a time as it is. If you roll up this paper to flatten, this may cause cracks on the surface of the paper and reduce the print quality.

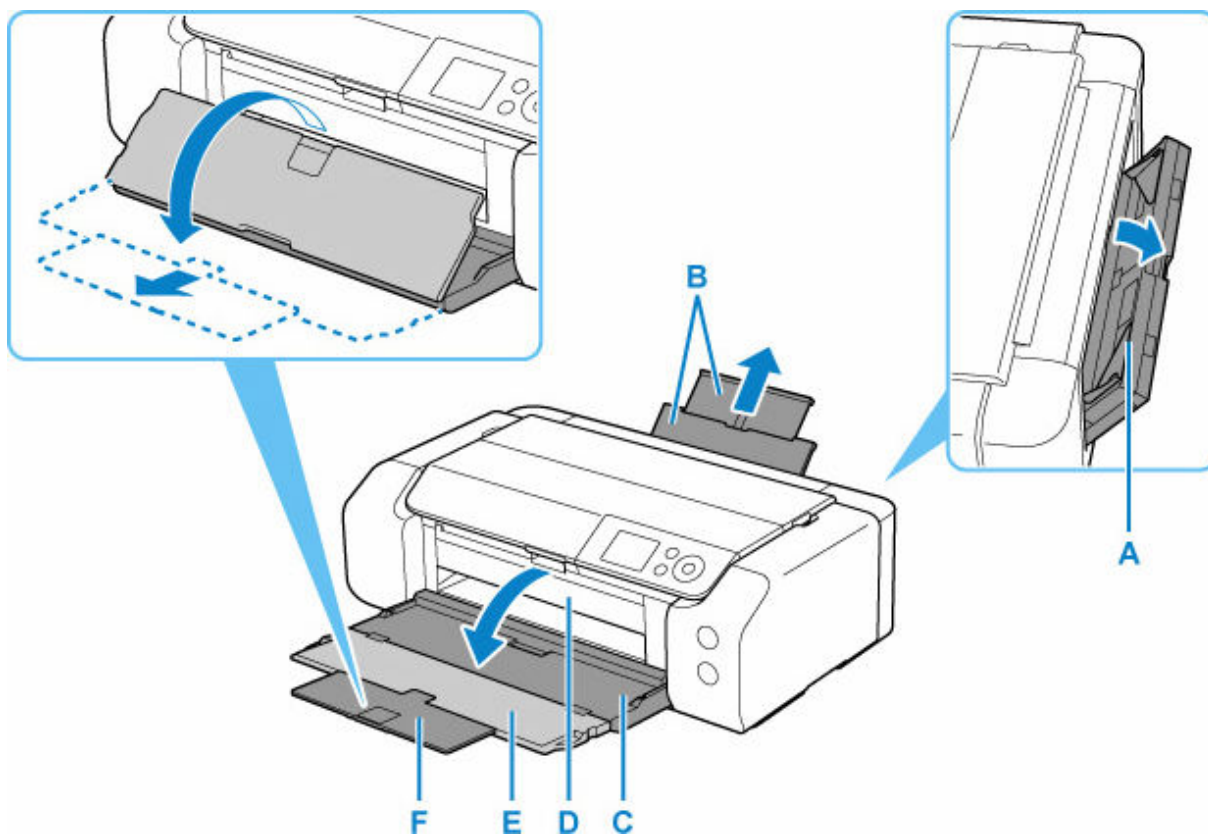
2. Open the manual feed tray (A), then extend the paper support (B).

3. Open the paper output tray (C) gently.

»» Important

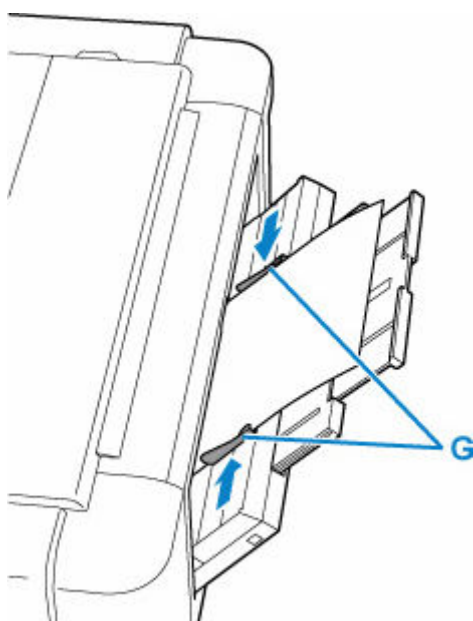
- If the multi-purpose tray guide (D) is open, be sure to close it.

4. Open the output tray extension (E), then pull out the paper output support (F).



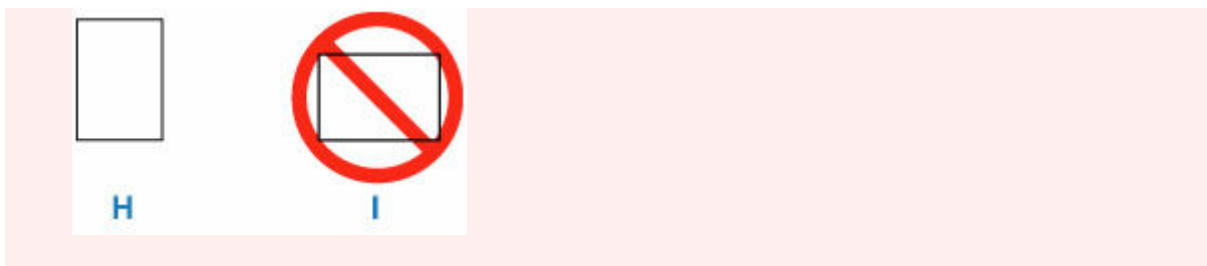
5. Slide the paper guides (G) to open them, and load ONLY ONE SHEET OF PAPER in the center of the manual feed tray WITH THE PRINT SIDE FACING YOU.
6. Slide the paper guides (G) to align them with both sides of the paper stack.

Do not slide the paper guides too hard against the paper. The paper may not be fed properly.



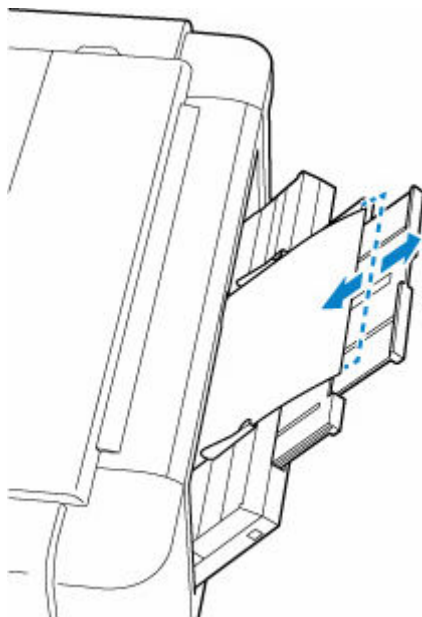
»» Important

- Always load paper in the portrait orientation (H). Loading paper in the landscape orientation (I) can cause paper jams.

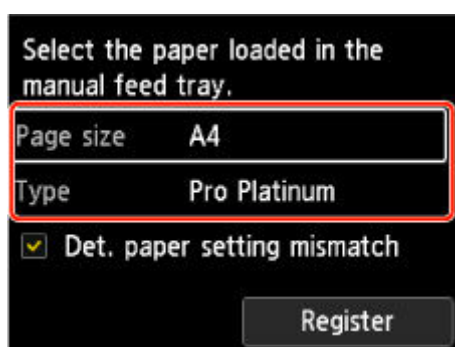


7. Check if the paper is set properly in the manual feed tray.

Make sure that the paper is set firmly against the bottom of the manual feed tray and against the paper guides by slightly jiggling the paper up and down.



8. Select the size and type of paper loaded in the manual feed tray at **Page size and **Type**, select **Register**.**



»» Note

- To continue printing from the manual feed tray, wait until printing is complete, then load the next sheet.
- There are various types of paper, such as paper with a special surface coating for printing photos at optimal quality and paper suitable for documents. Each media type has specific preset settings (how ink is used and sprayed, distance from nozzles, etc.), that allow you to print to that type with optimal image

quality. The wrong paper settings may cause poor printout color quality or scratches on the printed surface. If you notice blurring or uneven colors, increase the print quality setting and try printing again.

- To prevent incorrect printing, this printer has a function that detects whether the settings for the paper loaded on the manual feed tray matches the paper settings. Before printing, make print settings in accordance with the paper settings. When this function is enabled, an error message is displayed if these settings do not match to prevent incorrect printing. When this error message is displayed, check and correct the paper settings.
- For loading long-length paper (paper that the length is up to 39.00 in. (990.6 mm)), the leading edges of paper are lifted depending on the paper weight and printouts may be misaligned. Prevent the leading edges of paper from lifting by holding the parts protruding from the tray or other ways.

When printing on long-length paper, hold ejected paper with your hand or use the printer at the location that paper does not fall. If paper falls, the printed surface may get dirty or be damaged. If you hold paper with your hand, do not pull it forcibly while printing.

Loading Envelopes in the Top Feed

You can load Envelope DL and Envelope Com 10 on the top feed.

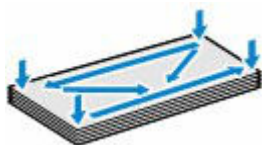
The address is automatically rotated and printed according to the envelope's direction by specifying with the printer driver properly.

Important

- Do not use the following envelopes. They could jam in the printer or cause the printer to malfunction.
 - Envelopes with an embossed or treated surface
 - Envelopes with a double flap
 - Envelopes whose gummed flaps are already moistened and adhesive

1. Prepare envelopes.

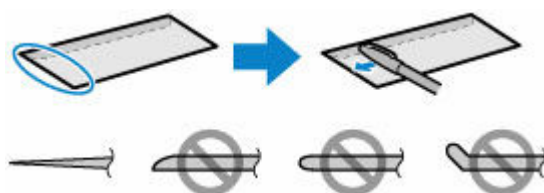
- Press down on all four corners and edges of the envelopes to flatten them.



- If the envelopes are curled, hold the opposite corners and gently twist them in the opposite direction.



- If the corner of the envelope flap is folded, flatten it.
- Use a pen to press the leading edge in the inserting direction flat and sharpen the crease.



The figures above show a side view of the leading edge of the envelope.

Important

- The envelopes may jam in the printer if they are not flat or the edges are not aligned. Make sure that no curl or puff exceeds 0.12 in. (3 mm).

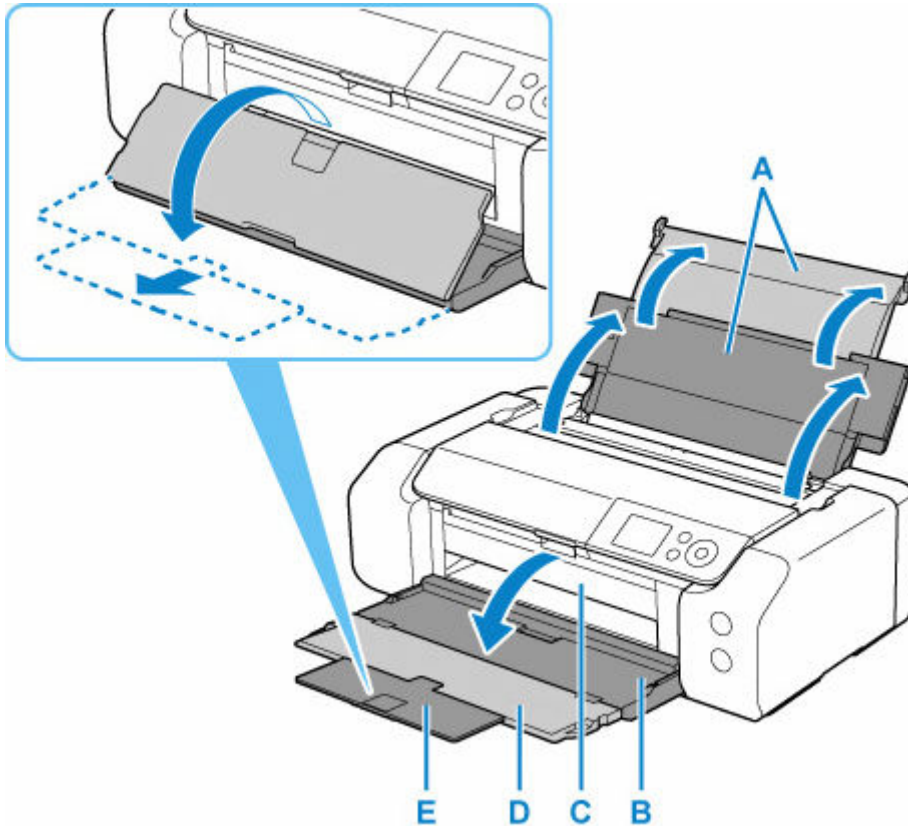
2. Open the paper support (A) of the top feed.

3. Open the paper output tray (B) gently.

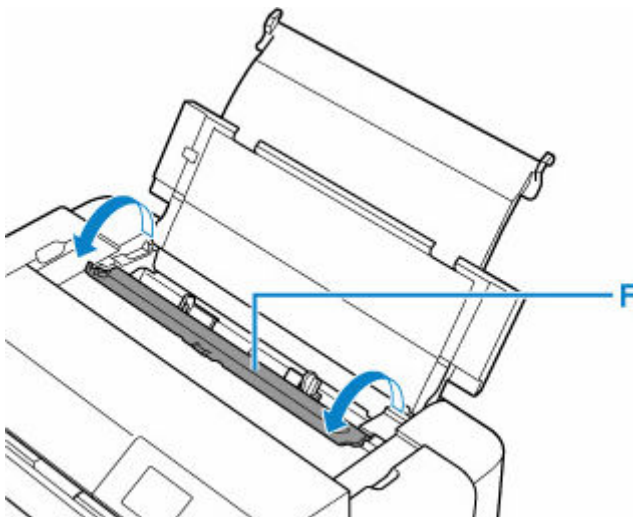
Important

- If the multi-purpose tray guide (C) is open, be sure to close it.

4. Open the output tray extension (D), then pull out the paper output support (E).



5. Open the feed slot cover (F).

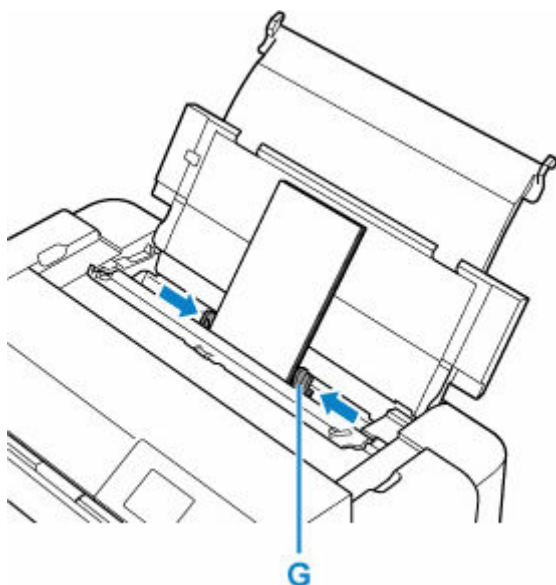


6. Slide right paper guide (G) to open both paper guides and load the envelopes in the center of the top feed WITH THE PRINT SIDE FACING YOU.

Up to 10 envelopes can be loaded at once.

7. Slide right paper guide (G) to align both paper guides with both sides of the paper stack.

Do not slide the paper guides too hard against the envelopes. The envelopes may not be fed properly.

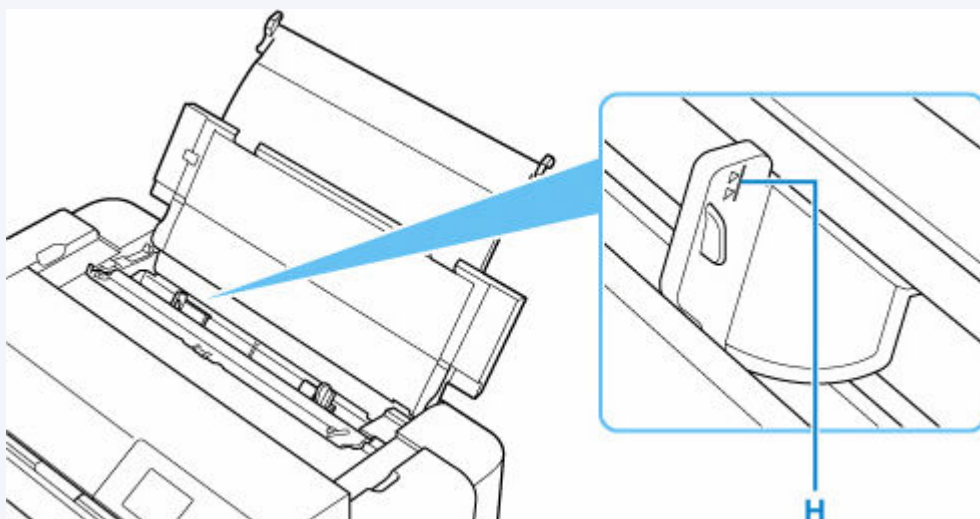


Fold flap of the envelope and load the envelope in portrait orientation with the address side facing up.



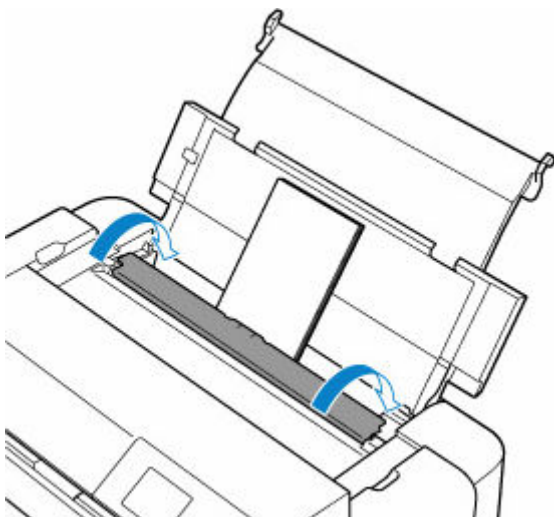
►►► **Note**

- Do not load envelopes higher than the load limit mark (H).

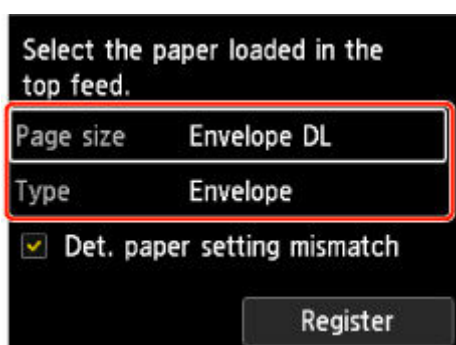


8. Close feed slot cover gently.

The paper information registration screen for the top feed is displayed on the LCD.



9. Select the size and type of envelopes loaded in the top feed at **Page size** and **Type**, select **Register**.



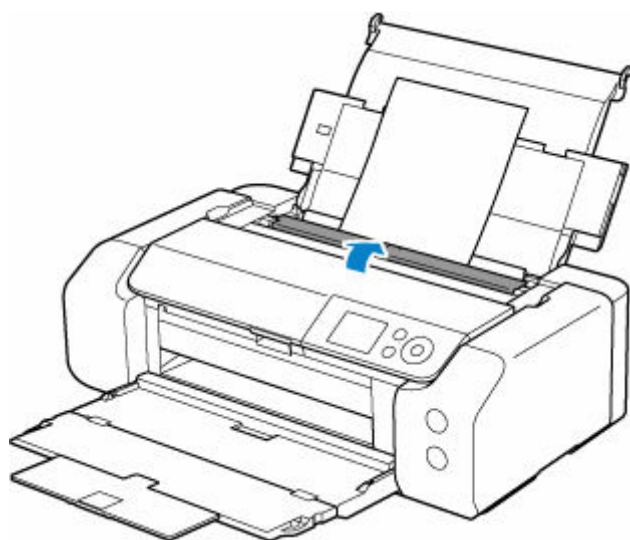
▶▶▶ Note

- To prevent incorrect printing, this printer has a function that detects whether the settings for the paper loaded on the top feed matches the paper settings. Before printing, make print settings in accordance with the paper settings. When this function is enabled, an error message is displayed if these settings do not match to prevent incorrect printing. When this error message is displayed, check and correct the paper settings.

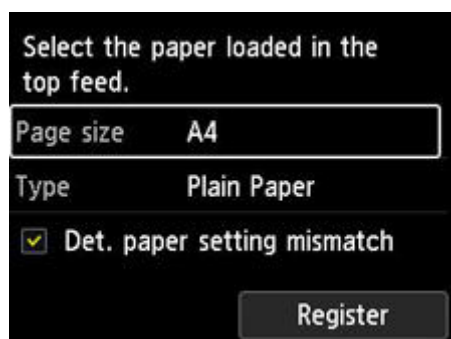
Register Paper Information

By registering the paper size and the media type loaded in the top feed or the manual feed tray, you can prevent the printer from misprinting by displaying the message before printing starts when the paper size or the media type of the loaded paper differs from the paper settings.

When you load paper in the top feed and close the feed slot cover, or load paper in the manual feed tray:



The screen to register the paper information is displayed.



If the loaded paper matches the paper information displayed on the printer's LCD, select **Register**.

If it is different, select **Page size** or **Type**. Then register the correct paper information.

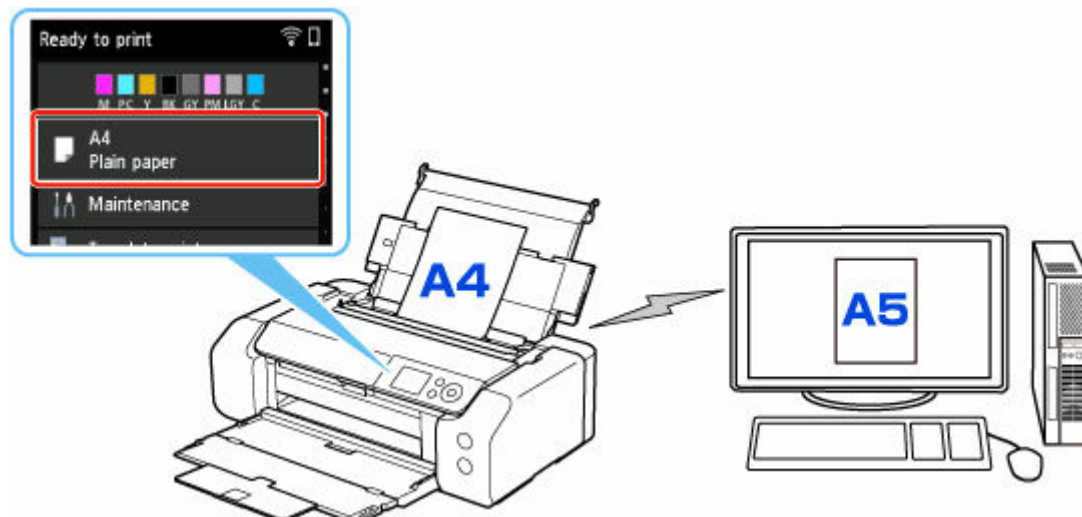
»» Important

- For the appropriate combination of the paper settings specified in the printer driver and the paper information registered in the printer, refer to the following.
 - ➔ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Media Type\)](#) (Windows)
 - ➔ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Media Type\)](#) (macOS)
 - ➔ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Paper Size\)](#) (Windows)
 - ➔ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Paper Size\)](#) (macOS)

When the paper settings specified when printing differ from the paper information registered in the printer:

Ex:

- Paper settings specified on the printer driver when printing: A5
- Paper information for the top feed registered in the printer: A4



When you start printing, a message is displayed.

➡ [2114](#)

Information about Paper

- **Media Types You Can Use**
- **Paper Load Limit**
- **Unsupported Media Types**
- **Handling Paper**
- **Before Printing on Art Paper**
- **Managing Paper Information on Printer Using Media Configuration Tool**

Media Types You Can Use

For best results, choose paper designed for how you are printing. A variety of paper for documents as well as photos or illustrations is available from Canon. Use genuine Canon paper to print important photos, when possible.

- ➡ [Media Types](#)
- ➡ [Page Sizes](#)
- ➡ [Paper Weight / Thickness](#)

Media Types

Genuine Canon paper

»»» Note

- For warnings on use of the non-printable side, see each product's usage information.
- Page sizes and media types differ depending on the country or region where the paper is sold. For details on page sizes and media types, access the Canon website.
- Genuine Canon paper is not available in some countries or regions. Note that in the United States, Canon paper is not sold by model number. Instead, purchase paper by name.

Paper for printing documents:

- **Canon Red Label Superior** <WOP111>
- **Canon Océ Office Colour Paper** <SAT213>
- **High Resolution Paper** <HR-101N>

Paper for printing photos:

- **Photo Paper Pro Platinum** <PT-101>
- **Glossy Photo Paper "Everyday Use"** <GP-501>
- **Photo Paper Glossy** <GP-701>
- **Photo Paper Plus Glossy II** <PP-201/PP-208/PP-301>
- **Photo Paper Pro Luster** <LU-101>
- **Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss** <SG-201>
- **Matte Photo Paper** <MP-101>
- **Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte** <PM-101>
- **Premium Fine Art Rough** <FA-RG1>

Paper for making original goods:

- **Printable Nail Stickers** <NL-101>
- **Light Fabric Iron-on Transfers** <LF-101>
- **Dark Fabric Iron-on Transfers** <DF-101>

Paper other than genuine Canon paper

- Plain Paper (including recycled paper)
- Envelopes
- T-Shirt Transfers
- Greeting Card
- Card Stock

➡ [Paper Load Limit](#)

➡ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Media Type\)](#) (Windows)

➡ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Media Type\)](#) (macOS)

▶▶▶ Note

- When using art paper, see [Before Printing on Art Paper](#).

Page Sizes

You can use the following page sizes.

▶▶▶ Note

- Page sizes and media types the printer supports differ depending on the OS you are using.

Standard sizes:

- top feed
 - Letter
 - Legal
 - 11"x17"(28x43cm)
 - A5
 - A4
 - A3
 - A3+
 - B5
 - B4
 - KG/4"x6"(10x15)
 - 5"x7"(13x18cm)
 - 7"x10"(18x25cm)
 - 8"x10"(20x25cm)
 - 10"x12"(25x30cm)
 - 210x594mm
 - L(89x127mm)
 - 2L(127x178mm)

- Square 5"
- 12"x12"(30x30cm)
- Hagaki
- Hagaki 2
- Envelope Com 10
- Envelope DL
- Nagagata 3
- Nagagata 4
- Yougata 4
- Yougata 6
- manual feed tray
 - Letter
 - Legal
 - 11"x17"(28x43cm)
 - A4
 - A3
 - A3+
 - B4
 - 8"x10"(20x25cm)
 - 10"x12"(25x30cm)
 - 210x594mm
 - 12"x12"(30x30cm)

Special sizes

Special page sizes must be within the following limits:

- top feed
 - Minimum size: 3.50 x 5.00 in. (89.0 x 127.0 mm)
 - Maximum size: 12.95 x 39.00 in. (329.0 x 990.6 mm)
- manual feed tray
 - Minimum size: 8.00 x 10.00 in. (203.2 x 254.0 mm)
 - Maximum size: 13.00 x 39.00 in. (330.2 x 990.6 mm)

Paper Weight / Thickness

You can use paper in the following weight/thickness ranges.

* Do not use paper heavier or thicker than this, as it could jam in the printer.

- top feed

Plain paper: From 17 to 28 lb (64 to 105 g /m²)

Specialty paper: Up to 80 lb (300 g /m²) / from 4 to 11.8 mil (0.1 to 0.3 mm)

- manual feed tray

Specialty paper: Up to 93 lb (350 g /m²) / from 4 to 23.6 mil (0.1 to 0.6 mm)

Paper Load Limit

This section shows the paper load limits of the top feed, the manual feed tray, and the paper output tray.

➡ [Paper Load Limits of Top Feed and Manual Feed Tray](#)

➡ [Paper Load Limit of Paper Output Tray](#)

▶▶▶ Note

- Page sizes and media types differ depending on the country or region where the paper is sold. For details on page sizes and media types, access the Canon website.

Paper Load Limits of Top Feed and Manual Feed Tray

Genuine Canon Paper

Paper for printing documents:

Media Name <Model No.>	Top Feed
Canon Red Label Superior <WOP111>	Approx. 100 sheets
Canon Océ Office Colour Paper <SAT213>	Approx. 80 sheets
High Resolution Paper <HR-101N> ^{*1}	A4, B5, Letter: Approx. 80 sheets B4: 50 sheets A3: 20 sheets A3+: 1 sheet

Paper for printing photos:

Media Name <Model No.>	Top Feed	Manual Feed Tray
Photo Paper Pro Platinum <PT-101> ^{*2} Glossy Photo Paper "Everyday Use" <GP-501> ^{*2} Photo Paper Glossy <GP-701> ^{*2} Photo Paper Plus Glossy II <PP-201/PP-208/PP-301> ^{*2} Photo Paper Pro Luster <LU-101> ^{*2} Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss <SG-201> ^{*2} Matte Photo Paper <MP-101>	KG/4"x6"(10x15), L(89x127mm), Square 5", Ha- gaki: 20 sheets A4, A3, Let- ter, 5"x7"(13x18cm), 8"x10"(20x25cm), 2L(127x178mm): 10 sheets A3+, 10"x12"(25x30cm): 1 sheet	1 sheet
Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte <PM-101> Premium Fine Art Rough <FA-RG1>	N/A	1 sheet

Paper for making original goods:

Media Name <Model No.>	Top Feed	Manual Feed Tray
Light Fabric Iron-on Transfers <LF-101>	1 sheet	1 sheet

Dark Fabric Iron-on Transfers <DF-101>		

Paper other than Genuine Canon Paper

Common Name	Top Feed	Manual Feed Tray
Plain Paper (including recycled paper)*1	A5, A4, B5, Letter: Approx. 100 sheets A3, B4, Legal, 11"x17"(28x43cm): Approx. 50 sheets	N/A
Envelopes	10 sheets	N/A
T-Shirt Transfers	1 sheet	N/A
Greeting Card	1 sheet	1 sheet
Card Stock	1 sheet	1 sheet

*1 Normal feeding at maximum capacity may not be possible with some types of paper, or under very high or low temperature or humidity. In this case, load half the amount of paper or less.

*2 Feeding from a loaded stack of paper may leave marks on the printed side or prevent efficient feeding. In this case, load one sheet at a time.

»» Note

- When using non-Canon genuine specialty paper, load one sheet at a time in the top feed or manual feed tray.

Paper Load Limit of Paper Output Tray

Genuine Canon Paper

Paper for printing documents:

Media Name <Model No.>	Paper Output Tray
Canon Red Label Superior <WOP111> Canon Océ Office Colour Paper <SAT213> High Resolution Paper <HR-101N>	Approx. 50 sheets

Paper other than Genuine Canon Paper

Common Name	Paper Output Tray
Plain Paper (including recycled paper)	Approx. 50 sheets

When continuing printing with paper other than the above, we recommend removing already printed paper from the paper output tray to avoid smearing or discoloration.

Unsupported Media Types

Do not use the following types of paper. Using such paper will cause not only unsatisfactory results, but also the printer to jam or malfunction.

- Folded, curled, or wrinkled paper
- Damp paper
- Paper that is too thin
- Paper that is too thick
- Paper thinner than a postcard, including plain paper or notepad paper cut to a small size (when printing on paper smaller than A5)
- Picture postcards
- Postcards affixed with photos or stickers
- Envelopes with a double flap
- Envelopes with an embossed or treated surface
- Envelopes whose gummed flaps are already moistened and adhesive
- Any type of paper with holes
- Paper that is not rectangular
- Paper bound with staples or glue
- Paper with an adhesive surface on the back such as label seal
- Paper decorated with glitter, etc.

Handling Paper

- Be careful not to rub or scratch the surfaces of any types of paper when handling.
- Hold the paper as closely as possible to its edges and try not to touch the printing surface. The print quality may be degraded if the printing surface is smudged with sweat or oil that comes from your hands.
- Do not touch the printed surface until the ink is dried. Even when the ink is dried, be careful not to touch the printed surface as much as possible when handling.
- Take out only the necessary number of paper from the package, just before printing.
- To avoid curling, when you do not print, put unused paper back into the package and keep it on a level surface. And also, store it avoiding heat, humidity, and direct sunlight.

Before Printing on Art Paper

When using art paper, dust is liable to be generated. It is therefore recommended that paper dust be removed on art paper just before printing.

You will need a soft hair brush (or similar brush used to clean office automation equipment).

The wider the brush, the more effective it will be.



OK - soft brush made from material such as polypropylene, polyethylene, horse hair or goat hair.

»» Important

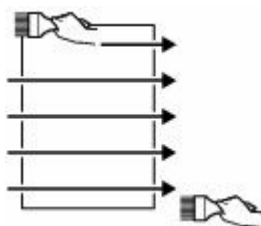
- Be sure not to use brushes as shown below. The printing surface may be damaged.



Not OK - brush made from hard material, cloth or washcloth, sticky and abrasive materials.

Paper dust removal procedure:

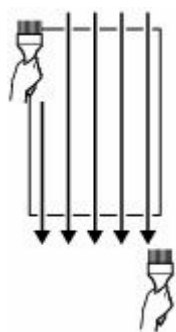
1. Check that the brush is not wet and free from dust or dirt.
2. Brush the overall printing surface carefully in one direction.



»» Important

- Be sure to brush all the way across the paper; do not start brushing at the middle or stop halfway.
- Be careful not to touch the printing surface as much as possible.

3. To complete the removal of paper dust, brush the paper in the other direction from top to bottom.



Settings

➤ **Changing Settings from Operation Panel**

- LCD and Operation Panel
- Setting Items on Operation Panel
- Setting Administrator Password on Operation Panel

➤ **Handling Printer Configuration Using the Web Browser**

- Configuration Changes / Display Printer Status Using Web Browser
- Settings That Can Be Changed From the Browser
- Setting Password
- Generating Server Certificate
- Not Accessible From Web Browser
- Registering Printer's Root Certificate to Web Browser for SSL/TLS Communication (Remote UI)
- Registering Printer's Root Certificate to Local Computer for SSL Communication

➤ **Network Setting**

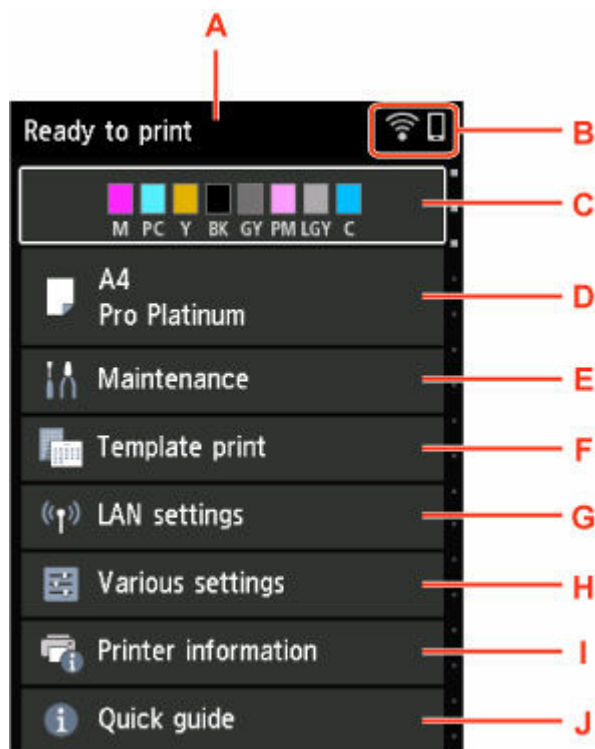
Changing Settings from Operation Panel

- **LCD and Operation Panel**
- **Setting Items on Operation Panel**
- **Setting Administrator Password on Operation Panel**

LCD and Operation Panel

Turning on the printer displays the HOME screen.

Using the ▲ ▼ button to select an item from the menu and pressing the **OK** button enable you to perform each setting.



A: Printer status display area

Displays printer status, messages, and other information.

➡ [Notification Messages](#)

B: Network

Displays network status by the icon.

The icon differs depending on the network of use or the network status.



Wi-Fi is enabled and the printer is connected to the wireless router.

»» Note

- Depending on the signal state, the icon will change.



(Signal strength: 81 % or more): You can use the printer over Wi-Fi without any problems.



(Signal strength: 51 % or more): The problem such as the printer cannot print may occur according to the network status. We recommend placing the printer near the wireless router.



(Signal strength: 50 % or less): The problem such as the printer cannot print may occur. Place the printer near the wireless router.



Wi-Fi is enabled but the printer is not connected to the wireless router.



Wired LAN is enabled.



Wireless Direct is enabled.



Network is disabled.

C: Ink status display area

Displays the ink status. Selecting this item enables you to check the remaining amount of ink and model number of ink tank.

➡ [Checking Ink Level](#)

D: Paper settings display area

Displays information about the paper in the top feed. Selecting this item enables you to specify the size and type of paper loaded in the top feed.

E: Maintenance

Select this item to perform maintenance of the printer.

F: Template print

You can print and make as lined or graph paper.

G: LAN settings

You can perform settings relating to network.

➡ [Entering Numbers, Letters, and Symbols](#)

H: Various settings

You can change printer settings such as settings when printing.

➡ [Entering Numbers, Letters, and Symbols](#)

I: Printer information

Displays printer information and error histories.

J: Quick guide

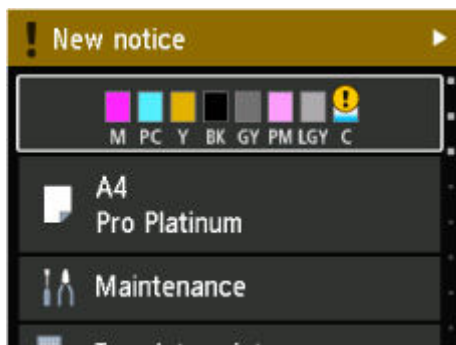
Displays how to operate the printer and QR code accessing to the Online Manual.

▶▶▶ Note

- When printing is in progress, you cannot select grayed out items.

Notification Messages

When the ink is low or there is another notification, **New notice** appears in the printer status display area.



Press the ► button to display the **Notice list** screen to check messages.

Use the ▲ ▼ button to select a message and press the **OK** button to view the message details screen to check the details and take action.

Setting Items on Operation Panel

▶▶▶ Note

- The administrator password is required to change some setting items if it is enabled for changing settings using the operation panel.

For more on setting items which the administrator password is required:

➡ [Setting Administrator Password on Operation Panel](#)

Items for Printer

- ➡ [Other printer settings](#)
- ➡ [Language selection](#)
- ➡ [Web service setup](#)
- ➡ [Energy saving settings](#)
- ➡ [Quiet setting](#)

Items for Paper/Printing

- ➡ [Print settings](#)
- ➡ [AirPrint print settings](#)
- ➡ [Smartphone photo print settings](#)
- ➡ [Paper-related settings](#)

Items for Maintenance/Management

- ➡ [Maintenance](#)
- ➡ [LAN settings](#)
- ➡ [Firmware update](#)
- ➡ [Reset settings](#)
- ➡ [Printer information](#)

Maintenance

This item is displayed on the HOME screen.

- **Nozzle Check**

Prints out the nozzle check pattern.

➡ [Checking for Nozzle Clogging](#)

- **Print Head Cleaning**

Select this to clean the print head.

➡ [Cleaning the Print Head](#)

➡ [Deep Print Head Cleaning](#)

- **Print Head Alignment**

Adjusts the alignment of print head.

➡ [Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Align Colors](#)

➡ [Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Align Colors](#)

- **Roller Cleaning**

Select this mode when cleaning the paper feed rollers.

➡ [Cleaning Paper Feed Rollers](#)

- **Bottom Plate Cleaning**

Select this mode when cleaning the inside of the printer.

➡ [Performing Bottom Plate Cleaning](#)

LAN settings

This item is displayed on the HOME screen.

Important

- The administrator password is required to change the settings if it is enabled to change the settings on the operation panel using the administrator password.

- ➡ [Wi-Fi](#)
- ➡ [Wireless Direct](#)
- ➡ [Wired LAN](#)

To print the network settings, select **Print details** and select **Yes**.

- ➡ [Printing Network Settings](#)

Important

- The network settings printout contains important information about your network. Handle it with care.

Wi-Fi

Wi-Fi setting list

The network settings information of the printer appears when it is connected by Wi-Fi. (Some setting items are not displayed depending on the printer settings.)

Items	Setting
Connection	Enabled (connected)/Enabled (disconnected)/Disable
Network name (SSID)	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Frequency	2.4 GHz/5 GHz
Wi-Fi security	Disable WPA-PSK(AES) WPA2-PSK(AES) WPA/WPA2-PSK WPA3-SAE(AES) WPA2/WPA3-PSK WPA-EAP(AES) WPA2-EAP(AES) WPA3-EAP(AES) WPA/WPA2-EAP(AES) WPA2/WPA3-EAP(AES)
Signal strength (%)	XXX
IPv4 address	XXX. XXX. XXX. XXX

IPv4 subnet mask	XXX. XXX. XXX. XXX
IPv4 default gateway	XXX. XXX. XXX. XXX
IPv6 link-local address	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
IPv6 link-local prefix length	XXX
IPv6 manual address	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
IPv6 manual prefix length	XXX
IPv6 stateless address 1	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
IPv6 stateless prefix length 1	XXX
IPv6 stateless address 2	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
IPv6 stateless prefix length 2	XXX
IPv6 stateless address 3	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
IPv6 stateless prefix length 3	XXX
IPv6 stateless address 4	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
IPv6 stateless prefix length 4	XXX
IPv6 default gateway 1	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
IPv6 default gateway 2	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
IPv6 default gateway 3	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
IPv6 default gateway 4	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
MAC address (Wi-Fi)	XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX
IPsec settings	Enable (ESP) / Enable (ESP & AH) / Enable (AH) / Disable
Printer name	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Bonjour service name	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

("XX" represents alphanumeric characters.)

To change the setting, select **Settings**.

- **Enable/disable Wi-Fi**

Enables/disables Wi-Fi.

- **Wi-Fi setup**

Selects the setup method for Wi-Fi connection.

- **Easy wireless connect**

Select if you specify the settings of the access point information to the printer directly from a device (e.g. smartphone, or tablet) without operating the wireless router. Follow the on-screen instructions of the connecting device for the setup procedure.

- **Manual connect**

Select when you perform settings for Wi-Fi manually using the operation panel of the printer.

- **WPS (Push button method)**

Select when you perform settings for Wi-Fi using a wireless router supporting a Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS) push button method. Follow the on-screen instructions during setup.

- **Other connection types**

- **WPS (PIN code method)**

Select when you perform settings for Wi-Fi using a wireless router supporting a Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS) PIN code method. Follow the on-screen instructions during setup.

- **Advanced**

For details on each setting item:

➡ [Advanced setup](#)

Wireless Direct

Wireless Direct setting list

The network settings information of the printer appears when it is connected by the wireless direct. (Some setting items are not displayed depending on the printer settings.)

Items	Setting
Connection	Enable/Disable
Network (SSID)/device name	DIRECT-XXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Password	XXXXXXXXXX
Frequency	2.4 GHz/5 GHz
Wi-Fi security	WPA2-PSK(AES)
No. of printers connected now	XX/XX
IPv4 address	XXX. XXX. XXX. XXX
IPv4 subnet mask	XXX. XXX. XXX. XXX
IPv4 default gateway	XXX. XXX. XXX. XXX
IPv6 link-local address	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
IPv6 link-local prefix length	XXX

MAC address (Wi-Fi)	XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX
IPsec settings	Enable (ESP) / Enable (ESP & AH) / Enable (AH) / Disable
Printer name	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Bonjour service name	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

("XX" represents alphanumeric characters.)

To change the setting, select **Settings**.

- **Enable/disable Wireless Direct**

Enables/disables Wireless Direct.

- **Change SSID/device name**

Changes the identifier (SSID/the printer's name displayed on a Wi-Fi Direct compatible device) for Wireless Direct.

- **Change password**

Changes the password for Wireless Direct.

- **Connection request confirmation**

Changes the display/non-display of the confirmation screen when Wi-Fi Direct compatible devices are connected to the printer.

- **Advanced**

For details on each setting item:

➡ [Advanced setup](#)

- **2.4GHz/5GHz Switch**

Sets the frequency to use.

Wired LAN

Wired LAN setting list

The network settings information of the printer appears when it is connected by wired LAN. (Some setting items are not displayed depending on the printer settings.)

Items	Setting
Connection	Enabled (connected)/Enabled (disconnected)/Disable
IPv4 address	XXX. XXX. XXX. XXX
IPv4 subnet mask	XXX. XXX. XXX. XXX
IPv4 default gateway	XXX. XXX. XXX. XXX

IPv6 link-local address	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
IPv6 link-local prefix length	XXX
IPv6 manual address	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
IPv6 manual prefix length	XXX
IPv6 stateless address 1	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
IPv6 stateless prefix length 1	XXX
IPv6 stateless address 2	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
IPv6 stateless prefix length 2	XXX
IPv6 stateless address 3	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
IPv6 stateless prefix length 3	XXX
IPv6 stateless address 4	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
IPv6 stateless prefix length 4	XXX
IPv6 default gateway 1	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
IPv6 default gateway 2	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
IPv6 default gateway 3	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
IPv6 default gateway 4	XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX: XXXX
MAC address (Wired LAN)	XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX
IPsec settings	Enable (ESP) / Enable (ESP & AH) / Enable (AH) / Disable
Printer name	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Bonjour service name	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

("XX" represents alphanumeric characters.)

To change the setting, select **Settings**.

- **Enable/disable Wired LAN**

Enables/disables wired LAN.

- **Advanced**

For details on each setting item:

Advanced setup

- **Set printer name**

Specifies the printer name.

»»» Note

- You cannot use the same printer name as that already used for other LAN connected devices.
- You cannot use a hyphen for the initial or last character of the printer name.

- **TCP/IP settings**

Performs IPv4 or IPv6 setting.

- **WSD settings**

Setting items when you use WSD (one of the network protocols supported in Windows).

- **Enable/disable WSD**

Selects whether WSD is enabled or disabled.

»»» Note

- When this setting is enabled, the printer icon is displayed on the Network Explorer in Windows.

- **Optimize inbound WSD**

Selecting **Enable** allows you to receive the WSD printing data faster.

- **Timeout settings**

Specifies the timeout length.

- **Bonjour settings**

Setting items when you use Bonjour.

- **Enable/disable Bonjour**

Selecting **Enable** allows you to use Bonjour to perform the network settings.

- **Service name**

Specifies the Bonjour service name.

»»» Note

- You cannot use the same service name as that already used for other LAN connected devices.

- **IEEE802.1X settings**

Sets the IEEE802.1X authentication method, etc.

- **LPR protocol settings**

Enables/disables the LPR setting.

- **RAW protocol**

Enables/disables RAW printing.

- **LLMNR**

Specifies ON/OFF of LLMNR (Link-Local Multicast Name Resolution). Selecting **ON** allows the printer to detect printer's IP address from the printer name without a DNS server.

- **IPP settings**

Selecting **Enable** allows you to print via the network with the IPP protocol.

- **Wi-Fi DRX settings**

Selecting **Enable** allows you to activate discontinuous reception when using Wi-Fi (discontinuous reception).

 Note

- Depending on the Wi-Fi router used, discontinuous reception may not be activated even though **Enable** is selected.
- Discontinuous reception is enabled only while the printer is on standby. (The LCD is in the screen saver mode.)

- **Wired LAN DRX settings**

Selecting **Enable** allows you to activate discontinuous reception when the printer is connected to a device compatible with wired LAN.

- **IPsec settings**

Selecting **Enable** allows you to specify the IPsec security.

Print settings



This item is displayed when you select **Printer settings** from **Various settings** on the HOME screen.

- **Prevent paper abrasion**

Use this setting only if the print surface becomes smudged.

»» **Important**

- Be sure to set this back to **OFF** after printing since it may result in lower print quality.

- **Auto photo fix settings**

Selecting **Yes** will prioritize the printing of the Exif information in the image.

- **Adjust horizontal print position**

Adjusts the print position when the left/right margins are not aligned.

You can adjust the left/right margins in increments of 0.01 inch/0.1 mm between -0.12 inch/-3 mm and +0.12 inch/+3 mm centered on the horizontal center of the paper.

»» **Important**

- For A3, A3+ and 12" x 12" (30 x 30 cm), you can adjust the left/right margins between -0.06 in. (-1.5 mm) and +0.06 in. (+1.5 mm) even if you specify the value over 0.06 in. (1.5 mm).

- **Magnification level for borderless**

Selects the amount of image that extends off the paper when printing in borderless (full).

When performing Borderless Printing, slight cropping may occur at the edges since the printed image is enlarged to fill the whole page. You can change the width to be cropped from the borders of the original image as needed.

»» **Important**

- Settings will become ineffective in the following situations:
 - Printing from a standard form.

»» **Note**

- When performing settings from application software or the printer driver, these settings will be prioritized.
- If printouts contain margins even though you are printing in Borderless, specifying **Large** for this setting may help solve the problem.

Other printer settings



This item is displayed when you select **Printer settings** from **Various settings** on the HOME screen.

»» Important

- The administrator password is required to change the settings if it is enabled to change the settings on the operation panel using the administrator password.

- **Date/time settings**

Sets the current date and time.

- **Date display format**

Changes the display format of dates when printed.

- **Key repeat**

Enables/Disables continuous input by pressing and holding down the ▲▼◀▶ buttons when selecting a menu or setting item.

- **Use of Remote UI**

Enables/Disables Remote UI.

- **Keyboard layout**

You can select a layout to display on the LCD from the keyboard layouts below.

- **QWERTY**
- **QWERTZ**
- **AZERTY**

Language selection



This item is displayed when you select **Printer settings** from **Various settings** on the HOME screen.

Changes the language for messages and menus on the LCD.

»» Important

- The administrator password is required to change the settings if it is enabled to change the settings on the operation panel using the administrator password.

Firmware update



This item is displayed when you select **Printer settings** from **Various settings** on the HOME screen.

You can update the firmware of the printer, check the firmware version, or perform settings of a notification screen, a DNS server and a proxy server.

»» Important

- The administrator password is required to change the settings if it is enabled to change the settings on the operation panel using the administrator password.
- When you use this function, make sure the printer is connected to the Internet.
- Do not turn off the printer while firmware is being updated.

• Install update

Performs the firmware update of the printer. If you select **Yes**, the firmware update starts. Follow the on-screen instructions to perform update.

• Check current version

You can check the current firmware version.

• Update notification settings

You can set the printer to display the firmware update information on the LCD when the firmware update is available.

When **Idle/Power off** is selected, the printer informs you of the update during idle and the update information also appears when you press the **ON** button.

• Auto update settings

Select **ON** to automatically update the firmware to the latest version.

• DNS server setup

Performs settings for a DNS server. Select **Auto setup** or **Manual setup**. If you select **Manual setup**, follow the display on the LCD to perform settings.

• Proxy server setup

Performs settings for a proxy server. Follow the display on the LCD to perform settings.

Paper-related settings



This item is displayed when you select **Printer settings** from **Various settings** on the HOME screen.

- **Top feed paper settings**

Set the paper size and the media type of paper loaded in the top feed.

- **Manual feed tray paper settings**

Set the paper size and the media type of paper loaded in the manual feed tray.

- **Check paper replacement**

If you select **Yes**, the printer detects that the paper is loaded or removed.

When the paper registration screen is displayed after loading paper, register the paper size and the media type.

- **Det. paper setting mismatch**

If you select **Yes**, the printer detects whether the paper size and the media type are the same as those registered. If printing starts with the settings that do not match, an error message appears on the LCD.

➡ [Register Paper Information](#)

- **Advanced paper settings**

Perform the following settings for each media type.

- **Paper thickness (head height)**
- **Pause between scans**
- **Pause between pages**
- **Detect paper width**

Selecting **Reset paper settings by paper**, **Yes** and pressing the **OK** button initializes the settings. Entering the administrator password is required if it is enabled.

- **Print advanced paper settings**

Prints out each setting specified in **Advanced paper settings**.

- **Reset paper settings for all paper**

Initializes each setting specified in **Advanced paper settings**.

Entering the administrator password is required if it is enabled.

Energy saving settings



This item is displayed when you select **Printer settings** from **Various settings** on the HOME screen.

Allows you to turn on/off the printer automatically to save electricity.

»» Important

- The administrator password is required to change settings if it is enabled for changing settings using the operation panel.

»» Note

- If this setting is changed, power consumption may increase.

- **Auto power off**

Specifies the length of time to turn off the printer automatically when no operation is made or no printing data is sent to the printer.

- **Auto power on**

Selecting **ON** enables the printer to turn on automatically when printing data is sent to the printer.

Quiet setting



This item is displayed when you select **Printer settings** from **Various settings** on the HOME screen.

Enable this function on the printer if you want to reduce the operating noise, such as when printing at night.

»» Important

- The administrator password is required to change the settings if it is enabled to change the settings on the operation panel using the administrator password.

• ON

Select to reduce the operating noise when printing.

»» Important

- Operating speed is reduced compared to when **OFF** is selected.
- This function may not be so effective depending on the printer's setting. Furthermore, certain noise, such as when the printer is preparing for printing, is not reduced.

• OFF

Select when you do not use the quiet mode.

Reset settings



This item is displayed when you select **Printer settings** from **Various settings** on the HOME screen.

You can set the settings back to the default.

»» Important

- The administrator password is required to change the settings if it is enabled to change the settings on the operation panel using the administrator password.

- **Web service setup only**

Sets the Web service settings back to the default.

- **LAN settings only**

Sets the LAN settings back to the default.

- **Settings only**

Returns the settings such as the paper size, media type, or other setting items back to the default. The LAN settings is not returned back to the default.

- **Reset all**

Sets all settings you made to the printer back to the default. The administrator password specified for the printer is initialized.

➡ Default Administrator Password

»» Note

- You cannot set the following setting items back to the default:
 - The language displayed on the LCD
 - The current position of the print head
 - CSR (Certificate Signing Request) for encryption method (SSL/TLS) setting
 - Media information registered to the printer by using Media Configuration Tool

Web service setup



This item is displayed when you select **Various settings** on the HOME screen.

»» Important

- The administrator password is required to change the settings if it is enabled to change the settings on the operation panel using the administrator password.

- **Web service usage registration/Web service usage cancellation**

Registers/Deletes Web service usage to use the printer device information to/from cloud service.

- **Web service connection setup**

The following setting items are available.

- **Cloud Printing Center setup**

Registers/Deletes the printer to/from Canon Cloud Printing Center.

- **Check Web service setup**

Make sure whether the printer is registered to Canon Cloud Printing Center.

- **Issue registration code**

In order to link the web service and printer, obtain the registration code from the service origin.

- **DNS server setup**

Performs settings for a DNS server. Select **Auto setup** or **Manual setup**. If you select **Manual setup**, follow the display on the LCD to perform settings.

- **Proxy server setup**

Performs settings for a proxy server. Follow the display on the LCD to perform settings.

Printer information

This item is displayed on the HOME screen.

- **System information**

Displays printer's system information.

- **Error history**

Displays the error history.

For more on the error code, refer to [List of Support Codes for Printer Errors](#).

AirPrint print settings



This item is displayed when you select **Printer settings** from **Various settings** on the HOME screen.

You can change the print settings when printing using AirPrint from the macOS device or the iOS device.

- **Print quality settings**

- **Color mode**

Select the color correction method suited to the type of document to be printed.

»» Important

- Even if you select ICC profile, printing is performed without ICC profile if ICC profile is not included in the paper information added with Media Configuration Tool. Even if ICC profile is included in the paper information, printing will fail and the paper will be ejected as the blank paper if the Profile is not supported with the printer.

Smartphone photo print settings



This item is displayed when you select **Printer settings** from **Various settings** on the HOME screen.

You can set the correction for image quality when printing photos from the smartphone or tablet.

- **Auto photo fix**

Selecting **ON** will automatically correct to the optimum image quality.

»» Note

- Depending on the print function of the smartphone or tablet used, image correction may not be possible.

Setting Administrator Password on Operation Panel

The administrator password can be set or canceled.

Specifying the administrator password requires you to enter the password to use the items or change the settings below.

- **Web service setup**
- **LAN settings**
- **Other printer settings**
- **Language selection**
- **Firmware update**
- **Energy saving settings**
- **Quiet setting**
- **Administrator password settings**
- **Reset settings**

Follow the procedure below to specify the administrator password.

►►► Important

- The administrator password of the printer is set from the time of purchase.

➡ **Default Administrator Password**

1. [Check that printer is turned on.](#)



2. Select **Various settings** on the HOME screen.

➡ [LCD and Operation Panel](#)

3. Select **Printer settings**.

4. Select **Administrator password settings**.

5. If the authentication screen for an administrator password is displayed, enter a password, then select **OK**.

When the administrator password is not set, the registration confirmation message is displayed. Select **Yes**. The message is displayed again. Then, select **OK** and proceed to step 7.

6. Select **Change administrator password**.

When you do not set the administrator password, select **Remove administrator password**. Select **Yes** in the displayed screen. The message is displayed again. Then, select **OK**.

7. Select the effective range of the administrator password.

Remote UI and other tools

To change the setting using the remote UI or a certain software, the administrator password needs to be entered.

LCD, Remote UI, and other tools

To change the setting using the operation panel of this printer, remote UI or a certain software, the administrator password needs to be entered.

8. Enter the administrator password.

Enter the password using 4 to 32 alphanumeric characters and symbols.

»» Important

- From a security point of view, it is recommended to set the password of 8 characters or more in combination of alphanumeric characters and symbols.

9. Select **Apply.**

10. Enter the administrator password again.

11. Select **Apply.**

The administrator password is available.

Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer (Windows)

- **Changing the Print Options**
- **Managing the Printer Power**
- **Reducing the Printer Noise**
- **Changing the Printer Operation Mode**

Changing the Print Options

You can change the detailed printer driver settings for print data that is sent from an application software.

Check this check box if part of the image data is cut off, the paper source during printing differs from the driver settings, or printing fails.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Click **Print Options...** on the **Page Setup** tab

The **Print Options** dialog box opens.

3. Change the individual settings

If necessary, change the setting of each item, and then click **OK**.

The **Page Setup** tab is displayed again.

Managing the Printer Power

This function allows you to manage the printer power from the Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool.



Power Off

The **Power Off** function turns off the printer. When you use this function, you will not be able to turn the printer on from the Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool.

1. Open [Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool](#)

2. Perform power off

Click **Power Off**. When the confirmation message appears, click **OK**.

The printer power switches off.



Auto Power

Auto Power allows you to set **Auto Power On** and **Auto Power Off**.

The **Auto Power On** function automatically turns on the printer when data is received.

The **Auto Power Off** function automatically turns off the printer when there are no operations from the printer driver or the printer for a specified period of time.

1. Open the [Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool](#)
2. Check that the printer is on and then click **Auto Power**

The **Auto Power Settings** dialog box will open.

▶▶▶ Note

- If the printer is off or if communication between the printer and the computer is disabled, an error message may appear because the computer cannot collect the printer status. If this happens, click **OK** to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.

3. If necessary, complete the following settings:

Auto Power On

Select the auto-power on setting.

Select **Disable** to prevent the auto-power on feature from functioning.

Check that the printer is on, and then click **OK** to change the printer settings.

Select **Enable** to turn the printer on automatically when print data is sent to it.

Auto Power Off

Specify the time from the list. When this time lapses without any operations from the printer driver or the printer, the printer is turned off automatically.

Note

- Enabling auto power on, disabling auto power off, or extending the time for auto power off will increase power consumption.

4. Apply the settings

Click **OK**. When the confirmation message appears, click **OK**.

The setting is enabled after this. When you want to disable this function, select **Disable** from the list according to the same procedure.

Note

- When the printer is turned off, the Canon IJ Status Monitor message varies depending on the **Auto Power On** setting.

When the setting is **Enable**, "Printer is standing by" is displayed. When the setting is **Disable**, "Cannot communicate with printer" is displayed.

Reducing the Printer Noise

The quiet mode allows you to reduce the operating noise of this printer. Select when you wish to reduce the operating noise of the printer at night, etc.

Using this function may lower the print speed.



Quiet Settings

1. Open [Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool](#)

2. Click **Quiet Settings**

The [Quiet Settings dialog box](#) opens.

▶▶▶ Note

- If the printer is off or if communication between the printer and the computer is disabled, an error message may appear because the computer cannot collect the printer status. If this happens, click **OK** to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.

3. Set the quiet mode

Enable quiet mode and configure quiet mode settings.

4. Apply the settings

Check that the printer is on and then click **OK**.

Click **OK** when the confirmation message appears.

The settings are enabled hereafter.

▶▶▶ Note

- The effects of the quiet mode may be less depending on the paper source and the print quality settings.

Changing the Printer Operation Mode

If necessary, switch between various modes of printer operation.

If you want to change printer settings, open one of the following two screens, and configure settings.

- [Custom Settings in the Maintenance Tab](#)
- [Other Settings in Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool](#)

For functions related to print settings, go to **Custom Settings** in the **Maintenance** Tab. For other settings, go to **Other Settings** in Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool.

Custom Settings in the Maintenance Tab

1. Open the **Maintenance** Tab
2. Check that the printer power is on, and click **Custom Settings**

The [Custom Settings dialog box](#) opens.

▶▶▶ Note

- If the printer is off or if communication between the printer and the computer is disabled, an error message may appear because the computer cannot collect the printer status.
If this happens, click **OK** to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.

3. Configure settings

If necessary, switch between various modes of printer operation.

4. Apply the settings

Click **OK** and when the confirmation message appears, click **OK**.

The printer operates with the modified settings hereafter.

Other Settings in Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool

1. Open the [Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool](#)
2. Check that the printer is on and then click **Other Settings**

The [Other Settings dialog box](#) opens.

▶▶▶ Note

- If the printer is off or if communication between the printer and the computer is disabled, an error message may appear because the computer cannot collect the printer status.
If this happens, click **OK** to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.

3. Configure settings

If necessary, switch between various modes of printer operation.

4. Apply the settings

Click **OK** and when the confirmation message appears, click **OK**.

The printer operates with the modified settings hereafter.

Changing Printer Settings from Your Computer (macOS)

- **Registering a Changed Printing Profile**
- **Managing the Printer Power**
- **Changing the Printer Operation Mode**
- **Updating Media Information in Printer Driver**
 - Correcting Media Information in Printer Driver (When Printer Used in Shared Environment)
- **Reducing the Printer Noise**

Registering a Changed Printing Profile

You can name and register the printing profile you made in the [Print Dialog](#). The registered printing profile can be called up from **Presets** to be used. You can also delete the unnecessary printing profile.

The procedure for registering a printing profile is as follows:

Registering a Printing Profile

1. In the Print dialog, set the necessary items
2. Select **Save Current Settings as Preset...** from the **Presets**
3. Save the settings

In the displayed dialog, enter a name in **Preset Name**, and if necessary, set **Available For**. Then click **OK**.

»» Important

- There are also print settings that cannot be saved to preset.

Using Registered Printing Profile

1. On **Presets** in the Print dialog, select the name of printing profile you want to use
Printing profile in the Print dialog will be updated to the called profile.

Deleting Unnecessary Printing Profile

1. Select the printing profile to be deleted

In the print dialog, select **Edit Preset List...** in the **Presets** section. Then in the dialog that appears, select the name of the printing profile to be deleted.

2. Delete the printing profile

Click -, and click **OK**. The selected printing profiles will be deleted from **Presets**.

Managing the Printer Power

Printer power supply is operated from Remote UI.

Energy saving settings

Energy saving settings allow you to set Auto power off and Auto power on.

Auto power off is the function wherein the printer automatically turns itself off, when data is not sent or the printer remains inactive for a certain period.

The Auto power on function automatically turns on the printer when data is received.

1. Selecting **Printer settings** from [Remote UI](#)

2. Click **Energy saving settings**

3. Complete the following settings:

Auto power off

Specify the time from the list. Printer automatically turns itself off, when data is not sent within the specified time or the printer has remained inactive.

Auto power on

When you check this check box, the printer automatically turns itself on when data is sent.

»»» Note

- Enabling auto power on, disabling auto power off, or extending the time for auto power off will increase power consumption.

4. Apply the settings

Click **OK**.

The printer will operate with the changed settings hereafter.

Changing the Printer Operation Mode

If necessary, switch between various modes of printer operation.

The procedure for configuring **Custom Settings** is as follows:

1. Select **Custom Settings** from the pop-up menu on the [Canon IJ Printer Utility2](#)

▶▶▶ Note

- If the computer is unable to communicate with the printer, a message may be displayed because the computer cannot access the function information that was set on the printer.
If this happens, click **Cancel** to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.

2. If necessary, complete the following settings:

Detects a printable disc in the disc tray

Detects whether compatible media is loaded on the multi-purpose tray during printing on a printable disc, and displays a message if compatible media is not loaded.

Check this check box to detect whether compatible media is loaded when printing.

Uncheck this check box to print without detecting whether compatible media is loaded.

▶▶▶ Important

- If you leave this check box unchecked, the printer may print to the multi-purpose tray even if compatible media is not loaded on the multi-purpose tray. Therefore, you should check this check box under normal circumstances.
- If you load compatible media that has already been printed onto the multi-purpose tray, the printer may detect that no compatible media is loaded on the multi-purpose tray. In this case, uncheck this check box.

Don't detect mismatch of paper settings when printing from computer

When you print documents from your computer, the paper settings in the printer driver and the paper information registered on the printer do not match, this setting disables the message display and allows you to continue printing.

To disable detection of paper setting mismatches, select this check box.

Disable paper width detection when printing from computer

Even if the paper width identified by the printer during printing from the computer differs from the paper width that was set for **Paper Size** in the print dialog box, this function disables the message display and allows you to continue printing.

To disable detection of the paper width during printing, check this check box.

3. Apply the settings

Click **Apply** and when the confirmation message appears, click **OK**.

The printer operates with the modified settings hereafter.

Updating Media Information in Printer Driver

This function gets the latest media information from the printer and updates the media information in the printer driver.

When the media information is updated, the media displayed for **Media Type** on the **Quality & Media** screen is updated to the latest information.

The procedure for updating media information is described below.



Update Media Information

1. From the [Canon IJ Printer Utility2](#) pop-up menu, select **Media Information**

2. Click **Update Media Information**

A dialog appears.

3. Check that the media information has updated

By following the dialog instructions, check that the printer is on, and then click **OK**.

After checking whether or not the printer media information needs to be updated, a message will be displayed.

If the printer media information is up to date, click **OK** and finish updating media information.

If the information needs to be updated, follow the below steps to do so:

4. Update media information

Check the message and click **Update**.

The printer driver media information will update.

When the authentication screen appears, enter the administrator's name and password, and then click **Install Helper**.

»» Important

- It may take some time to update the media information.
- Do not change media information on the printer while you are updating media information on the driver.

5. Finish updating media information

When a confirmation message appears, click **OK**.

The media information will be updated.

»» Important

- Restart the application or software you are printing from after updating media information.

»» Important

- Ensure that a user with administrator privileges carries out the media information update. Users other than administrators can check if a media information update is required, but cannot carry out the update itself.
- When you have added, deleted, or edited media using administrative tools (the Media Configuration Tool) but have not updated the media information, issues may arise such as the inability to print.

»» Note

- If the printer is being shared, **Correct Media Information** will display on the client machine.

Correcting Media Information in Printer Driver (When Printer Used in Shared Environment)

The printer driver media information will be corrected.

Carrying out a media information correction will correct the configuration of the media information in the printer driver.

The procedure for correcting media information is described below.



Correct Media Information

1. From the [Canon IJ Printer Utility2](#) pop-up menu, select **Media Information**

2. Click **Correct Media Information**

After checking whether or not the printer driver's media information is correct, a message will be displayed.

If the printer media information is set correctly, click **OK** and finish correcting media information.

If the information needs to be corrected, follow the below steps to do so:

3. Correct media information

When a confirmation message appears, click **OK**.

The printer driver media information will be corrected.

When the authentication screen appears, enter the administrator's name and password, and then click **Install Helper**.

4. Complete media information correction

When a confirmation message appears, click **OK**.

The paper information will be corrected.

Important

- Restart the application or software you are printing from after correcting media information.

Note

- **Media Information** will only be displayed on the client machine in use when the printer is being shared.

Reducing the Printer Noise

The quiet mode allows you to reduce the operating noise of this printer. Select when you wish to reduce the operating noise of the printer at night, etc.

Using this function may lower the print speed.

1. Select **Printer settings** from [Remote UI](#)

2. Click **Quiet setting**

3. Set the quiet mode

If necessary, specify one of the following items:

Do not use quiet mode

Select this option when you wish to use the printer with volume of normal operating noise.

Use quiet mode

Select this option when you wish to reduce the operating noise of the printer.

4. Apply the settings

Click **OK**.

The settings are enabled hereafter.

Handling Printer Configuration Using the Web Browser

- **Configuration Changes / Display Printer Status Using Web Browser**
- **Settings That Can Be Changed From the Browser**
- **Setting Password**
- **Generating Server Certificate**
- **Not Accessible From Web Browser**
- **Registering Printer's Root Certificate to Web Browser for SSL/TLS Communication (Remote UI)**
- **Registering Printer's Root Certificate to Local Computer for SSL Communication**

Configuration Changes / Display Printer Status Using Web Browser

You can check the printer status and change the printer settings using the web browser on your smartphone, tablet, or computer.

To check the printer status and to change the printer settings, display "Remote UI" on the web browser.

»» Note

- Remote UI is a software that enables you to perform operations, which are usually performed on the printer's operation panel, using a Web browser.
- You can use Remote UI on the following OS and the web browser.
 - macOS device
OS: macOS Mojave 10.14.6 or later
Web browser: Safari 14.0 or later
 - Windows device
OS: Windows 11/Windows 10/Windows 8.1/Windows 7 SP1 or later
Web browser: Microsoft Edge, Google Chrome, Mozilla Firefox
 - iOS/iPadOS device
OS: iOS 14.0 or later, iPadOS 14.0 or later
Web browser: standard installation browser
 - Android device
OS: Android 8.0 or later
Web browser: standard installation browser

1. Check that printer is turned on.

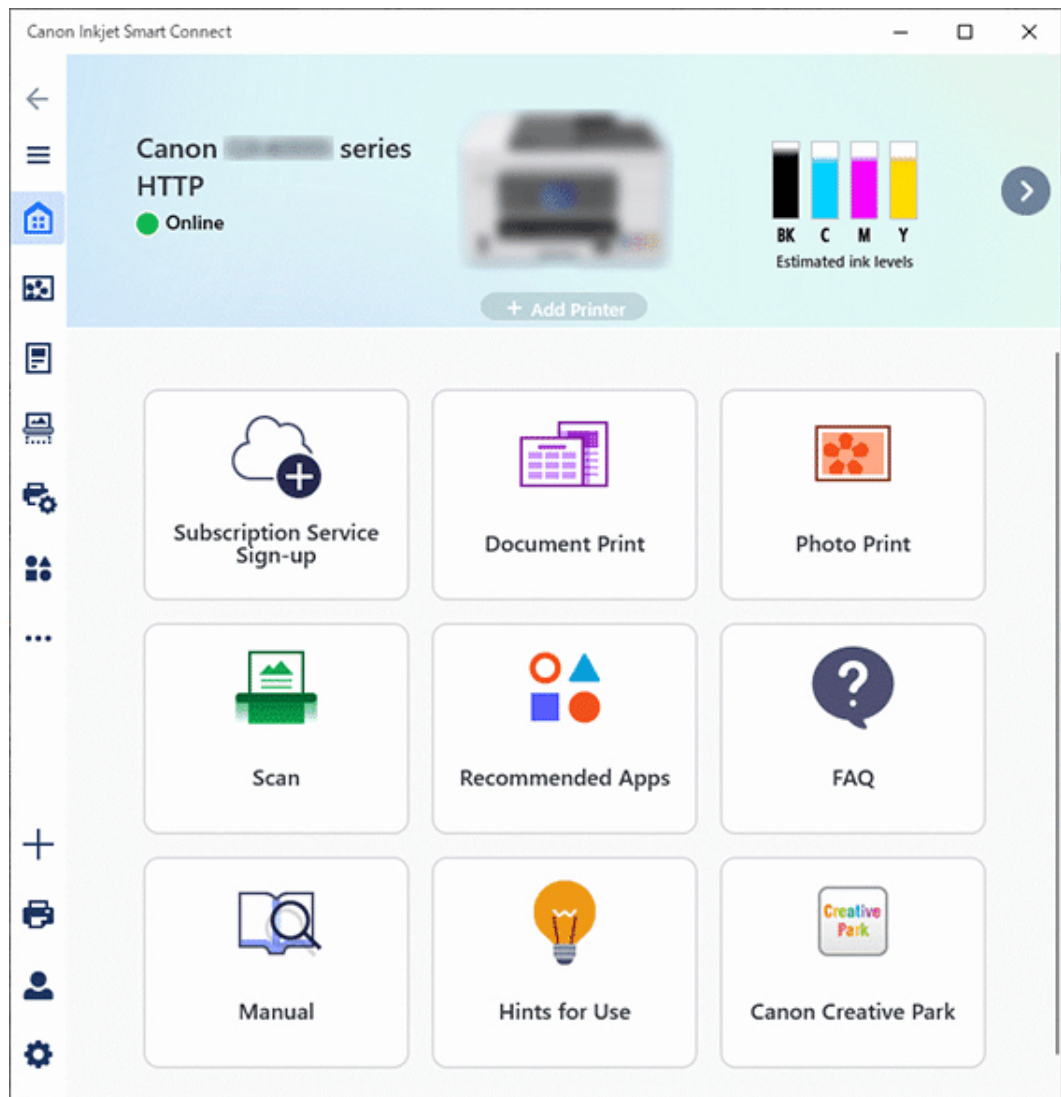
➡ [Turning the Printer On and Off](#)

2. Launch "Remote UI".

• **For Windows:**

1. Start the application software  on the **Start** menu.

The application software starts up.



►►► Note

- If the application software  is not installed, download it from the following page and install it on your computer.

➡ Downloading the application software



2. Click  **Printer Management** icon on the left side of the **Home** screen and click **Device Information** at the bottom of the **Printer Management** menu.
3. Click **Open Remote UI** in the lower center of the **Device Information** screen.



"Remote UI" will be displayed on the web browser on your computer.

- **For macOS:**

1. Click the application software  on the **Dock**.

The application software starts up.

»»» Note

- See the screen of Windows version above.

- If the application software  is not installed, download it from the following page and install it on your computer.

- ➔ Downloading the application software 

2. Click  **Printer Management** icon on the left side of the **Home** screen and click **Device Information** at the bottom of the **Printer Management** menu.
3. Click **Open Remote UI** in the lower center of the **Device Information** screen.

»»» **Note**

- See the screen of Windows version above.

"Remote UI" will be displayed on the web browser on your computer.

»»» **Note**

- You can launch "Remote UI" from your smartphone or tablet by installing  .
Download it from App Store and Google Play.
 - ➡ For iOS device
 - ➡ For Android device

3. If you display Remote UI for the first time on your smartphone, tablet, or computer, select **For secure communication**.

Download the root certificate, and then register it.

- ➡ [Registering Printer's Root Certificate to Web Browser for SSL/TLS Communication \(Remote UI\)](#)

»»» **Note**

- Once you register the root certificate to the web browser on your smartphone, tablet, or computer, this step is not necessary after the next time.
If all settings are set back to the default from the printer's operation panel, download the root certificate again, and then register it.
- If the root certificate is not registered, a message to warn you that the secure connection is not guaranteed may appear. In that case, ignore the warning and register the root certificate to the web browser.

4. Select **Log in**.

The password authentication screen appears.

5. Enter password.

When the password authentication is complete, the menus that can be utilized are displayed on the web browser.

»»» **Important**

- An administrator password is specified at the time of purchase.
 - ➡ Default Administrator Password

- Some models require to change the initial administrator password when you use Remote UI for the first time. Control your changed password so that you don't forget it.
- The administrator password consists of alphanumeric uppercase and lowercase. Set the password according to the password and security policies.
- For details on setting the administrator password, see [Setting Password](#).
- We recommend changing the initial administrator password.

6. Check printer status and change printer settings.

For changeable setting items, see below.

➡ [Settings That Can Be Changed From the Browser](#)

7. When you finish checking printer status and changing printer settings, select **Log out.**

8. Close web browser.

▶▶ Note

- This web page contains information about several models. Depending on the specifications of the printer you are using, some of the features described (device functions, connection method, operating procedure and etc.) may not apply.

For details about the functions of your printer, see [Specifications](#).

Registering Printer's Root Certificate to Web Browser for SSL/TLS Communication (Remote UI)

If the printer's root certificate has not been registered to the web browser, a message to warn you that the secure connection is not guaranteed may appear.

When you display Remote UI for the first time on your smartphone, tablet, or computer, download the root certificate, and then register it to the web browser. The secure connection will be confirmed and a message will not appear. However, the message may appear depending on a web browser even after you have registered the root certificate.

How to register the root certificate varies depending on the web browser.

- ➡ [For Chrome](#)
- ➡ [For Safari](#)
- ➡ [For Chrome on Android Device](#)
- ➡ [For Mobile Safari on iOS Device](#)

Operating procedure may differ depending on the version of your web browser. For other web browsers, refer to each help.

»» Important

- Make sure that you have accessed to the printer IP address correctly by checking the URL field of the web browser before registering the root certificate.
- If the printer is connected via IPv6 using Windows, you need to generate a server certificate using Remote UI.

For details, see [Generating Server Certificate](#).

For Chrome

1. Select Remote UI > **For secure communication** > **Download**.

Downloading the root certificate is started.

2. If **Security Warning** screen appears, select **Open**.

Certificate screen is displayed.

»» Note

- To save the certificate file to your device and register it, select **Save**. Select **Privacy and security** > **Security** > **Manage certificates** from **Settings** menu, click **Import** on **Trusted Root Certification Authorities** tab of **Certificates** and register it.

3. Select **Install Certificate**.

Certificate Import Wizard screen is displayed.

4. Select **Next**.

5. Select **Place all certificates in the following store**.
6. Select **Browse**.
Select Certificate Store screen is displayed.
7. Select **Trusted Root Certification Authorities** and **OK**.
8. Select **Next** on **Certificate Import Wizard** screen.
9. If **Completing the Certificate Import Wizard** appears, select **Finish**.
Security Warning screen is displayed.
10. Make sure that thumbprint on **Security Warning** screen matches printer's thumbprint.
For printer's thumbprint, check "Cert. Fingerprt(SHA-256)" column on the network information that was printed when you check the printer's IP address.
11. If thumbprint on **Security Warning** screen matches printer's thumbprint, select **Yes**.
12. Select **OK** on **Certificate Import Wizard** screen.
The root certificate registration is completed.

For Safari

1. Select Remote UI > **For secure communication** > **Download**.
Downloading the root certificate is started.
2. Open the downloaded file.
Add Certificates screen is displayed.
3. Select **Add**.
4. Make sure that thumbprint of certificate detail information matches printer's thumbprint.
For printer's thumbprint, check "Cert. Fingerprt(SHA-256)" column on the network information that was printed when you check the printer's IP address.
5. If thumbprint of certificate detail information matches printer's thumbprint, select **Always Trust**.
The root certificate registration is completed.

Note

- If a password is set on your device, entering a password may be required.

For Chrome on Android Device

1. Select Remote UI > **For secure communication** > **Download**.

Downloading the root certificate is started and then **Name the certificate** screen is displayed.

2. As entering the root certificate name is required, enter an arbitrary certificate name and select **OK**.

The root certificate registration is completed.

»»» Note

- If PIN or password is not set as security type, the attention screen may appear. Select OK, and then set the security type to PIN or password.

After Root Certificate Registration

We recommend that you make sure that the correct root certificate has been registered.

To make sure that the correct root certificate has been registered, make sure that thumbprint of certificate information matches printer's thumbprint. Follow the steps below.

»»» Note

- Some Android devices cannot be checked the thumbprint of a registered route certificate.

1. From **Settings** menu on your device, select **Security**, **Trust credentials**, and **USER**.

The list of downloaded certificates appears.

2. Select downloaded certificate.

The certificate information appears.

3. Make sure that thumbprint of certificate information matches printer's thumbprint.

For printer's thumbprint, check "Cert. Fingerprt(SHA-256)" column on the network information that was printed when you check the printer's IP address.

4. If thumbprint of certificate information screen matches printer's thumbprint, select **OK**.

The root certificate registration is completed.

If the message to warn you that the secure connection is not guaranteed appears when you select **Log in** on Remote UI after registering the root certificate, restart the web browser. The message will not appear on the web browser.

»»» Note

- Depending on the Android device, a warning may appear even after registering the proper root certificate.

For Mobile Safari on iOS Device

1. Select Remote UI > **For secure communication** > **Download**.

Install Profile screen is displayed.

2. Select **Install**.

Warning screen is displayed.

Note

- If a password is set on your device, entering a password may be required.

3. Select **Install**.

4. Select **Install** on displayed dialog.

The root certificate registration is completed.

Note

- This web page contains information about several models. Depending on the specifications of the printer you are using, some of the features described (device functions, connection method, operating procedure and etc.) may not apply.

For details about the functions of your printer, see [Specifications](#).

Settings That Can Be Changed From the Browser

»» Note

- The items described here and the items displayed in the web browser may differ in the presence and order.

Items for Security

Security

This function allows you to specify the password, **USB settings** and SSL/TLS server settings of certificate for encrypted communication. Depending on your printer, import/export of setting may be specified.

For details on setting password, see [Setting Password](#).

Items for Maintenance/Management

Utilities

This function allows you to set and execute the printer utility functions such as cleaning.

System info and LAN settings

This function allows you to check the system information and to change the LAN settings.

If you place a check mark of **Enable HTTPS redirection** in **CHMP settings** in **Advanced setup** in **LAN settings**, authentication of the communication partner and communication data are redirected to HTTPS communication for encryption.

Firmware update

This function allows you to update the firmware and check version information.

Language selection

This function allows you to change the language on the display.

Items for Printer

Printer settings

This function allows you to change the printer settings such as the quiet setting and energy saving settings, and the print settings.

AirPrint settings

This function allows you to specify the AirPrint settings, such as position information.

Web service connection setup

This function allows you to register to Cloud Printing Center, or delete a registration.

Other Items

Printer status

This function displays printer information such as the remaining ink amount, the status, and detailed error information.

You can also connect to the ink purchase site or support page, and use Web Services.

Manual (Online)

This function displays the Online Manual.

Setting Password

Each of passwords for administrator and standard user can be set.

When logging on with password for administrator, all settings can be changed.

When logging on with password for standard user, some of the settings can be changed.

➡ [Setting Administrator Password](#)

➡ [Setting Standard User Password](#)

▶▶▶ Note

- Password can be set only when you are logged in administrator mode.
- The standard user password is disabled by default.

Setting Administrator Password

Change the administrator password by following the steps below.

▶▶▶ Important

- The administrator password of the printer is set from the time of purchase.
 - ➡ Default Administrator Password

1. [Start up Remote UI.](#)
2. Select **Security**.
3. Select **Administrator password setting**.
4. Select **Change administrator password**.

If an administrator password is not specified, the confirmation message appears. Confirm the message and select **Yes**. When message appears again, confirm it and select **OK**.

5. Select range where administrator password is valid and select **OK**.

Remote UI and other tools

Entering the administrator password is required to change the setting items using the Remote UI or some software.

Operation panel/Remote UI/other tools

Entering the administrator password is required to change the setting items using the operation panel of the printer, the Remote UI, or some software.

6. Enter password and select **OK**.

Enter the password using 4 to 32 alphanumeric characters and symbols.

»»» Important

- From a security point of view, it is recommended to set the password of 8 characters or more in combination of alphanumeric characters and symbols.

7. When completion message appears, select **OK**.

Setting Standard User Password

For restricting the function for standard user, enable the standard user mode and set a standard user password by following the steps below.

1. [Start up Remote UI.](#)
2. Select **Security**.
3. Select **Standard user mode settings**.
4. Confirm the message and select **Yes**.
5. Enter password and select **OK**.

Enter the password using 4 to 32 alphanumeric characters and symbols.

»»» Important

- From a security point of view, it is recommended to set the password of 8 characters or more in combination of alphanumeric characters and symbols.

6. When completion message appears, select **OK**.

Generating Server Certificate

When you use SSL connection via IPv6 network, you need to generate an IPv6 server certificate using the printer.

Generate the server certificate from Remote UI.

Follow the procedure below.

Step 1 [Checking Printer's IP Address](#)

Step 2 [Generating Server Certificate](#)

Step 3 [Checking Generated Server Certificate](#)

Important

- If you generate an IPv6 server certificate, a warning message may appear if you are using Remote UI.
To reset the IPv6 server certificate, select **Security > TLS server settings > Delete key and certificate** in this order, and select **OK** on the displayed screen.

Checking Printer's IP Address

1. [Check that printer is turned on.](#)

2. Select  **LAN settings** on the HOME screen.

➡ [LCD and Operation Panel](#)

3. Select the enabled LAN.

Diagonal lines are displayed for disabled LAN icons.

4. Check the value on **IPv6 link-local address**.

Write down the value on **IPv6 link-local address** for your reference when you generate a server certificate.

Generating Server Certificate

1. [Start up Remote UI.](#)
2. Select **Security**.
3. Select **TLS server settings**.
4. Select **Generate key and certificate**.

5. Select **Generate self-signed cert.**

6. Specify each setting item.

- **Key algorithm**

Specify the signature algorithm and key information.

- Specify the expiration date.

Enter the date you generated the server certificate on **Valid from**.

Enter the date the server certificate expires on **Valid to**.

- Enter the common name.

On **Common name**, enter the **IPv6 link-local address** you checked in abbreviated form.

»»» **Note**

- When you enter the common name, add [] to each end of the abbreviation value of the printer's IPv6 address.
- Do not use a comma or make a space for the common name.

7. Select **Next**.

Enter **Country**, **State or province**, **Locality**, **Organization** and **Organizational unit** as required.

Enter the same information in **Subject Alternative Names** as in **Common name**.

8. Select **Generate**.

The server certificate starts to be generated.

When the server certificate has been generated, **Generated a self-signed certificate** appears.

9. Select **Restart LAN**.

LAN will be restarted.

When LAN has been restarted, **Printer status** on Remote UI appears.

»»» **Note**

- If you cannot access to Remote UI after you restart LAN, reload your web browser.

Checking Generated Server Certificate

1. Select **Security** on Remote UI.

2. Select **TLS server settings**.

3. Select **Check key and certificate**.

Make sure the issuer of the root certificate is displayed on **Issued by**, and the value you entered is displayed on **Common name** on **Subject**.

Not Accessible From Web Browser

Check 1 Are you using the latest OS and browser versions?

Older browsers are not supported. Use the OS and browser listed below.

➡ [Configuration Changes / Display Printer Status Using Web Browser](#)

Microsoft Edge (Chromium), Google Chrome, and Mozilla Firefox will be updated automatically. Use the latest version of your browser.

Check 2 Check your TLS version.

If your browser version is only TLS 1.0 or TLS 1.1, enable TLS 1.2.

Alternatively, use Remote UI from another computer or smartphone to change the TLS minimum version setting of the printer to TLS 1.0 or TLS 1.1.

If you change the TLS version to use Remote UI, it is recommended to change it back to TLS 1.2 for security reasons.

➤➤➤ Note

- Unless notified otherwise by the network administrator, set maximum version to TLS1.3.

Check 3 Connect with Wireless Direct

Connecting to the printer via Wireless Direct allows you to connect to the printer without using a router, and to use Remote UI without being affected by the network or server.

➤➤➤ Important

- If you enable Wireless Direct while connected to an EAP router with IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise), the printer's Wi-Fi setting will be disabled and the printer disconnected from the wireless router. When using IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise), enable Administrator mode to disable Wireless Direct connection.

➤➤➤ Note

- This web page contains information about several models. Depending on the specifications of the printer you are using, some of the features described (device functions, connection method, operating procedure and etc.) may not apply.

For details about the functions of your printer, see [Specifications](#).

Registering Printer's Root Certificate to Web Browser for SSL/TLS Communication (Remote UI)

If the printer's root certificate has not been registered to the web browser, a message to warn you that the secure connection is not guaranteed may appear.

When you display Remote UI for the first time on your smartphone, tablet, or computer, download the root certificate, and then register it to the web browser. The secure connection will be confirmed and a message will not appear. However, the message may appear depending on a web browser even after you have registered the root certificate.

How to register the root certificate varies depending on the web browser.

- ➡ [For Chrome](#)
- ➡ [For Safari](#)
- ➡ [For Chrome on Android Device](#)
- ➡ [For Mobile Safari on iOS Device](#)

Operating procedure may differ depending on the version of your web browser. For other web browsers, refer to each help.

»» Important

- Make sure that you have accessed to the printer IP address correctly by checking the URL field of the web browser before registering the root certificate.
- If the printer is connected via IPv6 using Windows, you need to generate a server certificate using Remote UI.

For details, see [Generating Server Certificate](#).

For Chrome

1. Select Remote UI > **For secure communication** > **Download**.

Downloading the root certificate is started.

2. If **Security Warning** screen appears, select **Open**.

Certificate screen is displayed.

»» Note

- To save the certificate file to your device and register it, select **Save**. Select **Privacy and security** > **Security** > **Manage certificates** from **Settings** menu, click **Import** on **Trusted Root Certification Authorities** tab of **Certificates** and register it.

3. Select **Install Certificate**.

Certificate Import Wizard screen is displayed.

4. Select **Next**.

5. Select **Place all certificates in the following store**.
6. Select **Browse**.
Select Certificate Store screen is displayed.
7. Select **Trusted Root Certification Authorities** and **OK**.
8. Select **Next** on **Certificate Import Wizard** screen.
9. If **Completing the Certificate Import Wizard** appears, select **Finish**.
Security Warning screen is displayed.
10. Make sure that thumbprint on **Security Warning** screen matches printer's thumbprint.
For printer's thumbprint, check "Cert. Fingerprt(SHA-256)" column on the network information that was printed when you check the printer's IP address.
11. If thumbprint on **Security Warning** screen matches printer's thumbprint, select **Yes**.
12. Select **OK** on **Certificate Import Wizard** screen.
The root certificate registration is completed.

For Safari

1. Select Remote UI > **For secure communication** > **Download**.
Downloading the root certificate is started.
2. Open the downloaded file.
Add Certificates screen is displayed.
3. Select **Add**.
4. Make sure that thumbprint of certificate detail information matches printer's thumbprint.
For printer's thumbprint, check "Cert. Fingerprt(SHA-256)" column on the network information that was printed when you check the printer's IP address.
5. If thumbprint of certificate detail information matches printer's thumbprint, select **Always Trust**.
The root certificate registration is completed.

Note

- If a password is set on your device, entering a password may be required.

For Chrome on Android Device

1. Select Remote UI > **For secure communication** > **Download**.

Downloading the root certificate is started and then **Name the certificate** screen is displayed.

2. As entering the root certificate name is required, enter an arbitrary certificate name and select **OK**.

The root certificate registration is completed.

»»» Note

- If PIN or password is not set as security type, the attention screen may appear. Select OK, and then set the security type to PIN or password.

After Root Certificate Registration

We recommend that you make sure that the correct root certificate has been registered.

To make sure that the correct root certificate has been registered, make sure that thumbprint of certificate information matches printer's thumbprint. Follow the steps below.

»»» Note

- Some Android devices cannot be checked the thumbprint of a registered route certificate.

1. From **Settings** menu on your device, select **Security**, **Trust credentials**, and **USER**.

The list of downloaded certificates appears.

2. Select downloaded certificate.

The certificate information appears.

3. Make sure that thumbprint of certificate information matches printer's thumbprint.

For printer's thumbprint, check "Cert. Fingerprt(SHA-256)" column on the network information that was printed when you check the printer's IP address.

4. If thumbprint of certificate information screen matches printer's thumbprint, select **OK**.

The root certificate registration is completed.

If the message to warn you that the secure connection is not guaranteed appears when you select **Log in** on Remote UI after registering the root certificate, restart the web browser. The message will not appear on the web browser.

»»» Note

- Depending on the Android device, a warning may appear even after registering the proper root certificate.

For Mobile Safari on iOS Device

1. Select Remote UI > **For secure communication** > **Download**.

Install Profile screen is displayed.

2. Select **Install**.

Warning screen is displayed.

Note

- If a password is set on your device, entering a password may be required.

3. Select **Install**.

4. Select **Install** on displayed dialog.

The root certificate registration is completed.

Note

- This web page contains information about several models. Depending on the specifications of the printer you are using, some of the features described (device functions, connection method, operating procedure and etc.) may not apply.

For details about the functions of your printer, see [Specifications](#).

Registering Printer's Root Certificate to Local Computer for SSL Communication

To print from your computer or use Device Management Console and so on, when you connect the printer to a computer using SSL encrypted communication, you need to register (import) the printer's root certificate to your computer.

Procedure to register the certificate varies depending on your operation environment.

▶▶▶ Important

- If the printer is connected via IPv6 using Windows, you need to generate a server certificate using Remote UI.

For details, see [Generating Server Certificate](#).

➡ [For Windows 11/Windows 10/Windows 8.1](#)

➡ [For Windows 7](#)

➡ [For macOS](#)

Operation procedure may differ depending on your OS version.

For Windows 11/Windows 10/Windows 8.1

The procedure below describes how to import a root certificate in Windows 11/Windows 10/Windows 8.1.

1. [Start up Remote UI.](#)

2. Select **For secure communication**.

3. Select **Download**.

The root certificate will be downloaded.

4. When download confirmation screen is displayed, select **Open**.

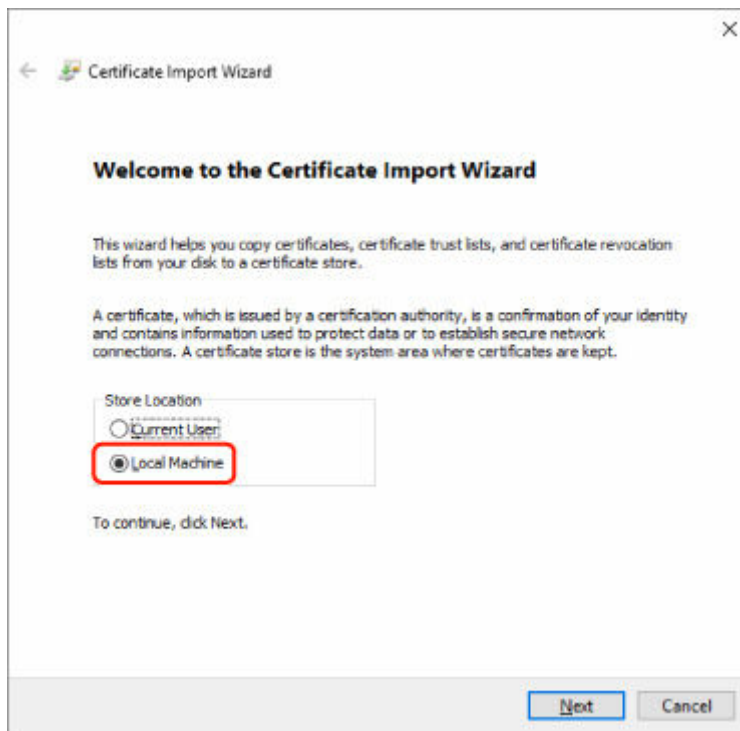
The **Certificate** screen appears.

5. Select **Install Certificate**.

The **Certificate Import Wizard** screen appears.

6. Select **Local Machine**.

1. Select **Local Machine** on the startup screen of **Certificate Import Wizard**.



2. Select **Next**.

3. Select **Yes** on the displayed screen.

The **Certificate Store** screen appears.

7. Select **Place all certificates in the following store**.

8. Select **Trusted Root Certificate Authorities**.

1. Select **Browse** to open the **Select Certificate Store** screen.

2. Select **Trusted Root Certificate Authorities** from the list and select **OK**.

3. Select **Next** on the **Certificate Store** screen.

9. Select **Finish**.

When the **Completing the Certificate Import Wizard** screen appears, check the settings and select **Finish**.

For Windows 7

The procedure below describes how to import a root certificate in Windows 7.

»» Important

- Be sure to create a certificate snap-in before importing a root certificate.

The root certificate will be registered to the local user if you import it without creating a certificate snap-in.

Creating Certificate Snap-in

1. Start up Microsoft Management Console.

Enter **MMC** on **Search programs and files** in the **Start** menu and press the Enter key.

2. Select **Yes** on displayed screen.

3. Select **Add/Remove Snap-in** from **File** menu.

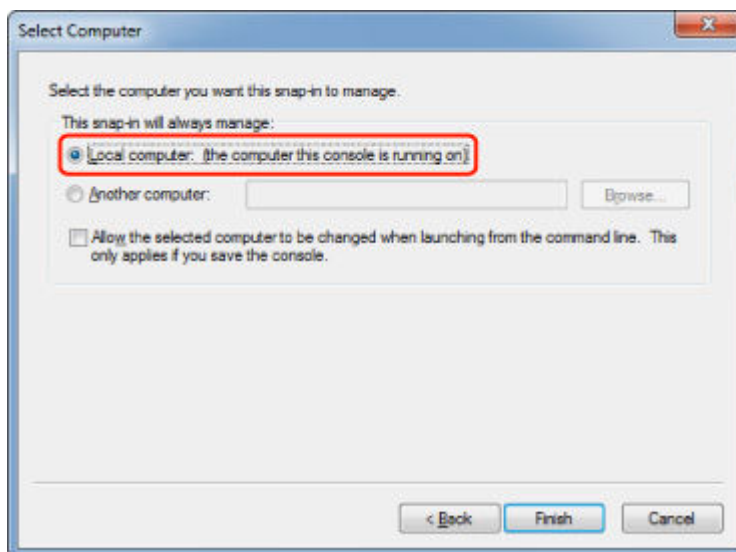
The **Add or Remove Snap-ins** screen appears.

4. Add **Certificate** snap-in.

1. Select **Certificates** from **Available snap-ins** list and select **Add**.

2. Select **Computer account** for **This snap-in will always manage certificates for** on the **Certificates snap-in** screen and select **Next**.

3. Select **Local computer** on the **Select computer** screen and select **Finish**.



4. Select **OK** on the **Add or Remove Snap-ins** screen.

Downloading Certificate

1. [Start up Remote UI.](#)

2. Select **For secure communication**.

3. Select **Download**.

4. Select **Save**.

Importing Certificate

1. Open **Certificate Import Wizard**.

1. On the left window, open **Trusted Root Certificate** from **Certificate** on **Console Root**.
2. Right-click **Certificates** and select **Import** from **All tasks**.

2. Specify certificate file to import.

1. Select **Next**.
2. Specify the certificate file to import on **File name** and select **Next**.

3. Specify certificate store.

1. Select **Place all certificates in the following store**.
2. Select **Trusted Root Certificate Authorities** for **Certificates Store**.

4. Finish certificate import wizard.

1. Select **Next** and check the specified settings.
2. Select **Finish** to finish the wizard.
3. Select **OK** on the displayed screen.

Checking Imported Certificate

Make sure the imported certificate has been registered to your computer.

1. Display certificate list.

On the left window of Microsoft Management Console, select **Console Root > Certificates (Local Computer) > Trusted Root Certificate Authorities** in this order, and select **Certificates** to display the certificate list.

2. Check registered certificate.

Make sure the imported certificate name is displayed on the list.

»»» Note

- Make sure you can see the registered certificate from **Current user** by creating the **Current user** snap-in.

►►► Note

- When you finish Microsoft Management Console, a message asking you whether to save the console setting. If you continue to apply the same settings next, select **Yes** to save.

For macOS

The procedure below describes how to import a root certificate in macOS.

1. [Start up Remote UI.](#)
2. Select **For secure communication.**
3. Select **Download.**

The root certificate will be downloaded.

4. Open downloaded certificate file.

When the download procedure is completed, a downloaded item pops up on the right of the screen.

Double-click the downloaded certificate on the list starts up **Keychain Access** and the **Add Certificates** screen appears.

►►► Note

- If the downloaded item does not pop up, select the **Show Downloads**  button on the right.
- Selecting the magnifying glass icon on the right of download list displays the folder containing the certificate.

5. Select **Add.**

Select the destination for the certificate on **Keychain.**

Selecting **Add** displays information on the certificate.

►►► Note

- You can add the certificate by selecting the same certificate on **Keychain Access**. Check the name of certification to add after selecting **View Certificates**.

6. Check certificate.

Make sure the fingerprint of certificate shown on **Details** corresponds with the root certificate thumbprint of the printer.

To display the printer's root certificate thumbprint in **Root cert. thumbprint (SHA-1)** or **Root cert.**

thumbprint (SHA-256), select  **Printer information** on the HOME screen of the operation panel, and then select **System information**.

7. Select **Always Trust**.

If the fingerprint of certificate detail information matches printer's thumbprint, display information on certificate from the menu or by double-clicking the certificate, and select **Always Trust** on **Trust**.

The root certificate has been registered.

Note

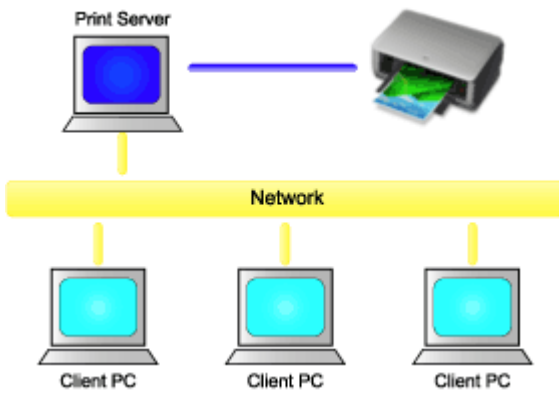
- Entering the password may be required if you specify it for your printer.

Network Setting

- **Connecting to a Printer**
- **Advantages of Connecting Printer over Wi-Fi**
- **Advantages of Connecting Printer via Wired LAN**
- **What Is Ethernet Cable?**
- **What Is USB Cable?**
- **Checking Printer Connection Status Using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant**
- **Sharing the Printer on a Network (Windows)**
 - Setting Up a Shared Printer
 - Restrictions on Printer Sharing
- **Sharing the Printer on a Network (macOS)**
 - Settings on Print Server
 - Settings on Client PC
 - Restrictions on Printer Sharing

Sharing the Printer on a Network (Windows)

When computers are used in a network environment, documents can be printed from multiple computers that share a single printer.



- [Setting Up a Shared Printer](#)

This section describes how to set up the print server and the client.

►►► Note

- The Windows versions of the computers connected to the network do not necessarily have to be the same.

Related Topic

- ➡ [Restrictions on Printer Sharing](#)

Setting Up a Shared Printer

On the print server, set up sharing of the printer driver. Then from the client, set up the connection to the print server.

1. [Install the printer driver](#) on the print server system

2. Display the **Devices and Printers** window

Select the **Control Panel** -> **Hardware and Sound (Hardware)** -> **Devices and Printers**.

The **Devices and Printers** window is displayed.

3. Click the icon for the model name of printer to be shared

Press the Alt key, and from the displayed **File** menu, select **Printer properties** -> **Sharing** tab.

»»» Important

- When starting up the software and performing install or uninstall, a confirmation or warning dialog box may appear.
This dialog box appears when administrative rights are required to perform a task.
When you are logged on to an administrator account, click **Yes** (or **Continue**, **Allow**) to continue.
Some applications require an administrator account to continue. In such cases, switch to an administrator account, and restart the operation from the beginning.

4. Set sharing

On the **Sharing** tab, check (or select) **Share this printer**, set the shared name as necessary, and then click **OK**.

5. If the print server and the client have different architectures (32 bit or 64 bit), install an additional driver

1. Display the **Devices and Printers**, **Printers**, or **Printers and Faxes** window.
2. Select the printer icon, click **Print server properties**, and select the **Drivers** tab.
3. Click **Add....**
4. When the **Add Printer Driver Wizard** window is displayed, click **Next**.
5. If the print server has a 32-bit architecture, select **x64**. If the print server has a 64-bit architecture, select **x86**. Then click **Next**.
6. Click **Have Disk....**
7. In the **Install From Disk** window, open the "Driver" folder of the downloaded printer driver, specify the "inf" file, and click **OK**.

 Note

- If the printer server is 32-bit, specify it as "xxxxxxx3.INF". If it is 64-bit, specify it as "xxxxxxx6.INF".

8. Select the printer to be used, and click **Next**.

 Note

- If an error message is displayed, select the other printer.

9. Click **Finish**

The setup on the print server system is complete. Next, set up the client systems.

6. On the client, open Explorer, and double-click the icon of the printer to be shared

7. Follow the window instructions, and install the printer driver

The setup on the client system is complete.

Even when you perform the setup on a different client, follow the same steps 6 and 7.

Restrictions on Printer Sharing

These are restrictions that apply when you are using a printer in a network environment. Check the restrictions for the environment you are using.

Restriction on setting up printer sharing

- If "ntprint.inf" is requested when you install the driver from **Add Printer**, specify the file as follows:
 1. Start Explorer on the print server and on the client with the different architecture, paste the following path in the address bar, and press Enter on the keyboard:
%windir%\system32\driverstore\
 2. Right-click the **FileRepository** folder, and click **Properties**.
 3. On the **Sharing** tab, click **Share**.
 4. In the message window displayed on the print server, specify "ntprint.inf_xxxxxxx" in the folder that was shared in step 3, and click **OK**.
If there are multiples copies, select the file with the latest update date and time.

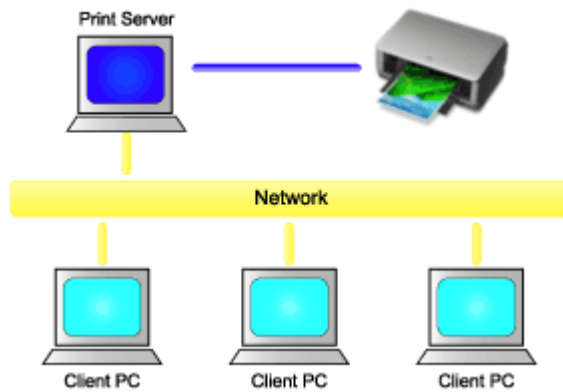
Restrictions on sharing and using a printer

- A print completion message may be displayed. To disable the message display, follow the procedure below.
 1. In the **Control Panel -> Hardware and Sound (Hardware) -> Devices and Printers** window of the client system, select the printer, and click **Print server properties** on the command bar.
 2. Uncheck **Show informational notifications for network printers** on the **Advanced** tab, and then restart the computer.
- The bi-directional communication function is disabled and the correct printer status may not be recognized.
If a client user opens the printer driver properties and then clicks **OK** with the **Enable bidirectional support** check box cleared on the **Ports** tab, the bidirectional communication function of the print server may also be disabled.
In this case, check **Enable bidirectional support** check box on both the print server system and the client system.
- When you print from a client system, you cannot use Canon IJ Preview.
- When the functions on the **Maintenance** tab cannot be set properly from a client system, they may be grayed out. In this case, change the settings from the print server.
When you change the settings of the print server, you should delete the icon of the shared printer from the client system, and then specify the shared settings again in the client system.
- If the same driver installed on the print server is also installed on the client, the network printer icon may be created automatically.
- If an error occurs when you print a document on a shared printer from a client, the error message of the Canon IJ status monitor is displayed on both the client and the print server. If a document is printed out normally, the Canon IJ status monitor is displayed only on the client.

Sharing the Printer on a Network (macOS)

When multiple computers are being used in the network environment, you can share the printer connected to one computer with the other computers.

Before carrying out the setup for printer sharing, select **Network** from **System Settings**, and check whether the network settings have been set.



This section describes the procedure for sharing a printer among Mac.

- [Settings on Print Server](#)

This section describes how to set up a computer that connects with this printer.

- [Settings on Client PC](#)

This section describes the procedure for setting a computer that uses this printer through a network. When you execute print, the data is sent to the printer through the print server system.

Related Topic

- ➡ [Restrictions on Printer Sharing](#)

Settings on Print Server

When you use the printer on a network, set up the printer driver for sharing on the print server system.

The procedure for setting up the print server systems is as follows:

1. [Install the printer driver](#) on the print server system

2. Check that the printer to be used has been added

Open **System Settings**, and select **Printers & Scanners**.

The printer list displays the printers that are connected to the computer.

3. Set sharing

Turn on **Share this printer on the network**.

»» Note

- Depending on the environment you are using, a message prompting you to restart the computer may be displayed. To complete the installation properly, restart the computer.

The setup on the print server system is complete. Next, set up the client systems.

Settings on Client PC

After setting up the print server system, set up the client system.

The procedure for setting up the client systems is as follows:

1. [Install the printer driver](#) on the client systems

2. Display the printer list

Open **System Settings**, and select **Printers & Scanners**.

Click **Add Printer, Scanner or Fax...** to display the printer list.

3. Add a printer to be shared

Select a shared printer displayed in the printer list, and then click **Add**.

The setup on the client systems is now completed.

▶▶▶ Note

- The print procedures are the same as when the computer is connected directly to the printer with a USB cable.
At the Page Setup dialog, select the printer that is connected to the print server to be used.

Restrictions on Printer Sharing

These are restrictions that apply when you are using a printer in a network environment.

- Install the same version of the printer driver in the print server system and the client systems. You can download the latest printer driver from our web site.
- Use printer sharing with users who have the administrator privilege.
- Depending on how the computer is connected with the printer, the computer may not be able to access the function information that was set on the printer and display the correct settings.
- Media information on the printer driver cannot be changed when using a client machine.

Maintenance

► Adjustments for Better Print Quality

- Maintenance Procedure
- Checking for Nozzle Clogging
- Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern
- Cleaning the Print Head
- Deep Print Head Cleaning
- Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Align Colors

► Replacing Consumables

- Replacing Ink Tanks
- Checking Ink Level

► Cleaning the Printer

- Cleaning the Printer Exterior
- Cleaning Paper Feed Rollers
- Performing Bottom Plate Cleaning

► Performing Maintenance Functions from Your Computer (Windows)

- Opening the Maintenance Tool (Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool)
- Cleaning the Print Heads
- Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern
- Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool Description

► Performing Maintenance Functions from Your Computer (macOS)

- Opening Remote UI for Maintenance
- Cleaning the Print Heads
- Checking Ink Status from Your Computer
- Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern

► Other Maintenance

- [Transporting Your Printer](#)

Adjustments for Better Print Quality

- **Maintenance Procedure**
- **Checking for Nozzle Clogging**
- **Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern**
- **Cleaning the Print Head**
- **Deep Print Head Cleaning**
- **Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Align Colors**
 - Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Align Colors
 - Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Align Colors

Maintenance Procedure

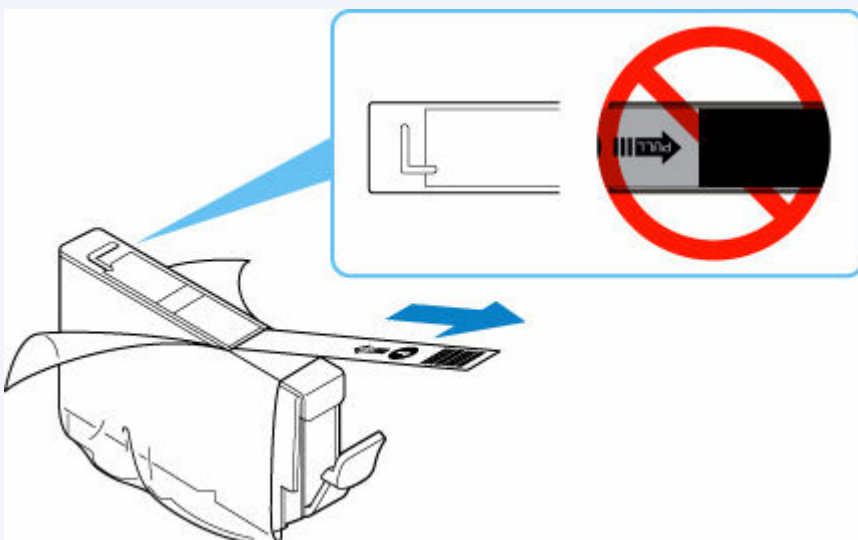
If print results are blurred, colors are not printed correctly, or print results are unsatisfactory (e.g. misaligned printed ruled lines), perform the maintenance procedure below.

Important

- Do not rinse or wipe the print head and ink tank. This can cause trouble with the print head and ink tank.

Note

- Make sure that the orange protective tape does not remain on the ink tank.



- Check the ink status.
 - ➔ [Checking Ink Level](#)
- Increasing the print quality in the printer driver settings may improve the print result.
 - ➔ [Set Media Type, Quality, etc. \(Media/Quality Tab\)](#) (Windows)
 - ➔ [Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data](#) (macOS)

When the Print Results Are Blurred or Uneven:

Step 1 Print the nozzle check pattern.

From the printer

- ➔ [Checking for Nozzle Clogging](#)

From the computer

- ➔ [Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern](#) (Windows)
- ➔ [Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern](#) (macOS)

Step 2 [Examine the nozzle check pattern.](#)

If there are missing lines or horizontal streaks in the pattern:



|| Step 3 Clean the print head.

From the printer

➡ [Cleaning the Print Head](#)

From the computer

➡ [Cleaning the Print Heads](#) (Windows)

➡ [Cleaning the Print Heads](#) (macOS)

After cleaning the print head, print and examine the nozzle check pattern: ➡ [Step 1](#)

If the problem is not resolved after performing from step 1 to step 3 twice:



|| Step 4 Clean the print head deeply.

From the printer

➡ [Deep Print Head Cleaning](#)

From the computer

➡ [Cleaning the Print Heads](#) (Windows)

➡ [Cleaning the Print Heads](#) (macOS)

➡➡➡ Note

- When you have performed the procedure until step 4 and the problem has not been resolved, turn off the power and clean the print head deeply again after 24 hours. If the problem is still not resolved, the print head may be damaged. Contact Canon to request a repair.

When the Print Results Are Not Even such as the Ruled Lines Are Misaligned:

|| Step [Align the print head](#).

Checking for Nozzle Clogging

Print the nozzle check pattern to determine whether the ink ejects properly from the print head nozzle.

»» Note

- If the remaining ink level is low, the nozzle check pattern will not be printed correctly. [Replace the ink tank](#) whose ink is low.

You need to prepare: a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper

1. [Check that printer is turned on.](#)
2. Load a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper in the top feed.
➔ [Loading Paper in the Top Feed](#)

3. Select  **Maintenance** on HOME screen.

➔ [LCD and Operation Panel](#)

The **Maintenance** screen will appear.

4. Select **Nozzle Check**.



The confirmation screen will appear.

5. Select **Yes**.

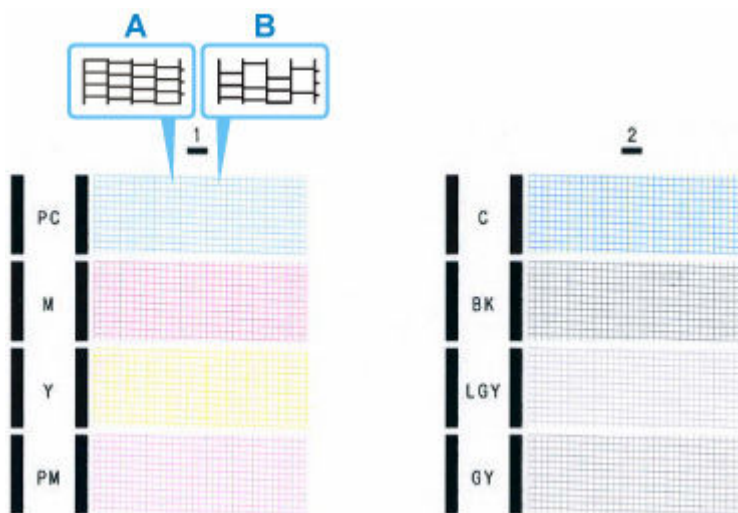
The nozzle check pattern will be printed and the pattern confirmation screen will appear on the LCD.

6. [Examine the nozzle check pattern.](#)

Examining the Nozzle Check Pattern

Examine the nozzle check pattern, and clean the print head if necessary.

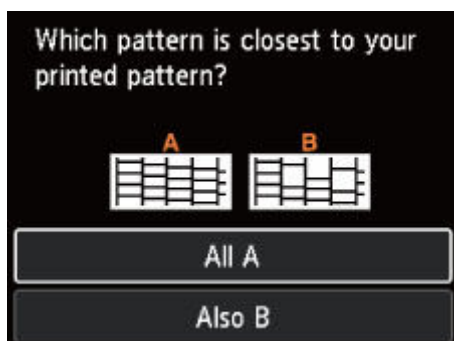
1. Check if there are missing lines in the pattern.



A: No missing lines

B: Lines are missing

2. Select the pattern that is closer to the printed nozzle check pattern on the confirmation screen.



For A (no missing lines) in the pattern:

The cleaning is not required. Select **All A**, confirm the message, then select **OK**.

The screen will return to the **Maintenance** screen.

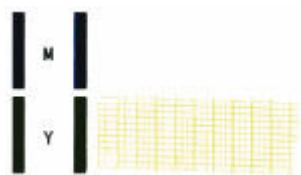
For B (lines are missing) in the pattern:

The cleaning is required. Select **Also B**, then select **Yes** on the cleaning confirmation screen.

Select an ink group containing missing lines to perform cleaning.

➔ [Cleaning the Print Head](#)

If any color in the pattern is not printed:



(Example: Magenta pattern is not printed)

The cleaning is required. Select **Also B**, then select **Yes** on the cleaning confirmation screen.

Select an ink group that is not printed to perform cleaning.

➡ [Cleaning the Print Head](#)

Cleaning the Print Head

Clean the print head if lines are missing or if horizontal streaks are present in the printed nozzle check pattern. Cleaning unclogs the nozzles and restores the print head condition. Cleaning the print head consumes ink, so clean the print head only when necessary.

You need to prepare: a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper

1. [Check that printer is turned on.](#)
2. Load a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper in the top feed.

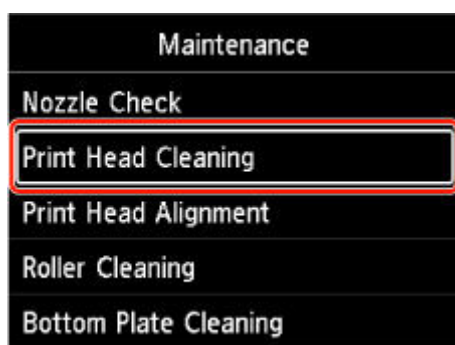
➔ [Loading Paper in the Top Feed](#)

3. Select  **Maintenance** on HOME screen.

➔ [LCD and Operation Panel](#)

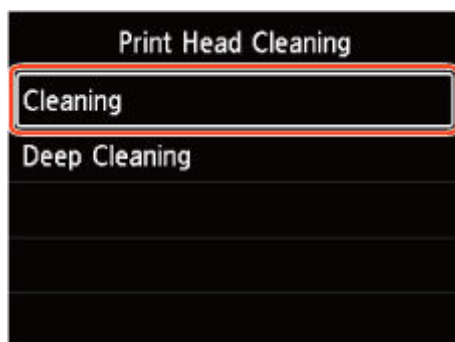
The **Maintenance** screen will appear.

4. Select **Print Head Cleaning**.



The **Print Head Cleaning** screen will appear.

5. Select **Cleaning**.



The **Cleaning** screen will appear.

6. Select ink group to be cleaned.

- **All colors**
- **Pattern 1:** PC / M / Y / PM
- **Pattern 2:** C / BK / LGY / GY

The confirmation screen will appear.

7. Select Yes.

The printer starts cleaning the print head.

Do not perform any other operations until the printer completes the cleaning of the print head. This takes about 1 minute.

The pattern print confirmation screen will appear.

8. Select Yes.

The nozzle check pattern will be printed.

9. [Examine the nozzle check pattern.](#)

»» Note

- If the problem is not resolved after cleaning the print head twice, [clean the print head deeply](#).

Deep Print Head Cleaning

If print quality does not improve by the standard cleaning of the print head, clean the print head deeply. Cleaning the print head deeply consumes more ink than the standard cleaning of the print head, so clean the print head deeply only when necessary.

You need to prepare: a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper

1. [Check that printer is turned on.](#)
2. Load a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper in the top feed.

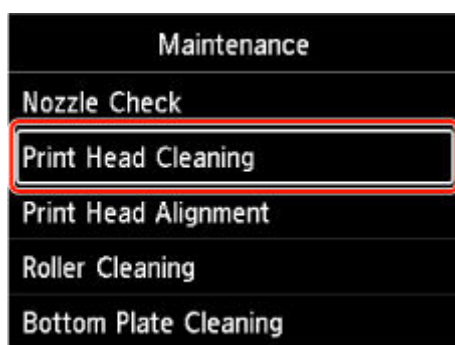
➔ [Loading Paper in the Top Feed](#)

3. Select  **Maintenance** on HOME screen.

➔ [LCD and Operation Panel](#)

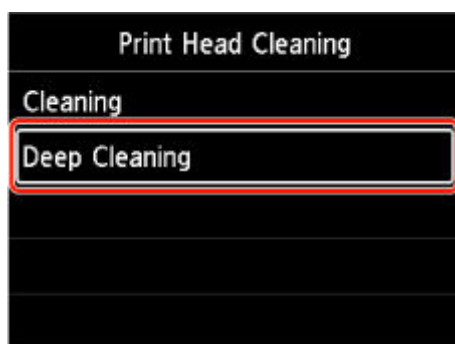
The **Maintenance** screen will appear.

4. Select **Print Head Cleaning**.



The **Print Head Cleaning** screen will appear.

5. Select **Deep Cleaning**.



The **Deep Cleaning** screen will appear.

6. Select ink group to be cleaned.

- **All colors**
- **Pattern 1:** PC / M / Y / PM
- **Pattern 2:** C / BK / LGY / GY

The confirmation screen will appear.

7. Select Yes.

The printer starts cleaning the print head deeply.

Do not perform any other operations until the printer completes the deep cleaning of the print head. This takes about 1 minute.

The pattern print confirmation screen will appear.

8. Select Yes.

The nozzle check pattern will be printed.

9. When the completion message appears, select OK.

10. [Examine the nozzle check pattern.](#)

If a particular color is not printed properly, [replace the ink tank](#) of that color.

If the problem is not resolved, turn off the power and clean the print head deeply again after 24 hours.

If the problem is still not resolved, the print head may be damaged. Contact Canon to request a repair.

Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Align Colors

- **Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Align Colors**
- **Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Align Colors**

Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Align Colors

If printed ruled lines are misaligned or print results are otherwise unsatisfactory, adjust the print head position.

»» Note

- We recommend using the same type of paper for print head alignment as for printing.
- If the remaining ink level is low, the print head alignment sheet will not be printed correctly.

[Replace the ink tank](#) whose ink is low.

You need to prepare: two sheets of A4 or Letter-sized paper

1. [Check that printer is turned on.](#)

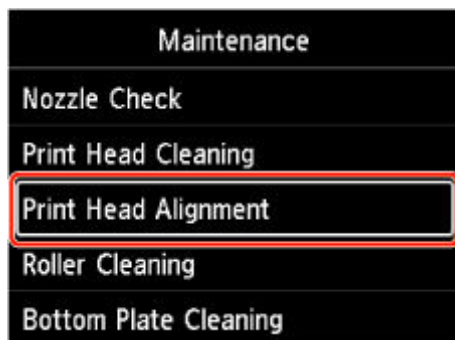


2. Select **Maintenance** on HOME screen.

➔ [LCD and Operation Panel](#)

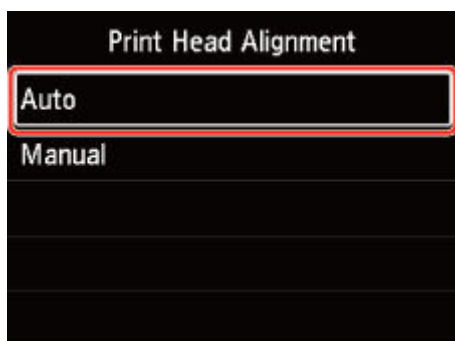
The **Maintenance** screen will appear.

3. Select **Print Head Alignment**.



The **Print Head Alignment** screen will appear.

4. Select **Auto**.



The confirmation screen will appear.

5. Select **Yes.**

The media type selection screen appears.

6. Select paper to use.

7. Load the prepared paper in the paper source specified in the message.

If the paper source is the manual feed tray, load one sheet of paper at a time.

➡ [Loading Paper in the Top Feed](#)

➡ [Loading Paper in the Manual Feed Tray](#)

8. Select **OK.**

The print head alignment sheet is printed, and the print head is aligned automatically.

This takes about 2 to 3 minutes.

9. When the completion message appears, select **OK.**

»» Note

- If the print results are still not satisfactory after adjusting the print head position as described above, [align the print head manually](#).

Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Align Colors

Try aligning the print head manually after automatic print head alignment if printing results are not as expected, as when printed ruled lines are misaligned.

»»» Note

- We recommend using the same type of paper for print head alignment as for printing.

You need to prepare: a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized paper

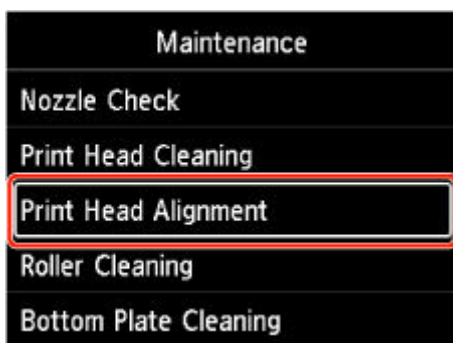
1. [Check that printer is turned on.](#)

2. Select  **Maintenance** on HOME screen.

➡ [LCD and Operation Panel](#)

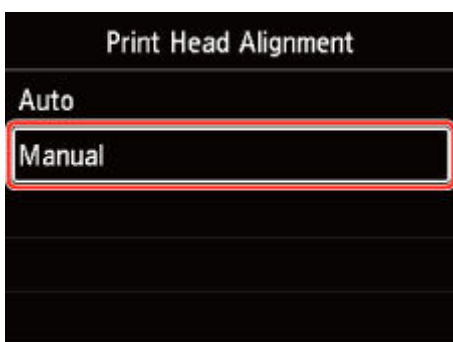
The **Maintenance** screen will appear.

3. Select **Print Head Alignment**.



The **Print Head Alignment** screen will appear.

4. Select **Manual**.



The confirmation screen will appear.

5. Select **Yes**.

The media type selection screen appears.

6. Select paper to use.

7. Load the prepared paper in the paper source specified in the message.

➡ [Loading Paper in the Top Feed](#)

➡ [Loading Paper in the Manual Feed Tray](#)

8. Select **OK**.

The print head alignment pattern will be printed.

9. When **Did the patterns print correctly?** appears, make sure pattern was printed correctly, and if so, select **Yes**.

10. Check message and select **Next**.

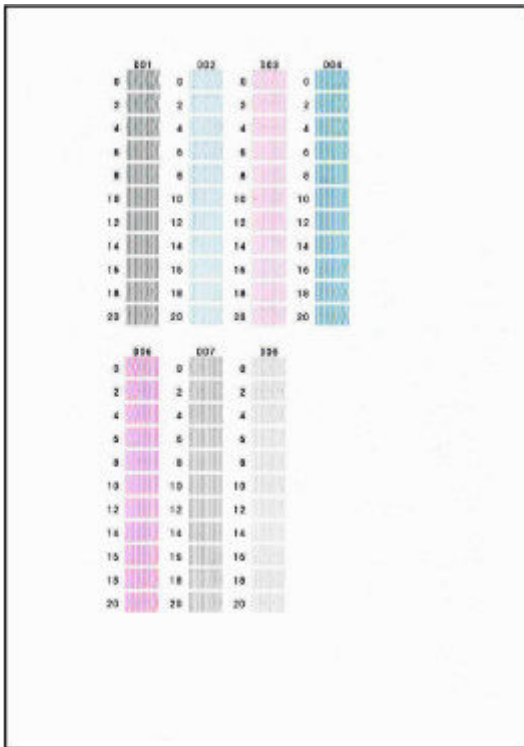
The input screen for head position alignment values is displayed.



Print Head Alignment - Manual	
D-1	10
D-2	10
D-3	10
D-4	10

OK

11. Look at the pattern and select the number of the pattern in each column that has straight lines.



►► Note

- Look at the pattern and pick the setting that produces the least warped vertical straight lines.



A: Vertical straight lines

B: Warped vertical straight lines

12. Repeat this procedure until you finish inputting a pattern number in all columns, select **OK**.

13. When the completion message appears, select **OK**.

Replacing Consumables

- [Replacing Ink Tanks](#)
- [Checking Ink Level](#)

Replacing Ink Tanks

When remaining ink cautions or errors occur, the message will appear on the LCD to inform you of the error. In this state, the printer cannot print. Take appropriate action according to the message.

➡ [When Error Occurred](#)

▶▶▶ Note

- For precautionary notes on handling ink tanks, see [Notes on ink tanks](#).

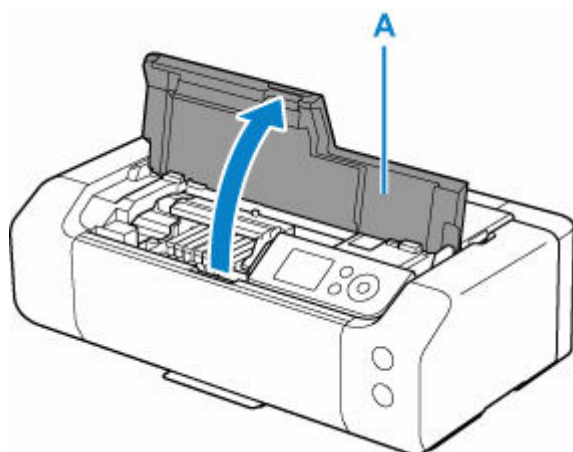
Replacing Procedure

When you need to replace an ink tank, follow the procedure below.

1. [Check that printer is turned on.](#)

2. Open the top cover (A).

The print head holder moves to the replacement position.



⚠ Caution

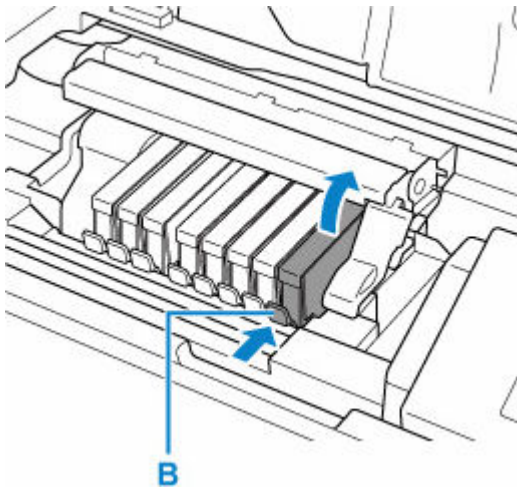
- Do not hold the print head holder to stop or move it forcibly. Do not touch the print head holder until it stops completely.

▶▶▶ Important

- Do not touch the metallic parts or other parts inside the printer.

3. Remove the ink tank where the ink runs out.

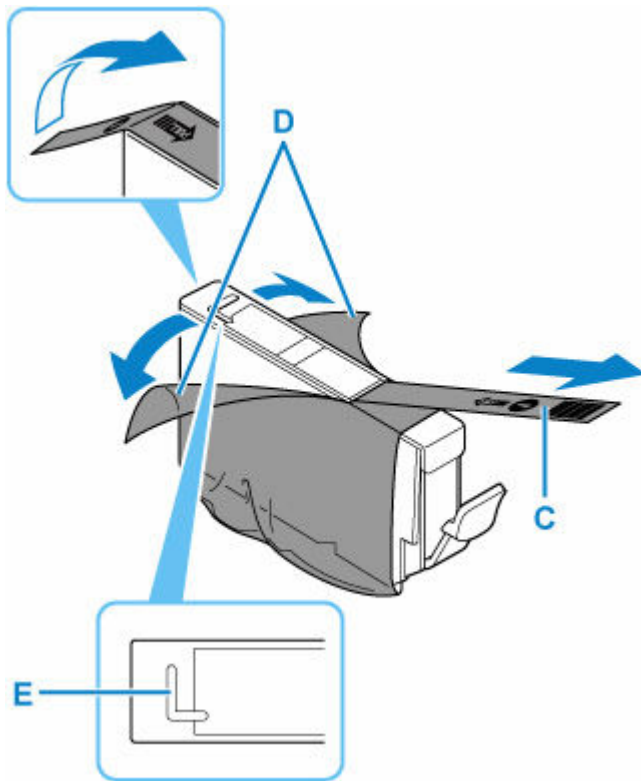
Push the tab (B) and lift the ink tank to remove.



Important

- Do not touch other parts besides the ink tanks.

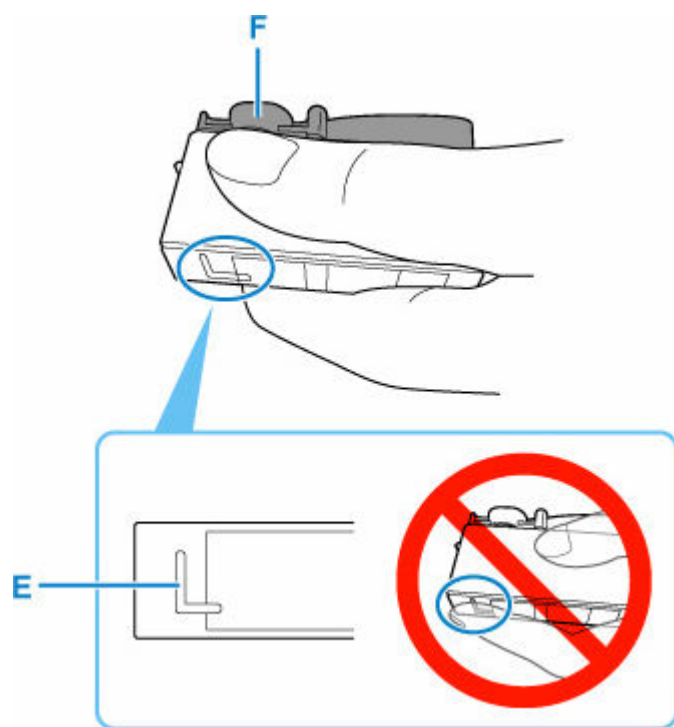
4. Take a new ink tank out of its package, remove the orange tape (C) completely, then remove the protective film (D) completely.



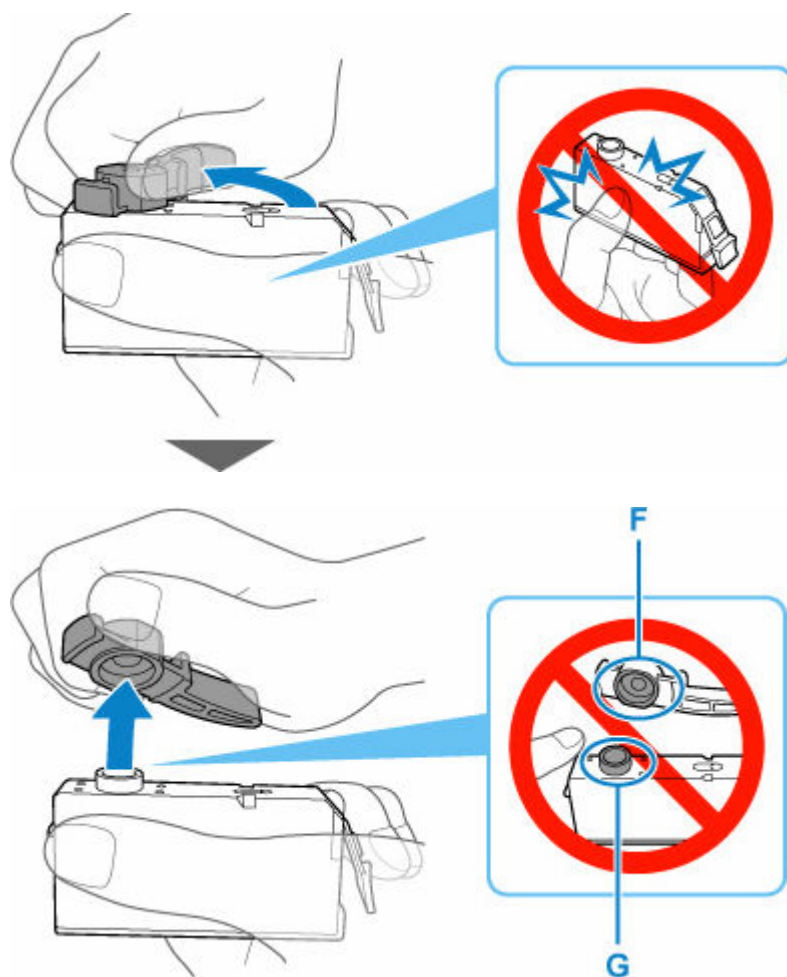
Important

- If the orange tape remains on the L-shape air hole (E), ink may splash or the printer may not print properly.

5. Hold the ink tank with the orange protective cap (F) pointing up while being careful not to block the L-shape air hole (E).



6. Twist the orange protective cap (F) 90 degrees horizontally to remove it off GENTLY.

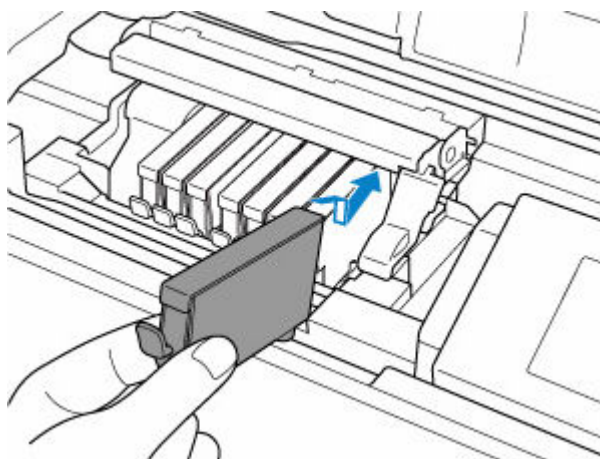


Important

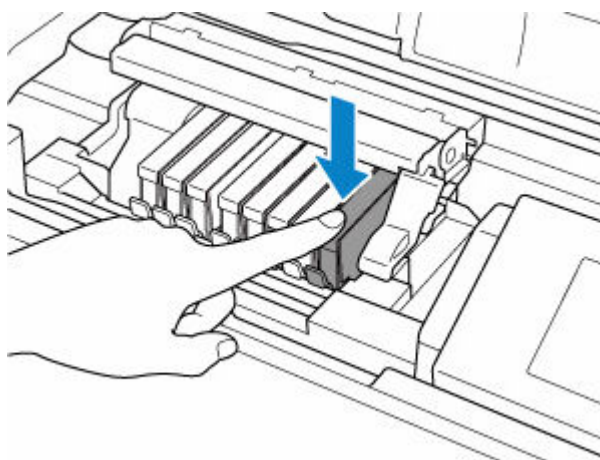
- Do not push the sides of the ink tank. If you push the sides of the ink tank with the L-shape air hole (E) blocked, ink may splash.
- Do not touch the inside of the protective cap (F) or the open ink port (G). The ink may stain your hands if you touch them.

7. Insert the front end of the ink tank into the print head at a slant.

Make sure that the position of the ink tank matches the label.



8. Press on the top of the ink tank until the ink tank snaps firmly into place.



Important

- You cannot print if the ink tank is installed in the wrong position. Be sure to install the ink tank in the correct position according to the label on the print head holder.
- You cannot print unless all the ink tanks are installed. Be sure to install all the ink tanks.

9. Close the top cover.

Notes on ink tanks

»» Important

- Use a new ink tank for replacement. Installing a used ink tank may cause the nozzles to clog. Furthermore, with such an ink tank, the printer will not be able to inform you when to replace the ink tank properly.
- Once an ink tank has been installed, do not remove it from the printer and leave it out in the open. This will cause the ink tank to dry out, and the printer may not operate properly when it is reinstalled. To maintain optimal printing quality, use an ink tank within six months of first use.

»» Note

- Color ink may be consumed even when printing a black-and-white document or when black-and-white printing is specified. Every ink is also consumed in the standard cleaning and deep cleaning of the print head, which may be necessary to maintain the performance of the printer.

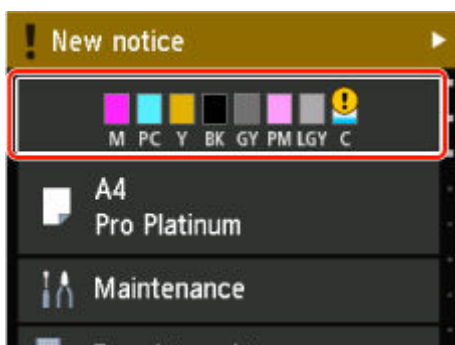
When an ink tank is out of ink, replace it immediately with a new one.

➡ [Ink Tips](#)

Checking Ink Level

1. [Check that printer is turned on.](#)
2. Select the ink status display area on the HOME screen.

➔ [LCD and Operation Panel](#)



3. Check the ink status.

A symbol appears in the area A if there is any information about the remaining ink level.



- ! The ink is running low. Prepare a new ink tank.
- ✗ Ink has run out. Replace the ink tank with a new ink tank.
- ? This appears when remaining ink level is not known.

Note

- The above screen shows estimated ink levels.
- To access the ink purchasing site, select **Order ink now** on this screen and display the QR code. Cost of connecting to Internet is to be born by the customer.
- Selecting **Ink model no.** displays the **Ink model number** screen for checking ink tank numbers.
- You can check the ink status on the computer screen.
 - ➔ [Checking Ink Status from Your Computer](#) (Windows)
 - ➔ [Checking Ink Status from Your Computer](#) (macOS)

Cleaning the Printer

- **Cleaning the Printer Exterior**
- **Cleaning Paper Feed Rollers**
- **Performing Bottom Plate Cleaning**

Cleaning the Printer Exterior

Be sure to use a soft and dry cloth such as eyeglasses cleaning cloth and wipe off dirt on the surface gently. Smooth out wrinkles on the cloth if necessary before cleaning.

»» Important

- Be sure to turn off the power and unplug the power cord before cleaning the printer.
- Do not use tissue paper, paper towels, rough-textured cloth, or similar materials for cleaning so as not to scratch the surface. Paper tissue powder or fine threads may remain inside the printer and cause problems such as print head blockage and poor printing results.
- Never use volatile liquids such as thinners, benzine, acetone, or any other chemical cleaner to clean the printer, as this may cause a malfunction or damage the surface of the printer.

Cleaning Paper Feed Rollers

If the paper feed roller is dirty or paper powder is attached to it, paper may not be fed properly. In this case, clean the paper feed roller. Cleaning will wear out the paper feed roller, so perform this only when necessary.

You need to prepare:

For the top feed: three sheets of A4 or Letter size plain paper

For the manual feed tray: a single sheet of A4 or Letter size plain paper

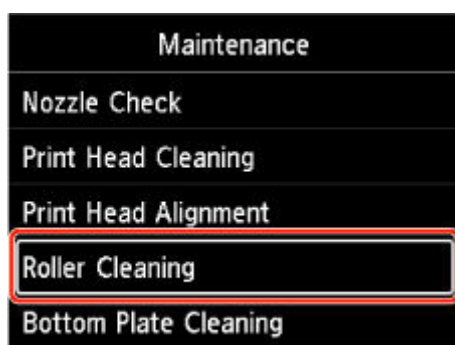
1. [Check that printer is turned on.](#)

2. Select  **Maintenance** on HOME screen.

➡ [LCD and Operation Panel](#)

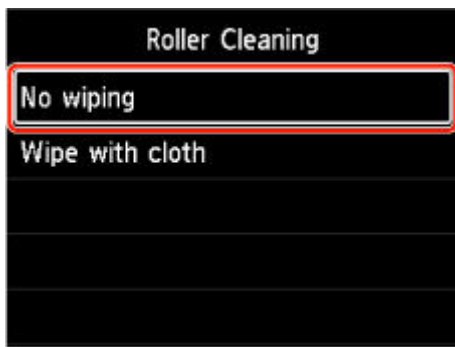
The **Maintenance** screen will appear.

3. Select **Roller Cleaning**.



The confirmation screen will appear.

4. Select **Yes**.
5. Select paper source (**Top feed** or **Manual tray**) for paper feed roller cleaning.
If **Manual tray** is selected, go to step 8.
6. Select **No wiping**.



7. Remove any paper in top feed and press **OK** button.

The paper feed roller will rotate as it is cleaned without paper.

When the paper feed roller stops rotating, the cleaning is complete.

8. Follow the message to load A4 or Letter size plain paper in the paper source you selected in step 5.

Load three sheets of paper in the top feed or a single sheet of paper in the manual feed tray.

- ➔ [Loading Paper in the Top Feed](#)
- ➔ [Loading Paper in the Manual Feed Tray](#)

9. Select **OK**.

The printer starts cleaning. The cleaning will be complete when the paper is ejected.

10. When the completion message appears, select **OK**.

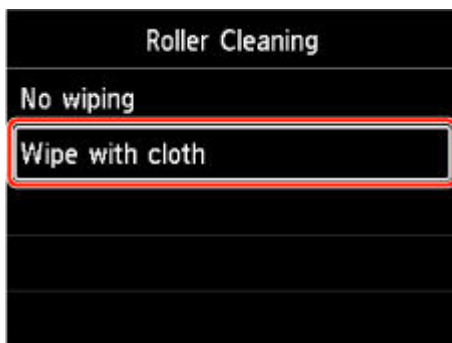
»» Note

- If the problem is not resolved after performing the paper feed roller cleaning with **No wiping**, wipe the paper feed roller with a damp cloth.

- ➔ [Wiping Paper Feed Rollers with Damp Cloth](#)

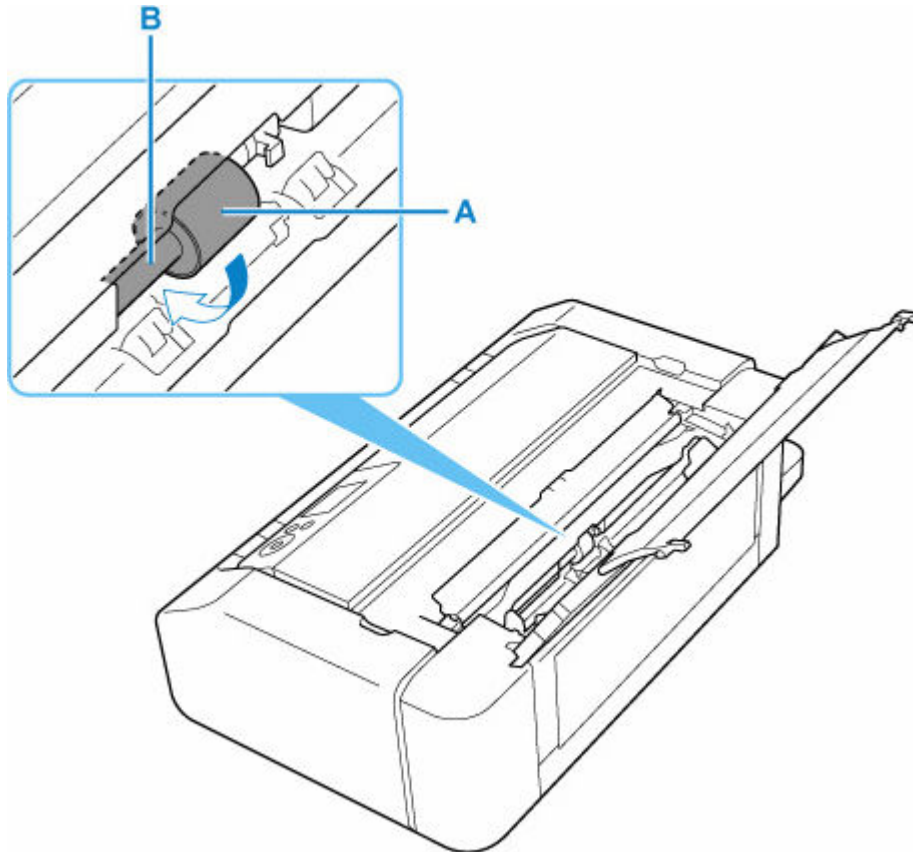
Wiping Paper Feed Rollers with Damp Cloth

1. Select **Wipe with cloth** on **Roller Cleaning** screen.



2. Check message and select **OK**.
3. Remove any paper in top feed and press **OK** button.
4. Press **ON** button.
5. Make sure **ON** lamp is turned off and wipe paper feed roller with damp cloth.

Wipe the paper feed roller (A) in the top feed with a moistened cloth or other materials. Do not touch the paper feed roller with your fingers, wipe it as rotating the shaft (B) with your fingers.



►►► Note

- If the shaft is not rotated, turn off the printer and turn it on again.

6. After wiping with damp cloth, press **ON** button.
7. Perform paper feed roller cleaning (**No wiping**) again.

►►► Note

- If printing data is sent to the printer when performing the paper feed roller cleaning with **Wipe with cloth**, the auto power on setting is disabled even if it is set to be automatically turned on.

In this case, set the printer to be automatically turned on again.

From the printer

➡ [Energy saving settings](#)

From the computer

- ➡ [Managing the Printer Power](#) (Windows)
- ➡ [Managing the Printer Power](#) (macOS)

If the problem is not resolved after cleaning the paper feed roller, contact Canon to request a repair.

Performing Bottom Plate Cleaning

Remove stains from the inside of the printer. If the inside of the printer becomes dirty, printed paper may get dirty, so we recommend performing cleaning regularly.

You need to prepare: a sheet of A4 or Letter-sized plain paper*

* Be sure to use a new piece of paper.

1. [Check that printer is turned on.](#)

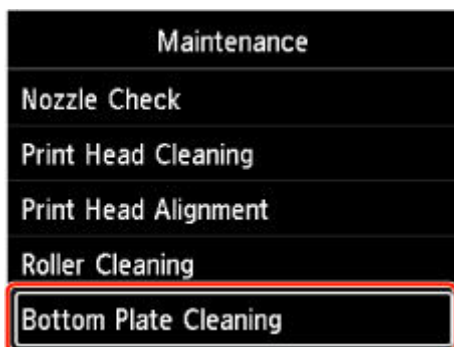


2. Select **Maintenance** on HOME screen.

➔ [LCD and Operation Panel](#)

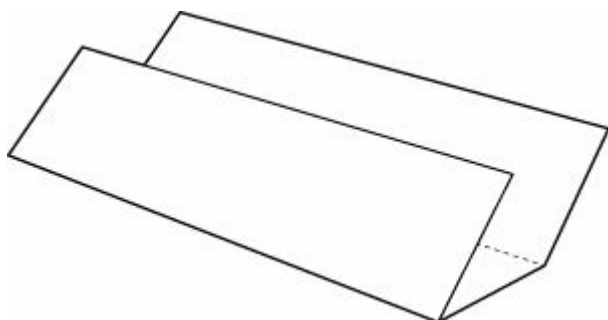
The **Maintenance** screen will appear.

3. Select **Bottom Plate Cleaning**.

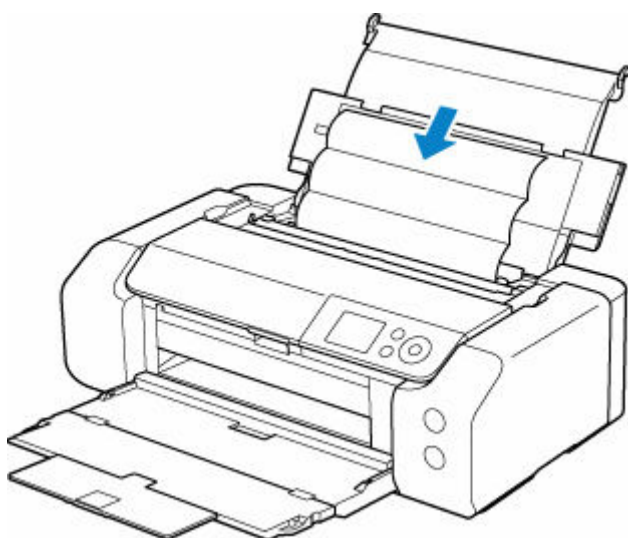


The confirmation screen will appear.

4. Select **Yes**.
5. Follow the message to remove any paper from the top feed, then select **OK**.
6. Fold A4 or Letter-sized plain paper so that short side is in thirds, unfold paper, then select **OK**.



7. Load this sheet of paper sideways in the top feed with the open side facing you.



8. Select **OK.**

The paper cleans the inside of the printer as it feeds through the printer.

Check the folded parts of the ejected paper. If they are smudged with ink, perform Bottom Plate Cleaning again.

9. When the completion message appears, select **OK.**

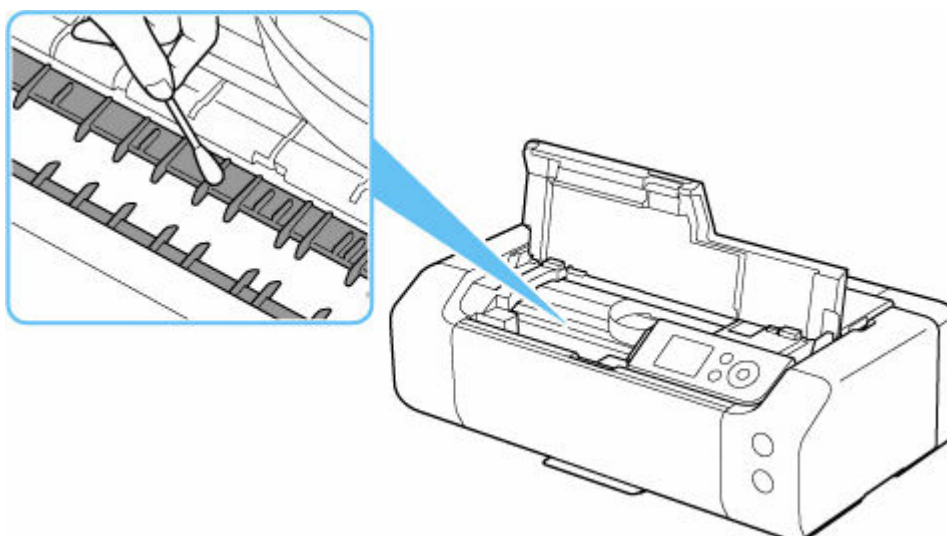
►►► Note

- When performing Bottom Plate Cleaning again, be sure to use a new piece of paper.

If the problem is not resolved after performing cleaning again, the protrusions inside the printer may be stained. Wipe off any ink from the protrusions using a cotton swab or the like.

►►► Important

- Be sure to turn off the power and unplug the power cord before cleaning the printer.



Performing Maintenance Functions from Your Computer (Windows)

- **Opening the Maintenance Tool (Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool)**
- **Cleaning the Print Heads**
- **Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern**
- **Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool Description**

Opening the Maintenance Tool (Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool)

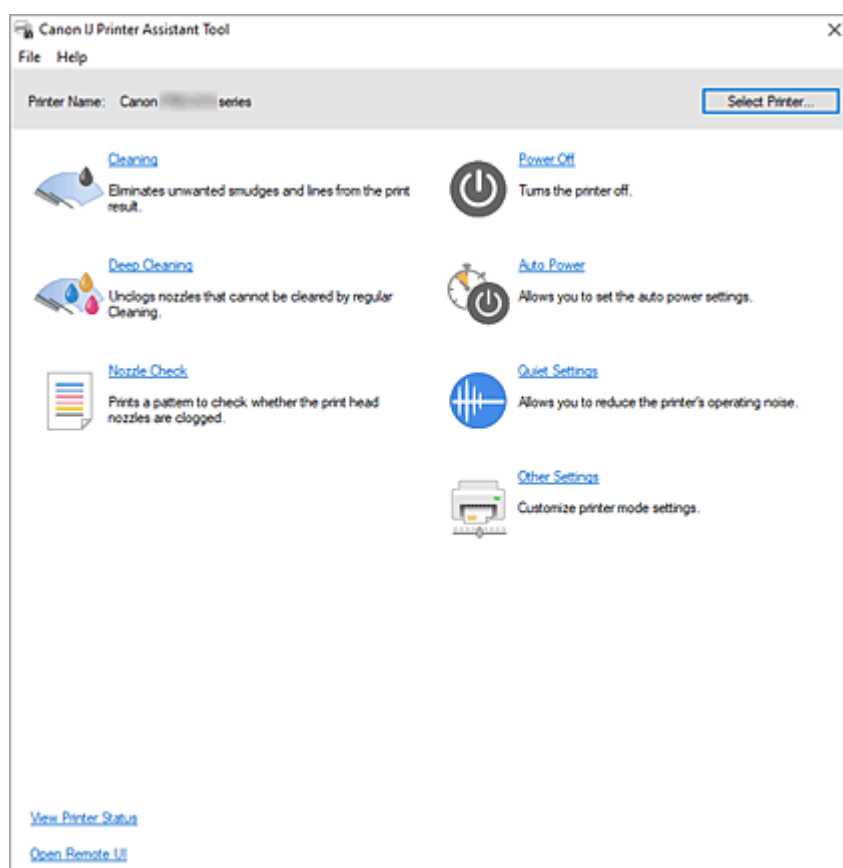
[Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool](#) is an application software to perform printer maintenance or change the settings of the printer.

When printer driver is installed, Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool is also installed.

To install only Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool, access the Canon web site and download the software.

▶▶▶ Note

- For details on installing the Driver, see "[Installing the Driver](#)."



How to start the Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool

Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool can be started in the following ways.

- Click **Maintenance and Preferences** icon in the **Maintenance** tab of the printer driver.
- From Windows **Start** menu, click (**All apps**, **Apps**, or **All Programs** ->) **Canon Utilities** -> **IJ Printer Assistant Tool**.

Related Topics

- ➡ [Cleaning the Print Heads](#)
- ➡ [Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern](#)
- ➡ [Managing the Printer Power](#)

- ➡ [Reducing the Printer Noise](#)
- ➡ [Changing the Printer Operation Mode](#)

Cleaning the Print Heads

The print head Cleaning and Deep Cleaning functions allow you to clear up clogged print head nozzles. Perform print head Cleaning if printing results are not satisfactory or if a specific color fails to print, even though there is enough ink.



Cleaning

1. Open [Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool](#)

2. Click **Cleaning**

When the **Print Head Cleaning** dialog box opens, select the ink group for which Cleaning is to be performed.

Click **Initial Check Items** to display the items you need to check before performing Cleaning.

3. Perform Cleaning

Check that the printer is on and then click **Start**.

Print Head Cleaning starts.

4. Complete Cleaning

Click **OK** when the confirmation message is displayed.

The **Nozzle Check** dialog box will open.

5. Check the results

To check whether the print quality has improved, click **Print Check Pattern**. To cancel the check process, click **Cancel**.

If cleaning the head once does not resolve the print head problem, clean it once more.

»» Important

- **Cleaning** consumes a small amount of ink.

Cleaning the print head frequently will rapidly deplete your printer's ink supply. Perform Cleaning only when necessary.



Deep Cleaning

Deep Cleaning is more thorough than Cleaning. Perform Deep Cleaning when two **Cleaning** attempts do not resolve the print head problem.

1. Open [Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool](#)

2. Click **Deep Cleaning**

When the **Deep Cleaning** dialog box opens, select the ink group for which Deep Cleaning is to be performed.

Click **Initial Check Items** to display the items you need to check before performing Deep Cleaning.

3. Perform Deep Cleaning

Check that the printer is on and then click **Start**.

Click **OK** when the confirmation message appears.

Print head Deep Cleaning starts.

4. Complete Deep Cleaning

Click **OK** when the confirmation message is displayed.

The **Nozzle Check** dialog box will open.

5. Check the results

To check whether the print quality has improved, click **Print Check Pattern**. To cancel the check process, click **Cancel**.

»»» Important

- **Deep Cleaning** consumes a larger amount of ink than **Cleaning**.
Cleaning the print head frequently will rapidly deplete your printer's ink supply. Perform Deep Cleaning only when necessary.

Related Topic

➡ [Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern](#)

Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern

The Nozzle Check function allows you to check whether the print head is working properly by printing a Nozzle Check pattern. Print the pattern if printing results are not satisfactory, or if a specific color fails to print.



Nozzle Check

1. Open [Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool](#)

2. Click **Nozzle Check**

The **Nozzle Check** dialog box opens.

Click **Initial Check Items** to display the items that you need to check before printing the Nozzle Check pattern.

3. Load paper in the printer

Load one sheet of A4 size plain paper into the top feed.

4. Print a Nozzle Check pattern

Check that the printer is on and then click **Print Check Pattern**.

The Nozzle Check pattern will be printed.

Click **OK** when the confirmation message appears.

The **Pattern Check** dialog box opens.

5. Check the print result

Check the print result. If the print result is normal, click **Exit**.

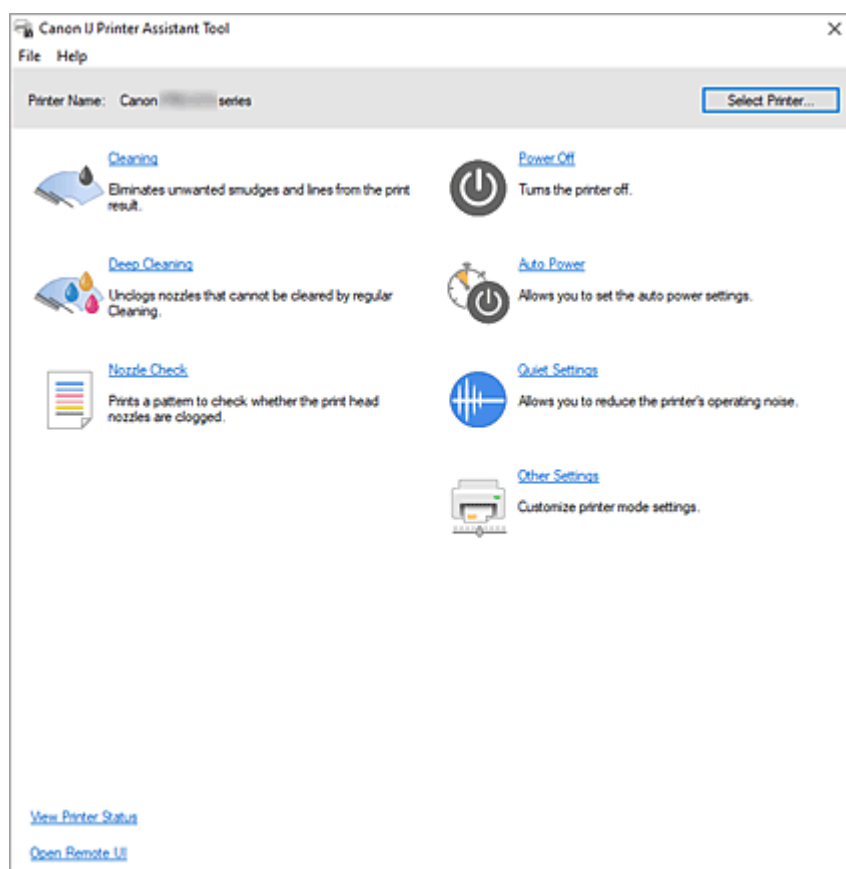
If the print result is smudged or if there are any unprinted sections, click **Cleaning** to clean the print head.

Related Topic

➡ [Cleaning the Print Heads](#)

Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool Description

The Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool allows you to perform printer maintenance or change the settings of the printer.



Cleaning

Performs print head Cleaning.

The print head Cleaning function allows you to clear up clogged print head nozzles.

Perform print head Cleaning if printing results are not satisfactory or if a specific color fails to print, even though there is enough ink.



Deep Cleaning

Performs Deep Cleaning.

Perform Deep Cleaning when two Cleaning attempts do not resolve the print head problem.

►►► Note

- **Deep Cleaning** consumes a larger amount of ink than **Cleaning**.
Cleaning the print heads frequently will rapidly deplete your printer's ink supply. Perform Cleaning only when necessary.

Ink Group

When you click **Cleaning** or **Deep Cleaning**, the **Ink Group** window is displayed.

Selects the ink group that you want to clean the print head for.

Click [Initial Check Items](#) to display the items that you need to check before you perform Cleaning or Deep Cleaning.



Nozzle Check

Prints a Nozzle Check pattern.

Perform this function if printing becomes faint or a specific color fails to print. Print a Nozzle Check pattern, and check whether the print head is working properly.

If the print result for a specific color is faint, or if there are any unprinted sections, click **Cleaning** to clean the print head.

To display a list of items that you should check before printing the Nozzle Check pattern, click [Initial Check Items](#).

Print Check Pattern

This function prints a pattern that allows you to check whether any of the ink nozzles are clogged.

Click **Print Check Pattern**. When the confirmation message is displayed, click **OK**. The **Pattern Check** dialog box is then displayed.

Left-side bitmap (good)

The print head nozzles are not clogged.

Right-side bitmap (bad)

The print head nozzles may be clogged.

Exit

Closes the **Pattern Check** dialog box.

Cleaning

Performs print head Cleaning.

Print head Cleaning removes any blockage in the print head nozzles.

Perform Cleaning when printing becomes faint, or if a specific color fails to print, even though all ink levels are sufficiently high.



Power Off

Turns off the printer from the Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool.

Perform this function to turn off the printer when you cannot press the ON button (POWER button) on the printer because the printer is out of your reach.

You must press the ON button (POWER button) on the printer to turn the printer on again after clicking this button. When you use this function, you will not be able to turn the printer on from the Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool.



Auto Power

Opens the [Auto Power Settings dialog box](#).

Specify settings for operating the printer power automatically. Perform this function if you want to change the auto power settings.

»» Note

- If the printer is off or if communication between the printer and the computer is disabled, an error message may appear because the computer cannot collect the printer status.
If this happens, click **OK** to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.



Quiet Settings

Opens the [Quiet Settings dialog box](#).

Quiet Settings dialog box allows you to specify a setting that reduces the operating noise of the printer. This mode comes in handy when the operating noise of the printer becomes a concern, such when printing at night. Perform this operation when you want to change the quiet mode setting.

»» Note

- If the printer is off or if communication between the printer and the computer is disabled, an error message may appear because the computer cannot collect the printer status.
If this happens, click **OK** to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.



Other Settings

Opens the [Other Settings dialog box](#).

Perform this function to change the settings of this printer.

»» Note

- If the printer is off or if communication between the printer and the computer is disabled, an error message may appear because the computer cannot collect the printer status.
If this happens, click **OK** to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.

View Printer Status

Starts the Canon IJ Status Monitor.

Perform this function when you want to check the printer status and how a print job is proceeding.

Open Remote UI

You can perform printer maintenance and settings in this menu.

Initial Check Items (Cleaning / Deep Cleaning)

Before running **Cleaning** or **Deep Cleaning**, check that the printer power is on, and open the cover of the printer.

Check the following items for each ink.

- [Check the amount of ink](#) remaining in the tank.
- Check that you push in the ink tank completely until you hear a clicking sound.

- If an orange tape is adhered to the ink tank, peel it off completely.
Any remaining tape will hinder ink output.
- Check that the ink tanks are installed in their correct positions.

Initial Check Items (Nozzle Check)

Before running **Nozzle Check**, check that the printer power is on, and open the cover of the printer.
Check the following items for each ink.

- [Check the amount of ink](#) remaining in the tank.
- Check that you push in the ink tank completely until you hear a clicking sound.
- If an orange tape is adhered to the ink tank, peel it off completely.
Any remaining tape will hinder ink output.
- Check that the ink tanks are installed in their correct positions.

Auto Power Settings dialog box

When you click **Auto Power**, the **Auto Power Settings** dialog box is displayed.
This dialog box allows you to manage the printer power from the Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool.

Auto Power On

Selects the auto power-on setting.
Specify **Disable** to prevent the printer from turning on automatically when print data is sent to it.
Check that the printer is on and then click **OK** to change the printer settings.
Specify **Enable** to turn the printer on automatically when print data is sent to it.

Auto Power Off

Select the time that you want to set from the list. If a printer driver operation or a printer operation is not performed within the selected time, the printer turns off.

▶▶▶ Note

- Enabling auto power on, disabling auto power off, or extending the time for auto power off will increase power consumption.

Quiet Settings dialog box

When you click **Quiet Settings**, the **Quiet Settings** dialog box is displayed.
Quiet Settings dialog box allows you to specify a setting that reduces the operating noise of the printer.
Select when you wish to reduce the operating noise of the printer at night, etc.
Using this function may lower the print speed.

Do not use quiet mode

Select this option when you wish to use the printer with volume of normal operating noise.

Always use quiet mode

Select this option when you wish to reduce the operating noise of the printer.

Use quiet mode during specified hours

Select this option when you wish to reduce the operating noise of the printer during a specified period of time.

Set the **Start time** and the **End time** of the quiet mode you wish to be activated. If both are set to the same time, the quiet mode will not function.

»» Important

- You can set the quiet mode from the operation panel of the printer, or the Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool.

No matter how you use to set the quiet mode, the mode is applied when you perform operations from the operation panel of the printer or printing from the computer.

Other Settings dialog box

When you click **Other Settings**, the **Other Settings** dialog box is displayed.

If necessary, switch between various modes of printer operation.

Detects compatible media in the multi-purpose tray

Detects whether compatible media is loaded on the multi-purpose tray during printing using the multi-purpose tray, and displays a message if compatible media is not loaded.

Uncheck this check box to print without detecting whether compatible media is loaded.

»» Important

- If you leave this check box unchecked, the printer may print to the multi-purpose tray even if compatible media is not loaded on the multi-purpose tray. Therefore, you should check this check box under normal circumstances.
- If you load compatible media that has already been printed onto the multi-purpose tray, the printer may detect that no compatible media is loaded on the multi-purpose tray. In this case, uncheck this check box.

Related Topics

- ➡ [Cleaning the Print Heads](#)
- ➡ [Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern](#)
- ➡ [Managing the Printer Power](#)
- ➡ [Reducing the Printer Noise](#)
- ➡ [Changing the Printer Operation Mode](#)

Performing Maintenance Functions from Your Computer (macOS)

- **Opening Remote UI for Maintenance**
- **Cleaning the Print Heads**
- **Checking Ink Status from Your Computer**
- **Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern**

Opening Remote UI for Maintenance

You can perform maintenance of printer and change the settings from a Remote UI. The following is the procedure to open a Remote UI.

1. Open **System Settings**, and select **Printers & Scanners**
2. Select your model from the printer list, and click **Options & Supplies...**
3. Click **Show Printer Webpage...** in **General** tab

Remote UI starts.

▶▶▶ Note

- The password may have to be entered after Remote UI starts. In such a case, enter the password and click **OK**. In case you do not know the password, see "Password and Cookie."

Related Topics

- ➡ [Cleaning the Print Heads](#)
- ➡ [Checking Ink Status from Your Computer](#)
- ➡ [Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern](#)
- ➡ [Changing the Printer Operation Mode](#)
- ➡ [Reducing the Printer Noise](#)

Cleaning the Print Heads

The print head Cleaning and Deep Cleaning functions allow you to clear up clogged print head nozzles. Perform print head Cleaning if printing results are not satisfactory or if a specific color fails to print, even though there is enough ink.

Cleaning

1. Select **Utilities** from [Remote UI](#)

2. Click **Cleaning**

Before performing Cleaning, check the following items:

Check whether the printer is on and open the printer's cover.

Check the following items for each ink. Then, if necessary, perform **Cleaning**.

- [Is there ink remaining?](#)
- Did you push in the ink completely until you heard a clicking sound?
- If the orange tape is there, has it been peeled off completely?
Any remaining tape will hinder ink output.
- Did you install the inks in their correct positions?

3. Perform Cleaning

Click **Yes**.

Print head Cleaning starts.

4. Complete Cleaning

Next, the message for Nozzle Check pattern printing is displayed.

5. Check the results

To check whether the print quality has improved, click **Yes**. To cancel the check process, click **No**.

If cleaning the head once does not resolve the print head problem, clean it once more.

»» Important

- **Cleaning** consumes a small amount of ink.
Cleaning the print head frequently will rapidly deplete your printer's ink supply. Perform Cleaning only when necessary.

Deep Cleaning

Deep Cleaning is more thorough than Cleaning. Perform Deep Cleaning when two **Cleaning** attempts do not resolve the print head problem.

1. Select **Utilities** from [Remote UI](#)

2. Click **Deep Cleaning**

Before performing Deep Cleaning, check the following items:

Check whether the printer is on and open the printer's cover.

Check the following items for each ink. Then, if necessary, perform **Deep Cleaning**.

- [Is there ink remaining?](#)
- Did you push in the ink completely until you heard a clicking sound?
- If the orange tape is there, has it been peeled off completely?
Any remaining tape will hinder ink output.
- Did you install the inks in their correct positions?

3. Perform Deep Cleaning

Click **Yes**.

Print head Deep Cleaning starts.

4. Complete Deep Cleaning

Next, the message for Nozzle Check pattern printing is displayed.

5. Check the results

To check whether the print quality has improved, click **Yes**. To cancel the check process, click **No**.

»» Important

- **Deep Cleaning** consumes a larger amount of ink than **Cleaning**.
Cleaning the print head frequently will rapidly deplete your printer's ink supply. Perform Deep Cleaning only when necessary.

»» Note

- If there is no sign of improvement after **Deep Cleaning**, turn off the printer, wait 24 hours, and then perform **Deep Cleaning** again. If there is still no sign of improvement, the ink may have run out or the print head may be worn. For details on the remedial action to be taken, see "[Ink Does Not Come Out/Blurry or Fuzzy/Inaccurate or Bleeding Colors/Streaks](#)."

Related Topic

➡ [Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern](#)

Checking Ink Status from Your Computer

You can check the detailed information such as the remaining ink level and the ink tank types of your model.

If you select **Printer status** from [Remote UI](#), the ink status appears as an illustration.

Estimated ink levels

You can check the types and levels of ink.

When ink levels are running low or an error occurs because there is no ink, a notification icon will appear.

Ink model number

You can look up the correct ink tank for your printer.

»» Note

- Ink status can also be checked in **Supply Levels** under **Printer Info** of the print dialog.

Printing a Nozzle Check Pattern

The Nozzle Check function allows you to check whether the print head is working properly by printing a Nozzle Check pattern. Print the pattern if printing results are not satisfactory, or if a specific color fails to print.

Nozzle Check

1. Selecting **Utilities** from [Remote UI](#)

2. Click **Nozzle Check**

The confirmation message appears.

Before printing the Nozzle Check pattern, check the following items:

Check whether the printer is on and open the printer's cover.

Check the following items for each ink. Then, if necessary, perform **Nozzle Check**.

- [Is there ink remaining?](#)
- Did you push in the ink completely until you heard a clicking sound?
- If the orange tape is there, has it been peeled off completely?
Any remaining tape will hinder ink output.
- Did you install the inks in their correct positions?

3. Load paper in the printer

Load one sheet of A4 size plain paper into the top feed.

4. Print a Nozzle Check pattern

Click **Yes**.

Printing of the Nozzle Check pattern begins.

5. Check the print result

When the dialog opens, check the print result. If the print result is normal, click **All A**.

If the print result is smudged or if there are any unprinted sections, click **Also B** to clean the print head.

Related Topic

➡ [Cleaning the Print Heads](#)

Other Maintenance

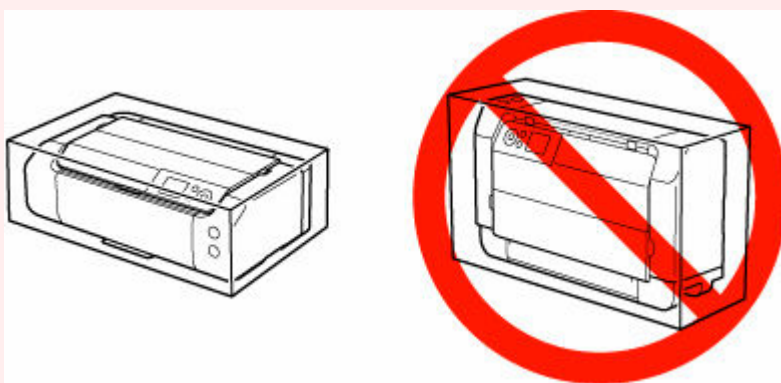
- [Transporting Your Printer](#)

Transporting Your Printer

When relocating the printer for changing your living place or repairing it, make sure of the following.

»» Important

- Pack the printer in a sturdy box so that it is placed with its bottom facing down, using sufficient protective material to ensure safe transport.
- With the print head and ink tank left installed in the printer, press the **ON** button to turn off the power. This allows the printer to automatically cap the print head, thus preventing it from drying.
- After packing, do not tilt the box containing the printer or turn it on its side or upside down. Doing so may cause the ink to leak during transport and cause damage to the printer.
- When a shipping agent is handling transport of the printer, have its box marked "THIS SIDE UP" to keep the printer with its bottom facing down. Mark also with "FRAGILE" or "HANDLE WITH CARE".



1. [Turn the printer off.](#)
2. Check that **ON** lamp is off and unplug power cord.

»» Important

- Do not unplug the printer while the **ON** lamp is lit or flashing, as it may cause malfunction or damage to the printer, making the printer unable to print.

3. Retract trays.
4. Unplug the printer cable from the computer and from the printer, then unplug the power cord from the printer.
5. Use adhesive tape to secure all the covers on the printer to keep them from opening during transportation. Then pack the printer in the plastic bag.
6. Attach the protective material to the printer when packing the printer in the box.

Printer Information

- **Safety**
- **Handling Precautions**
- **Specifications**

Safety

- **Safety Precautions**
- **Regulatory Information**
- **WEEE**

Safety Precautions

Safety Precautions

- This manual contains important notices and safety precautions about your printer.

Do not use the printer in ways other than described in the accompanying manuals, as this may result in fire, electric shock or other unexpected accidents.

Safety standard marks and declarations are only valid for the supported voltages and frequencies in the applicable countries or regions.

Warning

- Users with cardiac pacemakers:

This product emits a low-level magnetic flux. If you feel abnormalities, please move away from the product and consult your doctor.

- Do not use the printer in the following cases:

Stop use immediately, unplug the printer and call your local service representative to request repair.

- Metal objects or liquids are spilt inside the printer.
 - The printer emits smoke, strange odors, or makes unusual noises.
 - The power cord or plug overheat or are broken, bent or damaged in any way.
- Failure to adhere to the following may result in fire, electric shock, or injury:
 - Do not place product close to the flammable solvents such as alcohol or thinner.
 - Do not open or modify the printer.
 - Use only the power cord/cables that came with your printer. Do not use these cables with other devices.
 - Do not plug in to voltages or frequencies other than those specified.
 - Plug the power cord into the socket completely.
 - Do not plug in or unplug the power cord with wet hands.
 - Do not damage the power cord or other cables by twisting, bundling, tying, pulling or excessively bending them.
 - Do not place heavy objects on the power cord.
 - Do not connect multiple power cords to a single electrical outlet. Do not use multiple extension cords.
 - Do not leave the printer plugged in during lightning storms.
 - Always unplug the power cord and cables when cleaning. Do not use flammable sprays or liquids such as alcohol or thinners for cleaning.
 - Unplug the power cord once a month to check that it is not overheating, rusted, bent, scratched, split, or otherwise damaged.

Caution

- Do not put your hands inside the printer while printing.
- Do not touch the metal parts of the print head immediately after printing.
- Ink
 - Keep ink out of reach of children.

- If ink is accidentally licked or swallowed, rinse out your mouth and drink one or two glasses of water. If irritation or discomfort occurs, obtain medical advice immediately.
 - In case ink gets in contact with eyes, rinse with water immediately. In case ink gets in contact with skin, wash with soap and water immediately. If irritation to eyes or skin persists, obtain medical advice immediately.
-

General Notices

Choosing a Location

Refer to "[Specifications](#)" in the Online manual for details on operating environment.

- Do not install the printer in a location that is unstable or subject to excessive vibration.
- Do not install the printer in locations that get very hot (direct sunlight, or close to a heating source), very humid or dusty locations, or outdoors.
- Do not place the printer on a thick rug or carpet.
- Do not place the printer flush against a wall.

Power Supply

- Keep the area around the power outlet clear at all times so you can easily unplug the power cord if necessary.
- Never remove the plug by pulling on the cord.

General Notices

- Do not tilt the printer, stand it on end, or turn it upside down. This may cause ink to leak.
- Do not place anything on top of the printer. Be especially careful to avoid metal objects such as paper clips and staples, and containers holding flammable liquids such as alcohol or thinner.
- Do not attempt to open, disassemble or modify the ink tanks. Ink may leak and damage your printer.
- Do not throw print heads or ink tanks in the fire.

Regulatory Information

Users in the U.S.A.

FCC Notice (U.S.A. Only)

For 120V, 60Hz model

Model Number: K10619 (Contains FCC Approved WLAN Module K30387)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Use of a shielded cable is required to comply with Class B limits in Subpart B of Part 15 of the FCC Rules.

Do not make any changes or modifications to the equipment unless otherwise specified in the manual. If such changes or modifications should be made, you could be required to stop operation of the equipment.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate equipment.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines as this equipment has very low levels of RF energy. But it is desirable that it should be installed and operated keeping the radiator at least 20cm or more away from person's body.

Canon U.S.A., Inc.

One Canon Park

Melville, New York 11747

1-800-652-2666

Users in Europe

Product Information for the requirement of COMMISSION REGULATION (EU)

The power consumption in Off Mode or network standby and the transition time to Off or network standby are as follows:

<https://www.canon-europe.com/consumer/lot26/>

Interference

Do not use the printer around medical equipment or other electronic devices. Signals from the printer may interfere with the correct operation of these devices.

WEEE

Only for the United Kingdom



These symbols indicate that this product is not to be disposed of with your household waste, according to the UK Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment Regulations and the UK Batteries and Accumulators Regulations. If a chemical symbol is printed beneath the symbol shown above, in accordance with the UK Batteries and Accumulators Regulations, this indicates that a heavy metal (Hg = Mercury, Cd = Cadmium, Pb = Lead) is present in this battery or accumulator at a concentration above an applicable threshold specified in the UK Batteries and Accumulators Regulations. This product should be handed over to a designated collection point, e.g., on an authorized one-for-one basis when you buy a new similar product or to an authorized collection site for recycling waste electrical and electronic equipment (EEE) and batteries and accumulators. Improper handling of this type of waste could have a possible impact on the environment and human health due to potentially hazardous substances that are generally associated with EEE. Your cooperation in the correct disposal of this product will contribute to the effective usage of natural resources. For more information about the recycling of this product, please contact your local city office, waste authority, approved scheme or your household waste disposal service or visit www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/.

Only for European Union and EEA (Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein)



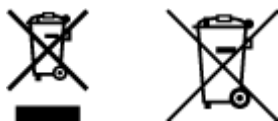
These symbols indicate that this product is not to be disposed of with your household waste, according to the WEEE Directive (2012/19/EU), the Battery Regulation ((EU) 2023/1542) and/or national legislations implementing those Directive and Regulation.

If a chemical symbol is printed beneath the symbol shown above, in accordance with the Battery Regulation, this indicates that a heavy metal (Pb = Lead) is present in this battery at a concentration above an applicable threshold specified in the Battery Regulation.

This product should be handed over to a designated collection point, e.g., on an authorized one-for-one basis when you buy a new similar product or to an authorized collection site for recycling waste electrical and electronic equipment (EEE) and batteries. Improper handling of this type of waste could have a possible impact on the environment and human health due to potentially hazardous substances that are generally associated with EEE. Your cooperation in the correct disposal of this product will contribute to the effective usage of natural resources.

For more information about the recycling of this product, please contact your local city office, waste authority, approved scheme or your household waste disposal service or visit www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/.

Nur für die Europäische Union und EWR (Norwegen, Island und Liechtenstein)



Diese Symbole weisen darauf hin, dass dieses Produkt gemäß WEEE-Richtlinie (2012/19/EU) (Richtlinie über Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräte), Batterienverordnung (EU) 2023/1542 und nationalen Gesetzen zur Umsetzung dieser Richtlinie und Verordnung nicht über den Hausmüll entsorgt werden darf.

Falls sich unter dem oben abgebildeten Symbol ein chemisches Symbol befindet, bedeutet dies gemäß der Batterieverordnung, dass in dieser Batterie ein Schwermetall (Pb = Blei) in einer Konzentration vorhanden ist, die über einem in der Verordnung angegebenen Grenzwert liegt.

Dieses Produkt muss bei einer dafür vorgesehenen Sammelstelle abgegeben werden. Dies kann z. B. durch Rückgabe beim Kauf eines neuen ähnlichen Produkts oder durch Abgabe bei einer autorisierten Sammelstelle für die Wiederaufbereitung von Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräten sowie Batterien geschehen. Der unsachgemäße Umgang mit Altgeräten kann aufgrund potenziell gefährlicher Stoffe, die generell mit Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräten in Verbindung stehen, negative Auswirkungen auf die Umwelt und die menschliche Gesundheit haben.

Durch Ihre Mitarbeit bei der umweltgerechten Entsorgung dieses Produkts tragen Sie zu einer effektiven Nutzung natürlicher Ressourcen bei.

Um weitere Informationen über die Wiederverwertung dieses Produkts zu erhalten, wenden Sie sich an Ihre Stadtverwaltung, den öffentlich-rechtlichen Entsorgungsträger, eine autorisierte Stelle für die Entsorgung von Elektro- und Elektronik-Altgeräten oder Ihr örtliches Entsorgungsunternehmen oder besuchen Sie

www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/.

Zusatzinformationen für Deutschland:

Dieses Produkt kann durch Rückgabe an den Händler, unter den in der Verordnung des Elektro- und Elektronikgerätegesetzes beschriebenen Bedingungen abgegeben werden.

Als Endbenutzer und Besitzer von Elektro- oder Elektronikgeräten sind Sie verpflichtet:

- diese einer vom unsortierten Siedlungsabfall getrennten Erfassung zuzuführen,
- Altbatterien und Altakkumulatoren, die nicht von Altgerät umschlossen sind, sowie Lampen, die zerstörungsfrei aus dem Altgerät entnommen werden können, vor der Abgabe an einer Erfassungsstelle vom Altgerät zerstörungsfrei zu trennen,
- personenbezogene Daten auf den Altgeräten vor der Entsorgung zu löschen.

Die Bedeutung des Symbols der durchgestrichenen Abfalltonne auf Rädern finden Sie oben in dieser Beschreibung.

Die Vertreiber von Elektro- oder Elektronikgeräten haben die Pflicht zur unentgeltlichen Rücknahme von Altgeräten. Die Vertreiber haben die Endnutzer über die von ihnen geschaffenen Möglichkeiten der Rückgabe von Altgeräten zu informieren.

Union Européenne, Norvège, Islande et Liechtenstein uniquement.



Ces symboles indiquent que ce produit ne doit pas être mis au rebut avec les ordures ménagères, comme le spécifient la Directive européenne DEEE (2012/19/UE), la législation européenne relative à l'élimination des piles usagés ((EU) 2023/1542) et les lois en vigueur dans votre pays appliquant ces directives et législations.

Si un symbole de toxicité chimique est imprimé sous le symbole illustré ci-dessus conformément à la législation relative aux piles, il indique la présence d'un métal lourd (Pb = plomb) dans la pile à une concentration supérieure au seuil applicable spécifié par la législation.

Ce produit doit être confié au distributeur à chaque fois que vous achetez un produit neuf similaire, ou à un point de collecte mis en place par les collectivités locales pour le recyclage des Déchets des Équipements Électriques et Électroniques (DEEE) et piles. Le traitement inapproprié de ce type de déchet risque d'avoir des répercussions sur l'environnement et la santé humaine, du fait de la présence de substances potentiellement dangereuses généralement associées aux équipements électriques et électroniques.

Votre entière coopération dans le cadre de la mise au rebut correcte de ce produit favorisera une meilleure utilisation des ressources naturelles.

Pour plus d'informations sur le recyclage de ce produit, contactez vos services municipaux, votre éco-organisme ou les autorités locales compétentes, ou consultez le site www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/.

Uitsluitend bestemd voor de Europese Unie en EER (Noorwegen, IJsland en Liechtenstein)



Met deze symbolen wordt aangegeven dat dit product in overeenstemming met de AEEA-richtlijn (2012/19/EU), de wetgeving ((EU) 2023/1542) betreffende batterijen en/of de plaatselijk geldende wetgevingen waarin deze richtlijnen en wetgevingen zijn geïmplementeerd, niet bij het normale huisvuil mag worden weggegooid.

Indien onder het hierboven getoonde symbool een chemisch symbool gedrukt staat, geeft dit in overeenstemming met de wetgeving betreffende batterijen aan dat deze batterij een zwaar metaal bevat (Pb = lood) waarvan de concentratie de toepasselijke drempelwaarde in overeenstemming met de genoemde richtlijn overschrijdt.

Dit product dient te worden ingeleverd bij een hiervoor aangewezen inzamelpunt, bijv. door dit in te leveren bij een hiertoe erkend verkooppunt bij aankoop van een gelijksoortig product, of bij een officiële inzameldienst voor de recycling van elektrische en elektronische apparatuur (EEA) en batterijen. Door de potentieel gevaarlijke stoffen die gewoonlijk gepaard gaan met EEA, kan onjuiste verwerking van dit type afval mogelijk nadelige gevolgen hebben voor het milieu en de menselijke gezondheid. Uw medewerking bij het op juiste wijze weggooiën van dit product draagt bij tot effectief gebruik van natuurlijke hulpbronnen.

Voor verdere informatie over recycling van dit product kunt u contact opnemen met uw plaatselijke

Sólo para la Unión Europea y el Área Económica Europea (Noruega, Islandia y Liechtenstein)



Estos iconos indican que este producto no debe desecharse con los residuos domésticos de acuerdo con la Directiva sobre RAEE (2012/19/UE) y el Reglamento (UE) 2023/1542 relativo a las pilas y baterías y sus residuos y/o la legislación nacional que transponen e implementan dicha.

Si aparece un símbolo químico bajo este icono, de acuerdo con el Reglamento sobre Pilas y baterías, significa que la pila contiene metales pesados (Pb = Plomo) en una concentración superior al límite especificado en dicho Reglamento.

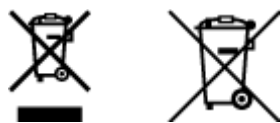
Este producto deberá entregarse en un punto de recogida designado, por ejemplo, entregándolo en el lugar de venta al adquirir un producto nuevo similar o en un centro autorizado para la recogida de residuos de aparatos eléctricos y electrónicos (RAEE) y baterías. La gestión incorrecta de este tipo de residuos puede afectar al medio ambiente y a la salud humana debido a las sustancias potencialmente nocivas que suelen contener estos aparatos.

Su cooperación en la correcta eliminación de este producto contribuirá al correcto aprovechamiento de los recursos naturales.

Los usuarios tienen derecho a devolver pilas o baterías usadas sin coste alguno. El precio de venta de pilas y baterías incluye el coste de la gestión medioambiental de su desecho, no reflejándose la cuantía de dicho coste en la factura suministradas a los usuarios finales.

Si desea más información sobre el reciclado de este producto, póngase en contacto con su municipio, el servicio o el organismo encargado de la gestión de residuos domésticos o visite www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/.

Solo per Unione Europea e SEE (Norvegia, Islanda e Liechtenstein)



Questi simboli indicano che il prodotto non può essere smaltito con i rifiuti domestici, ai sensi della Direttiva RAEE (2012/19/UE), del Regolamento sulle Batterie ((UE) 2023/1542) e/o delle leggi nazionali che attuano tale Direttiva e Regolamento.

Se sotto il simbolo indicato sopra è riportato un simbolo chimico, in osservanza del Regolamento sulle Batterie, tale simbolo indica la presenza di un metallo pesante (Pb = Piombo) nella batteria con un livello di concentrazione superiore a una soglia applicabile specificata nel Regolamento sulle Batterie.

Il prodotto deve essere conferito a un punto di raccolta designato, ad esempio il rivenditore in caso di acquisto di un nuovo prodotto simile oppure un centro di raccolta autorizzato per il riciclaggio di rifiuti di apparecchiature elettriche ed elettroniche (RAEE) nonché di batterie. Un trattamento improprio di questo tipo di rifiuti può avere conseguenze negative sull'ambiente e sulla salute umana a causa delle sostanze potenzialmente nocive solitamente contenute in tali rifiuti.

La collaborazione dell'utente per il corretto smaltimento di questo prodotto contribuirà a un utilizzo efficace

delle risorse naturali.

Per ulteriori informazioni sul riciclaggio di questo prodotto, vogliate contattare il vostro ufficio comunale, le autorità competenti, un sistema di raccolta rifiuti autorizzato, o il vostro servizio di raccolta dei rifiuti domestici, oppure visitare il sito www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/.

Apenas para a União Europeia e Espaço Económico Europeu (Noruega, Islândia e Liechtenstein)



Estes símbolos indicam que este produto não deve ser descartado juntamente com os resíduos urbanos, segundo a Diretiva REEE - Diretiva 2012/19/UE, segundo o Regulamento Baterias - Regulamento (UE) 2023/1542 e/ou a legislação nacional que transpõe esta Diretiva e Regulamento.

Caso esteja marcado um símbolo químico abaixo do símbolo mostrado acima, de acordo com o Regulamento Baterias, isso significa que está presente nesta bateria um metal pesado (Pb = Chumbo) numa concentração acima do respetivo limite especificado no Regulamento.

Este produto deve ser entregue num ponto de recolha designado, por exemplo num local de receção autorizado quando compra um equipamento novo idêntico, ou num local de recolha autorizado para reciclar resíduos de equipamento elétrico e eletrónico (EEE) e de baterias. O tratamento inadequado deste tipo de resíduos pode ter um impacto negativo no ambiente e na saúde humana, devido a substâncias potencialmente perigosas que estão geralmente associadas aos EEE.

A sua cooperação no descarte adequado deste produto irá contribuir para a utilização mais eficaz dos recursos naturais.

Para saber mais sobre como reciclar este produto, por favor contacte a divisão de resíduos dos serviços municipais ou entidades gestoras autorizadas para a gestão destes fluxos de resíduos ou visite www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/.

Gælder kun i Europæiske Union og EØS (Norge, Island og Liechtenstein)



Disse symboler betyder, at produktet ikke må bortskaffes sammen med dagrenovation i henhold til WEEE-direktivet (2012/19/EU), batteriforordningen ((EU) 2023/1542) og/eller de lokale lovgivninger, som disse direktiver og forordninger er gennemført i.

Hvis der i overensstemmelse med batteriforordningen er trykt et kemisk symbol under det symbol, der er vist ovenfor, betyder det, at batteriet indeholder tungmetal (Pb = bly) i en koncentration, som ligger over de grænseværdier, der er beskrevet i batteriforordningen.

Produktet skal afleveres på et godkendt indsamlingssted, f.eks. i overensstemmelse med en godkendt én-til-én-procedure, når du indkøber et nyt tilsvarende produkt, eller på et godkendt indsamlingssted for elektronikaffald og batterier. Forkert håndtering af denne type affald kan medføre negative konsekvenser for miljøet og menneskers helbred på grund af de potentielt sundhedsskadelige stoffer, der generelt kan forefindes i elektrisk og elektronisk udstyr.

Når du foretager korrekt bortskaffelse af produktet, bidrager du til effektiv brug af naturressourcerne. Kontakt din kommune, den lokale affaldsmyndighed, det lokale affaldsanlæg, eller besøg www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/ for at få flere oplysninger om genbrug af dette produkt.

Μόνο για την Ευρωπαϊκή Ένωση και τον ΕΟΧ (Νορβηγία, Ισλανδία και Λιχτενστάιν)



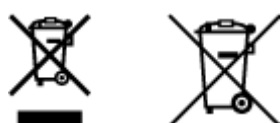
Αυτά τα σύμβολα υποδεικνύουν ότι αυτό το προϊόν δεν πρέπει να απορρίπτεται μαζί με τα οικιακά απορρίμματα, σύμφωνα με την Οδηγία για τα Απόβλητα Ηλεκτρικού και Ηλεκτρονικού Εξοπλισμού (ΑΗΗΕ) (2012/19/ΕΕ), την τον Κανονισμό για τις Μπαταρίες ((ΕΕ) 2023/1542) ή/και τις εθνικές νομοθεσίες που εφαρμόζει τις εν λόγω Οδηγίες και Κανονισμούς.

Εάν κάποιο χημικό σύμβολο είναι τυπωμένο κάτω από το σύμβολο που φαίνεται παραπάνω, σύμφωνα με τον Κανονισμό για τις Μπαταρίες, υποδηλώνει ότι κάποιο βαρύ μέταλλο (Pb = Μόλυβδος) υπάρχει στην μπαταρία σε συγκέντρωση μεγαλύτερη από το ισχύον επίπεδο που καθορίζεται στον Κανονισμό για τις Μπαταρίες.

Αυτό το προϊόν πρέπει να παραδίδεται σε καθορισμένο σημείο συλλογής, π.χ. σε μια εξουσιοδοτημένη βάση ανταλλαγής όταν αγοράζετε ένα νέο παρόμοιο προϊόν ή σε μια εξουσιοδοτημένη θέση συλλογής για την ανακύκλωση των αποβλήτων ηλεκτρικού και ηλεκτρονικού εξοπλισμού (ΗΗΕ) και των μπαταριών. Ο ακατάλληλος χειρισμός αυτού του τύπου αποβλήτων μπορεί να έχει αρνητικό αντίκτυπο στο περιβάλλον και την υγεία του ανθρώπου, λόγω δυνητικά επικίνδυνων ουσιών που γενικά συνδέονται με τον ΗΗΕ.

Η συνεργασία σας για τη σωστή απόρριψη αυτού του προϊόντος θα συμβάλει στην αποτελεσματική χρήση των φυσικών πόρων. Για περισσότερες πληροφορίες σχετικά με ανακύκλωση αυτού του προϊόντος, επικοινωνήστε με το τοπικό γραφείο της πόλης σας, την υπηρεσία απορριμμάτων, το εγκεκριμένο σχήμα ή την υπηρεσία απόρριψης οικιακών αποβλήτων ή επισκεφθείτε τη διεύθυνση <https://www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/>.

Gjelder kun den europeiske union og EØS (Norge, Island og Liechtenstein)



Disse symbolene indikerer at dette produktet ikke skal kastes sammen med husholdningsaffald, i henhold til WEEE-direktivet (2012/19/EU), batteri-forordning EU 2023/1542 og/eller nasjonal lov som har implementert disse direktivene og forordningen.

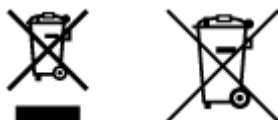
Hvis et kjemisk symbol vises under symbolet vist ovenfor, i samsvar med batteri-forordning EU 2023/1542, indikerer dette at et tungmetall (Pb = bly) finnes i batteriet i en konsentrasjon over en gjeldende øvre grense som er spesifisert i batteri-forordning EU 2023/1542.

Produktet må leveres til et dertil egnet innsamlingspunkt, det vil si på en autorisert en-til-en-basis når en kjøper et nytt lignende produkt, eller til et autorisert innsamlingssted for resirkulering av avfall fra elektrisk og elektronisk utstyr (EE-utstyr) og batterier. Feil håndtering av denne typen avfall kan være miljø- og helseskadelig på grunn av potensielt skadelige stoffer som ofte brukes i EE-utstyr.

Din innsats for korrekt avhending av produktet vil bidra til effektiv bruk av naturressurser.

Du kan få mer informasjon om resirkulering av dette produktet ved å kontakte lokale myndigheter, avfallsadministrasjonen, et godkjent program eller husholdningens renovasjonsselskap, eller gå til www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/.

Vain Euroopan unionin sekä ETA:n (Norja, Islanti ja Liechtenstein) alueelle.

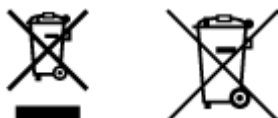


Nämä tunnukset osoittavat, että sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromua koskeva direktiivi (SER-direktiivi, 2012/19/EU), paristoasetus ((EU) 2023/1542) sekä kansallinen lainsäädäntö kieltävät tuotteen hävittämisen talousjätteen mukana. Jos yllä olevan symbolin alapuolelle on paristoasetuksen mukaisesti painettu kemiallisen aineen tunnus, kyseinen paristo sisältää raskasmetalleja (Pb = lyijy) enemmän kuin paristoasetuksen salliman määrän.

Tuote on vietävä asianmukaiseen keräyspisteeseen, esimerkiksi kodinkoneliikkeeseen uutta vastaavaa tuotetta ostettaessa tai viralliseen sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromun tai paristojen keräyspisteeseen. Sähkö- ja elektroniikkalaiteromun virheellinen käsittely voi vahingoittaa ympäristöä ja ihmisten terveyttä, koska laitteet saattavat sisältää ympäristölle ja terveydelle haitallisia aineita. Tuotteen asianmukainen hävittäminen säästää myös luonnonvaroja.

Jos haluat lisätietoja tämän tuotteen kierrätyksestä, ota yhteys kunnan jätehuoltoviranomaisiin tai käyttämäsi jätehuolto-yhtiöön tai käy osoitteessa www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/.

Endast för Europeiska unionen och EES (Norge, Island och Liechtenstein)



De här symbolerna visar att produkten inte får sorteras och slängas som hushållsavfall enligt WEEE-direktivet (2012/19/EU), batteriförordningen ((EU) 2023/1542) och/eller nationell lagstiftning som implementerar dessa direktiv och förordningar.

Om en kemisk symbol förekommer under ovanstående symbol innebär detta enligt batteriförordningen att en tungmetall (Pb = Bly) förekommer i batteriet med en koncentration som överstiger tillämplig gräns som anges i batteriförordningen.

Produkten ska lämnas in på en avsedd insamlingsplats, t.ex. på en återvinningsstation auktoriserad att hantera elektrisk och elektronisk utrustning (EE-utrustning) samt batterier eller hos handlare som är auktoriserade att byta in varor då nya, motsvarande köps (en mot en). Olämplig hantering av avfall av den här typen kan ha negativ inverkan på miljön och människors hälsa på grund av de potentiellt farliga ämnen som kan återfinnas i elektrisk och elektronisk utrustning.

Din medverkan till en korrekt avfallshantering av produkten bidrar till effektiv användning av naturresurserna.

Om du vill ha mer information om var du kan lämna in den här produkten, kontakta ditt lokala kommunkontor, berörd myndighet eller företag för avfallshantering eller se www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/.

Pouze Evropská unie a EHP (Norsko, Island a Lichtenštejnsko)



Tento symbol znamená, že podle směrnice OEEZ (2012/19/EU), nařízení o bateriích (2023/1542) a/nebo podle vnitrostátních právních prováděcích předpisů k této směrnici a nařízení nemá být tento výrobek likvidován s odpadem z domácností.

Je-li v souladu s požadavky nařízení o bateriích vytištěna pod výše uvedeným symbolem chemická značka, udává, že tato baterie obsahuje těžké kovy (Pb = olovo) v koncentraci vyšší, než je příslušná hodnota předepsaná nařízením.

Tento výrobek má být vrácen do určeného sběrného místa, např. v rámci autorizovaného systému odběru jednoho výrobku za jeden nově prodaný podobný výrobek, nebo do autorizovaného sběrného místa pro recyklaci odpadních elektrických a elektronických zařízení (OEEZ), baterií. Nevhodné nakládání s tímto druhem odpadu by mohlo mít negativní dopad na životní prostředí a lidské zdraví, protože elektrická a elektronická zařízení zpravidla obsahují potenciálně nebezpečné látky. Vaše spolupráce na správné likvidaci tohoto výrobku napomůže efektivnímu využívání přírodních zdrojů.

Chcete-li získat podrobné informace týkající se recyklace tohoto výrobku, obraťte se prosím na místní úřad, orgán pro nakládání s odpady, schválený systém nakládání s odpady či společnost zajišťující likvidaci domovního odpadu, nebo navštivte webové stránky

www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/

Csak az Európai Unió és az EGT (Norvégia, Izland és Liechtenstein) országokban



Ezek a szimbólumok azt jelzik, hogy a termék hulladékkezelése a háztartási hulladéktól különválasztva, az elektromos és elektronikus berendezések hulladékairól (WEEE) szóló (2012/19/EU) irányelvnek és az elemekről, valamint a hulladék elemekről szóló ((EU) 2023/1542) rendeletnek megfelelően és/vagy ezen irányelveknek megfelelő helyi előírások szerint történik.

Amennyiben a fent feltüntetett szimbólum alatt egy vegyjel is szerepel, az elemekről szóló rendeletben foglaltak értelmében ez azt jelzi, hogy az elem a rendeletben meghatározott határértéknél nagyobb mennyiségben tartalmaz nehézfémeket (Pb = ólom).

E terméket az arra kijelölt gyűjtőhelyre kell juttatni – pl. hasonló termék vásárlásakor a régi becserélésére vonatkozó hivatalos program keretében, vagy az elektromos és elektronikus berendezések (EEE) hulladékainak gyűjtésére, valamint a hulladék elemek gyűjtésére kijelölt hivatalos gyűjtőhelyre. Az ilyen jellegű hulladékok nem előírásszerű kezelése az elektromos és elektronikus berendezésekhez (EEE) általánosan kapcsolható potenciálisan veszélyes anyagok révén hatással lehet a környezetre és az egészségre.

E termék megfelelő leselejtezésével Ön is hozzájárul a természeti források hatékony használatához. A termék újrahasznosítását illetően informálódjon a helyi polgármesteri hivatalnál, a helyi közterület-fenntartó vállalatnál, a hivatalos hulladéklerakó telephelyen vagy a háztartási hulladék begyűjtését végző szolgáltatónál, illetve látogasson el a

www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/ internetes oldalra.

Tylko dla krajów Unii Europejskiej oraz EOG (Norwegia, Islandia i Liechtenstein)



Te symbole oznaczają, że produktu nie należy wyrzucać razem z odpadami gospodarstwa domowego, zgodnie z Dyrektywą WEEE w sprawie zużytego sprzętu elektrycznego i elektronicznego (2012/19/UE), Rozporządzeniem Parlamentu Europejskiego i Rady 2023/1542 w sprawie baterii i/lub przepisami krajowymi wdrażającymi tę dyrektywę i rozporządzenie.

Jeśli pod powyższym symbolem znajduje się symbol chemiczny, zgodnie z Rozporządzeniem w sprawie baterii oznacza to, że bateria zawiera metal ciężki (Pb = ołów) w stężeniu przekraczającym odpowiedni poziom określony w Rozporządzeniu.

Użytkownicy baterii mają obowiązek korzystać z dostępnego programu zwrotu, recyklingu, odzysku i bezpiecznego unieszkodliwienia baterii, np. na zasadzie oddania „jeden za jeden” przy zakupie nowego, podobnego produktu.

Niewłaściwe postępowanie z tego typu odpadami może mieć wpływ na środowisko i zdrowie ludzi ze względu na substancje potencjalnie niebezpieczne, które są zazwyczaj związane ze zużytym sprzętem elektrycznym i elektronicznym.

Państwa współpraca w zakresie właściwego zagospodarowania tego produktu przyczyni się do efektywnego wykorzystania zasobów naturalnych.

W celu uzyskania informacji o sposobie recyklingu tego produktu prosimy o kontakt z właściwym urzędem miejskim lub zakładem gospodarki komunalnej bądź zapraszamy na stronę www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/.

Platí len pre štáty Európskej únie a EHP (Nórsko, Island a Lichtenštajnsko)



Tieto symboly označujú, že podľa Smernice o odpade z elektrických a elektronických zariadení (OEEZ) 2012/19/EÚ, Nariadenia Európskeho parlamentu a Rady (EÚ) 2023/1542 o batériách a odpadových batériách, a podľa platnej legislatívy Slovenskej republiky implementujúcej túto smernicu a nariadenie sa tento výrobok nesmie likvidovať spolu s komunálnym odpadom.

Ak je v súlade s požiadavkami nariadenia chemická značka vytlačená pod vyššie uvedeným symbolom, znamená to, že táto batéria obsahuje ťažké kovy (Pb = olovo) v koncentrácii vyššej, ako je príslušná povolená hodnota stanovená v nariadení.

Výrobok je potrebné odovzdať do určeného zberného miesta, napr. prostredníctvom výmeny za kúpu nového podobného výrobku, alebo na autorizované zberné miesto, ktoré recykluje odpad z elektrických a elektronických zariadení (EEZ) a batérií. Nesprávna manipulácia s takýmto typom odpadu môže mať negatívny vplyv na životné prostredie a ľudské zdravie, pretože elektrické a elektronické zariadenia obsahujú potenciálne nebezpečné látky.

Spoluprácou na správnej likvidácii tohto výrobku prispějete k účinnému využívaniu prírodných zdrojov.

Ďalšie informácie o recyklácii tohto výrobku získate od miestneho/obecného úradu, okresného úradu odboru životného prostredia, zo schváleného systému nakladania s odpadmi alebo od spoločnosti, ktorá

zabezpečuje zber a likvidáciu komunálneho odpadu. Viac informácií nájdete aj na webovej stránke: www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/.

Ainult Euroopa Liidu ja EMP (Norra, Island ja Liechtenstein) puhul.



Need sümbolid näitavad, et vastavalt elektroonikaromude direktiivile (2012/19/EL), patareide määrusele ((EL) 2023/1542) ja/või siseriiklikele õigusaktidele, millega neid direktiive ja määrusi rakendatakse, ei tohi seda toodet kõrvaldada koos olmejäätmetega.

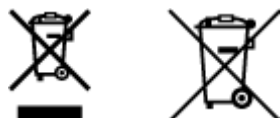
Kui ülaltoodud sümboli alla on trükitud see keemiline sümbol, tähendab see vastavalt patareieeskirjale, et selles patareis ületab raskemetalli (Pb = plii) kontsentratsioon patareieeskirjas sätestatud kohaldatavat piirmäära.

See toode tuleb anda selleks ettenähtud kogumispunkti, nt üks ühele põhimõttel uue sarnase toote ostmisel või elektri- ja elektroonikaseadmete ning patareide ringlussevõtuks volitatud kogumispunkti. Seda tüüpi jäätmete ebaõige käitlemine võib potentsiaalselt ohtlike ainete tõttu, mis on üldiselt seotud elektri- ja elektroonikaseadmetega, mõjutada keskkonda ja inimeste tervist. Teie koostöö selle toote õigel kõrvaldamisel aitab kaasa loodusvarade tõhusale kasutamisele.

Lisateavet selle toote ringlussevõtu kohta saate oma kohalikult omavalitsuselt, jäätmekäitlusasutuselt, heakskiidetud süsteemilt või oma kodumajapidamisele jäätmekäitlusteenuse osutajalt või külastades veebilehte

www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/.

Attiecas tikai uz Eiropas Savienību un EEZ (Norvēģija, Islande un Lihtenšteina)



Šie simboli norāda, ka saskaņā ar EEIA direktīvu (2012/19/ES), Bateriju regulu ((ES) 2023/1542) un/vai valsts tiesību aktiem, ar kuriem īsteno šo direktīvu un regulu, šo izstrādājumu nedrīkst izmest kopā ar sadzīves atkritumiem.

Ja zem iepriekš norādītā simbola ir uzdrukāts ķīmiskais simbols saskaņā ar Bateriju regulu, tas norāda, ka šajā baterijā ir smags metāls (Pb = svins), kura koncentrācija pārsniedz piemērojamo robežvērtību, kas noteikta Bateriju regulā.

Šis izstrādājums ir jānodod noteiktā savākšanas vietā, piemēram, saskaņā ar apstiprinātu principu "viens par vienu", kad iegādājaties jaunu līdzīgu izstrādājumu, vai autorizētā elektrisko un elektronisko iekārtu (EEI) un bateriju atkritumu savākšanas vietā. Nepareiza rīcība ar šāda veida atkritumiem var ietekmēt vidi un cilvēku veselību, jo EEI parasti ir saistītas ar potenciāli bīstamām vielām. Jūsu sadarbība, pareizi utilizējot šo produktu, veicinās efektīvu dabas resursu izmantošanu.

Lai iegūtu vairāk informācijas par šī izstrādājuma pārstrādi, sazinieties ar vietējo pilsētas pārvaldi, atkritumu apsaimniekošanas iestādi, apstiprinātu shēmu vai sadzīves atkritumu apglabāšanas dienestu, vai apmeklējiet tīmekļa vietni:

www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/.

Tik Europos Sąjungoje ir EEE (Norvegijoje, Islandijoje ir Lichtenšteine)



Šie simboliai rodo, kad šio gaminio negalima išmesti kartu su buitinėmis atliekomis pagal EEJ atliekų direktyvą (2012/19/ES), baterijų reglamentą ((ES) 2023/1542) ir (arba) nacionalinius teisės aktus, kuriais įgyvendinama ši direktyva ir reglamentas.

Jei po pirmiau nurodytu simboliu išspausdintas cheminis simbolis pagal baterijų reglamentą, tai reiškia, kad šioje baterijoje yra sunkiųjų metalų (Pb = švino), kurių koncentracija viršija taikomą ribinę vertę, nurodytą baterijų reglamente.

Šį gaminį reikia atiduoti į paskirtą surinkimo punktą, pvz., vadovaujantis principu „vienas už vieną“, kai perkate naują panašų gaminį, arba į įgaliotą elektros ir elektroninės įrangos (EEJ) ir baterijų atliekų surinkimo vietą. Netinkamas šios rūšies atliekų tvarkymas gali turėti įtakos aplinkai ir žmonių sveikatai dėl potencialiai pavojingų medžiagų, kurios paprastai būna susijusios su EEJ. Bendradarbiaudami ir teisingai utilizuodami šį gaminį prisidėsite prie efektyvaus gamtos išteklių naudojimo.

Norėdami gauti daugiau informacijos apie šio gaminio perdirbimą, kreipkitės į vietinę miesto įstaigą, atliekų tvarkymo instituciją, patvirtintą programą ar buitinių atliekų šalinimo tarnybą arba apsilankykite adresu

www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/.

Samo za Evropsko unijo in EGP (Norveška, Islandija in Lihtenštajn)



Ti simboli pomenijo, da tega izdelka skladno z Direktivo OEEO (2012/19/EU), uredba (EU) 2023/1542 in/ali nacionalno zakonodajo, ki uvaža Direktivo in Uredbo, ne smete odlagati z nesortiranimi gospodinjskimi odpadki.

Če je pod zgoraj prikazanim simbolom natisnjen kemijski simbol, to v skladu z Uredbo pomeni, da je v tej bateriji prisotna težka kovina (Pb = svinec), in sicer v koncentraciji, ki je nad relevantno mejno vrednostjo, določeno v Uredbi.

Ta izdelek je potrebno odnesti na izbrano zbirno mesto, t. j. pooblaščeną trgovino, kjer ob nakupu novega (podobnega) izdelka vrnete starega, ali na pooblaščeną zbirno mesto za ponovno uporabo odpadne električne in elektronske opreme (EEO) ter baterij. Neustrezno ravnanje s to vrsto odpadkov lahko negativno vpliva na okolje in človeško zdravje zaradi potencialno nevarnih snovi, ki so pogosto povezane z EEO.

Vaše sodelovanje pri pravilnem odlaganju tega izdelka predstavlja pomemben prispevek k smotrni izrabi naravnih virov.

Za več informacij o ponovni uporabi tega izdelka se obrnite na lokalni mestni urad, pristojno službo za odpadke, predstavnika pooblaščenega programa za obdelavo odpadkov ali na lokalno komunalno. Lahko pa tudi obiščete našo spletno stran

www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/.

Само за Европейския съюз и ЕИП (Норвегия, Исландия и Лихтенщайн)



Тези символи показват, че този продукт не трябва да се изхвърля заедно с битовите отпадъци съгласно Директивата за ИУЕЕО (2012/19/ЕС), Регламент за батериите ((ЕС) 2023/1542) и/или Вашето национално законодателство, прилагащо тези Директиви.

Ако под показания горе символ е отпечатан символ за химически елемент, съгласно разпоредбите на Регламент за батерии, този втори символ означава наличието на тежък метал (Pb = олово) в батерията в концентрация над указаната граница за съответния елемент в Регламент.

Този продукт трябва да бъде предаден в предназначен за целта пункт за събиране, например на база размяна, когато купувате нов подобен продукт, или в одобрен събирателен пункт за рециклиране на излязло от употреба електрическо и електронно оборудване (ИУЕЕО), батерии. Неправилното третиране на този тип отпадъци може да доведе до евентуални отрицателни последици за околната среда и човешкото здраве поради потенциално опасните вещества, които обикновено са свързани с ЕЕО.

В същото време Вашето съдействие за правилното изхвърляне на този продукт ще допринесе за ефективното използване на природните ресурси.

За повече информация относно това къде можете да предадете за рециклиране този продукт, моля свържете се с местните власти, с органа, отговорен за отпадъците, с одобрената система за ИУЕЕО, с Вашата местна служба за битови отпадъци или посетете.

www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/

Doar pentru Uniunea Europeană și EEA (Norvegia, Islanda și Liechtenstein)



Ацесте символури индикă faptul că ацест produs nu trebuie aruncat împreună cu deșeurile menajere, în conformitate cu Directiva DEEE (2012/19/UE), Regulamentul ((UE) 2023/1542) și/sau legile dvs. naționale ce implementează ацastă Directivă și Regulament.

Dacă un simbol chimic este imprimat sub simbolul de mai sus, în conformitate cu Regulamentul referitor la baterii, ацест simbol индикă prezența în baterie a unui metal greu (Pb = Plumb) într-o concentrație mai mare decât pragul admis specificat în Regulamentul referitor la baterii.

Ацест produs trebuie înmănat punctului de colectare адеcvat, ex: printr-un schimb аutorizat unu la unu аtunci când cumpărați un produs nou similar sau la un loc de colectare аutorizat pentru reciclarea reziduurilor de echipament electric și electronic (EEE) și baterii. Administrarea neадеcvată a ацestui tip de deșeuri, аr putea avea un impact аsupra mediului și аsupra sănătății umane datorită substanțelor cu potențial de risc care sunt în general аsociate cu EEE.

Cooperarea dvs. în direcția reciclării corecte a ацestui produs va contribui la o utilizare еficientă a resurselor naturale.

Pentru mai multe informații despre reciclarea ацestui produs, vă rugăm să contactați biroul dvs. local, аutoritățile responsabile cu deșeurile, schema аprobată sau serviciul dvs. responsabil cu deșeurile

menajere sau vizitați-ne la.

www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/.

Samo za Europsku uniju i EEA (Norveška, Island i Lihtenštajn)



Oznaka pokazuje da se ovaj proizvod ne smije odlagati s komunalnim i ostalim vrstama otpada, u skladu s direktivom WEEE (2012/19/EC), Uredbom o baterijama ((EU) 2023/1542) i/ili nacionalnim zakonodavstvom koje provodi te Direktive i Uredbe.

Ako je ispod prethodno prikazane oznake otisnut kemijski simbol, u skladu s Uredbom o baterijama, to znači da se u ovoj bateriji nalazi teški metal (Pb = olovo) i da je njegova koncentracija iznad razine propisane u Uredbi o baterijama.

Ovaj bi proizvod trebalo predati ovlaštenom skupljaču EE otpada ili prodavatelju koji je dužan preuzeti otpadni proizvod po sistemu jedan za jedan, ako isti odgovara vrsti te je obavljao primarne funkcije kao i isporučena EE oprema. Otpadne baterije predaju se ovlaštenom skupljaču otpadnih baterija ili prodavatelju bez naknade i obveze kupnje za krajnjeg korisnika. Neodgovarajuće rukovanje ovom vrstom otpada može utjecati na okoliš i ljudsko zdravlje zbog potencijalno opasnih supstanci koje se najčešće nalaze na takvim mjestima.

Vaša suradnja u pravilnom zbrinjavanju ovog proizvoda pridonijet će djelotvornom iskorištavanju prirodnih resursa. Dodatne informacije o recikliranju ovog proizvoda zatražite od svog lokalnog gradskog ureda, službe za zbrinjavanje otpada, odobrenog programa ili komunalne službe za uklanjanje otpada ili pak na stranicama

www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/

Handling Precautions

- [When Repairing, Lending, or Disposing of the Printer](#)
- [Legal Restrictions on Printing](#)
- [Ink Tips](#)

When Repairing, Lending, or Disposing of the Printer

If you have entered personal data, passwords and/or other security settings on the printer, such information may be stored in the printer.

To keep your personal information safe, please be sure to reset all printer settings when sending the printer for repair, lending or transferring the printer to another person, or disposing of the printer.

➡ [Reset settings](#)

Legal Restrictions on Printing

Printing or modifying printed copies of the following may be punishable under law.

This list is non-exhaustive. When in doubt, check with a local legal representative.

- Paper money
- Money orders
- Certificates of deposit
- Postage stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Identification badges or insignia
- Selective service or draft papers
- Checks or drafts issued by governmental agencies
- Motor vehicle licenses and certificates of title
- Traveler's checks
- Food stamps
- Passports
- Immigration papers
- Internal revenue stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Bonds or other certificates of indebtedness
- Stock certificates
- Copyrighted works or works of art, without the owner's consent

Ink Tips

Ink is used for various purposes other than printing.

Ink may be used for purposes other than printing.

When you use the Canon printer for the first time after you install the bundled ink tanks, the printer consumes a small amount of ink in the amount to enable printing by filling the nozzles of the Print Head with ink. For this reason, the number of sheets that can be printed with the first ink tanks is fewer than the succeeding ink tanks.

The printing costs described in the brochures or websites are based on the consumption data from not the first ink tank /ink cartridge but the succeeding ink tank /ink cartridge.

Ink is sometimes used to maintain the optimal printing quality.

To keep printer's performance, Canon printer performs cleaning automatically according to its condition. When the printer performs cleaning, a small amount of ink is consumed. In this case, all colors of ink may be consumed.

[Cleaning function]

The cleaning function helps the printer to suck air bubbles or ink itself from the nozzle and thus prevents print quality degradation or nozzle clogging.

▶▶▶ Note

- Ink is consumed for print preparation operation that is periodically and automatically performed to keep printer's performance and for print head cleaning. Therefore, unused ink for printing may also be consumed.

Black-and-white printing uses color ink.

Black-and-white printing may use ink other than black ink depending on the type of printing paper or the settings of the printer driver. So, color ink is consumed even when printing in black-and-white.

Specifications

➤ Specifications

➤ Print Area

- Printing Area
- Standard Sizes
- Sizes for 0.98 inch (25 mm) Margin Paper
- Envelopes
- Printable Discs

Specifications

General Specifications

Interface	USB Port: Hi-Speed USB * Network Port: Wired LAN: 100BASE-TX / 10BASE-T Wi-Fi: IEEE802.11n / IEEE802.11g / IEEE802.11b / IEEE802.11a / IEEE802.11ac * A computer that complies with Hi-Speed USB standard is required. Since the Hi-Speed USB interface is fully upwardly compatible with USB 1.1, it can be used at USB 1.1. USB and the network can be used at the same time. Wi-Fi and wired LAN cannot be used at the same time.
Operating environment	Temperature: 41 to 95 °F (5 to 35 °C) Humidity: 10 to 90 % RH (no condensation) * The performance of the printer may be reduced under certain temperature and humidity conditions. Recommended conditions: Temperature: 59 to 86 °F (15 to 30 °C) Humidity: 10 to 80 % RH (no condensation) * For the temperature and humidity conditions of papers such as photo paper, refer to the paper's packaging or the supplied instructions.
Storage environment	Temperature: 32 to 104 °F (0 to 40 °C) Humidity: 5 to 95 % RH (no condensation)
Power supply	AC 100-240 V, 50/60 Hz (The supplied power cord is only for the country or region you purchased.)
Power consumption	Printing: Approx. 17 W *1 Standby (minimum): Approx. 1.1 W *1*2 Standby (all ports connected): Approx. 2.3 W OFF: Approx. 0.05 W *1 USB connection to a PC *2 The wait time for standby cannot be changed.
External dimensions (W x D x H)	Approx. 25.2 x 15 x 7.9 in. (Approx. 639 x 379 x 200 mm) * With the trays retracted.
Weight	Approx. 31.0 lb (Approx. 14.1 kg)

* With the Print Head and ink tanks installed.

Network Specifications

Communication protocol	SNMP, HTTP, TCP/IP (IPv4/IPv6)
Wired LAN	Supported Standards: IEEE802.3u (100BASE-TX) / IEEE802.3 (10BASE-T) Transfer speed: 10 Mbps/100 Mbps (auto switching) Security: IEEE802.1X (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP)
Wi-Fi	Supported Standards: IEEE802.11n / IEEE802.11g / IEEE802.11b / IEEE802.11a / IEEE802.11ac Frequency bandwidth: 2.4 GHz / 5 GHz * Channel: 2.4 GHz: 1-11 or 1-13 * 5 GHz: W52, W53, W56, W58 * * Frequency bandwidth and available channels differ depending on country or region. Communication distance: Indoors 164 feet/50 m * Effective range varies depending on the installation environment and location. Security: WPA-PSK (AES) WPA2-PSK (AES) WPA3-SAE (AES) WPA-EAP (AES) * WPA2-EAP (AES) * WPA3-EAP (AES) * * Compatible with IEEE802.1X (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP) Setup: WPS (Push button configuration/PIN code method) Easy wireless connect

Minimum System Requirements

Conform to the operating system's requirements when higher than those given here.

Windows

Operating System	Windows 11, Windows 10, Windows 8.1, Windows 7 SP1 Note: Operation can only be guaranteed on a PC with pre-installed operating system. Installation of .NET Framework is required. Printer driver and IJ Printer Assistant Tool support the following OS:

	Windows Server 2008 R2 SP1, Windows Server 2012 R2, Windows Server 2016, Windows Server 2019 and Windows Server 2022
Amount of hard disk space required for installing the driver	1.5 GB or more The necessary amount of hard disk space may be changed without notice.

macOS

Operating System	macOS Big Sur 11.7.10 - macOS Sonoma 14
Amount of hard disk space required for installing the driver	1.5 GB or more The necessary amount of hard disk space may be changed without notice.

Other Supported OS

iOS/iPadOS, Android, Chrome OS Some functions may not be available with the supported OS. Refer to the Canon web site for details.

Information in this manual is subject to change without notice.

Print Area

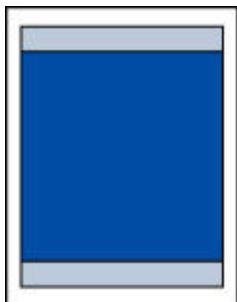
- **Printing Area**
- **Standard Sizes**
- **Sizes for 0.98 inch (25 mm) Margin Paper**
- **Envelopes**
- **Printable Discs**

Printing Area

To maintain print quality, the printer leaves a margin around the edges of paper. The printable area is inside this margin.

 (recommended print area): Print within this area, when possible.

 (printable area): You can also print in this area. However, feeding precision or print quality may be affected.



»» Note

- By selecting Borderless Printing option, you can make prints with no margins.
- When performing Borderless Printing, slight cropping may occur at the edges since the printed image is enlarged to fill the whole page.
- When performing Borderless Printing, select **Magnification level for borderless** in **Print settings** of **Printer settings** to specify the amount of images that extends off the paper.

➡ [Print settings](#)

- For Borderless Printing, use the following paper:
 - **Photo Paper Pro Platinum** <PT-101>
 - **Glossy Photo Paper "Everyday Use"** <GP-501>
 - **Photo Paper Glossy** <GP-701>
 - **Photo Paper Plus Glossy II** <PP-201/PP-208/PP-301>
 - **Photo Paper Pro Luster** <LU-101>
 - **Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss** <SG-201>
 - **Matte Photo Paper** <MP-101>^{*1}
 - **Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte** <PM-101>^{*1}
 - **Premium Fine Art Rough** <FA-RG1>^{*1}
 - **Double sided Matte Paper** <MP-101D>
 - Greeting Card
 - Card Stock

*1 Borderless Printing is disabled depending on print settings. To enable Borderless Printing, remove margin restrictions.

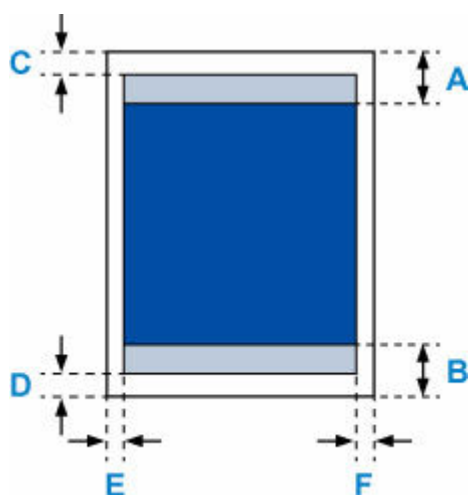
➡ [Print Options dialog box](#) (Windows)

➡ [Advanced Paper Settings](#) (macOS)

Performing Borderless Printing on any other type of paper may substantially reduce printing quality and/or result in printouts with altered color hues.

- Borderless Printing is not available for A5, B5, B4, or Legal size paper, plain paper, envelopes or T-Shirt Transfers.
- Depending on the type of paper, Borderless Printing may reduce the print quality at the top and bottom edges of the paper or cause these parts to become smudged.

Standard Sizes



■ Recommended print area

A: 1.34 in. (34.0 mm)

B: 1.46 in. (37.0 mm)

■ Printable area

Letter, Legal

C: 0.12 in. (3.0 mm)

D: 0.20 in. (5.0 mm)

E: 0.25 in. (6.4 mm)

F: 0.25 in. (6.3 mm)

Square 5" x 5" 13 x 13 cm

C: 0.24 in. (6.0 mm)

D: 0.24 in. (6.0 mm)

E: 0.24 in. (6.0 mm)

F: 0.24 in. (6.0 mm)

Other than Letter, Legal or Square 5" x 5" 13 x 13 cm

C: 0.12 in. (3.0 mm)

D: 0.20 in. (5.0 mm)

E: 0.13 in. (3.4 mm)

F: 0.13 in. (3.4 mm)

Sizes for 0.98 inch (25 mm) Margin Paper

When art paper with 0.98 in. (25 mm) margins is selected, the printer is restricted from printing in the top and bottom 0.98 in. (25 mm) of the paper. We therefore recommend checking the printing area in the preview screen before printing.

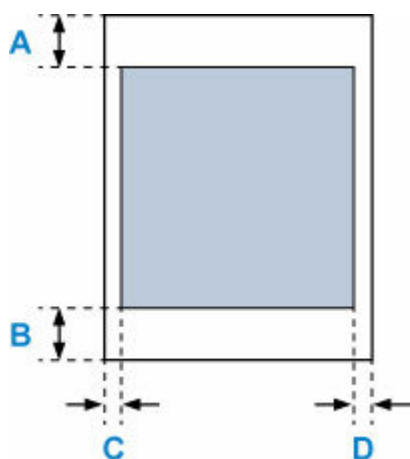
If the print head is rubbing against the top and bottom edges of the paper, causing smudging, you can avoid this by using 0.98 in. (25 mm) margin paper.

When you are using the following paper, the printer prints to paper sizes with 0.98 in. (25 mm) margins depending on print settings. To print to other page sizes, remove restrictions on margins.

- **Matte Photo Paper** <MP-101>
- **Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte** <PM-101>
- **Premium Fine Art Rough** <FA-RG1>

➡ [Print Options dialog box](#) (Windows)

➡ [Advanced Paper Settings](#) (macOS)



 Printable area

Letter

A: 0.98 in. (25.0 mm)

B: 0.98 in. (25.0 mm)

C: 0.25 in. (6.4 mm)

D: 0.25 in. (6.3 mm)

Other than Letter

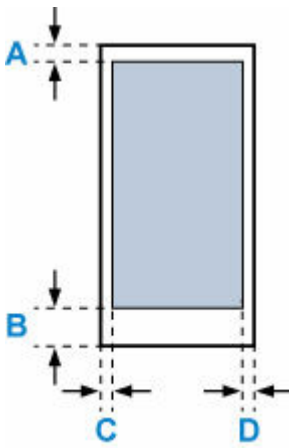
A: 0.98 in. (25.0 mm)

B: 0.98 in. (25.0 mm)

C: 0.13 in. (3.4 mm)

D: 0.13 in. (3.4 mm)

Envelopes



 Printable area

A: 0.32 in. (8.0 mm)

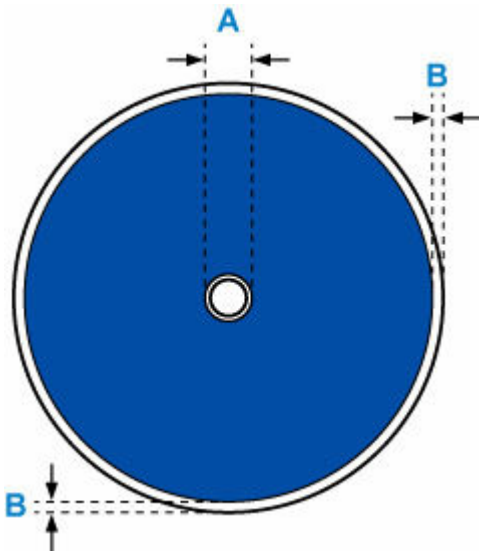
B: 0.50 in. (12.7 mm)

C: 0.23 in. (5.6 mm)

D: 0.23 in. (5.6 mm)

Printable Discs

The printing area of the printable disc is from 0.67 in. (17 mm) of the internal diameter to 0.04 in. (1 mm) from the external diameter of the printing surface.



 Recommended print area

A: 0.67 in. (17.0 mm)

B: 0.04 in. (1.0 mm)

Printing

➤ **Printing from Your Computer (Windows)**

- Basic Printing Setup 📄 **Basics**
- Main Controls (Basic Settings Tab)
- Set Media Type, Quality, etc. (Media/Quality Tab)
- Set the Layout of Printed Documents (Page Setup Tab)
- See more...

➤ **Printing from Your Computer (macOS)**

- Basic Printing Setup 📄 **Basics**
- Various Printing Methods
- Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data
- See more...

➤ **Printing from Chromebook**

➤ **Printing from Printer**

- Printing Templates Such as Lined or Graph Paper

➤ **Printing from Smartphone/Tablet**

- Print Easily from a Smartphone or Tablet with Canon PRINT
- Printing from iOS Device (AirPrint)
- About Mopria®
- Printing with Canon Print Service

➤ **Using Cloud Service**

Printing from Your Computer (Windows)

- **Basic Printing Setup** 📌 **Basic**
- **Main Controls (Basic Settings Tab)**
- **Set Media Type, Quality, etc. (Media/Quality Tab)**
- **Set the Layout of Printed Documents (Page Setup Tab)**
- **Overview of the Printer Driver**
- **Updating the Driver**

Basic Printing Setup

In the [Basic Settings tab](#), you can print in various ways according to your purpose.

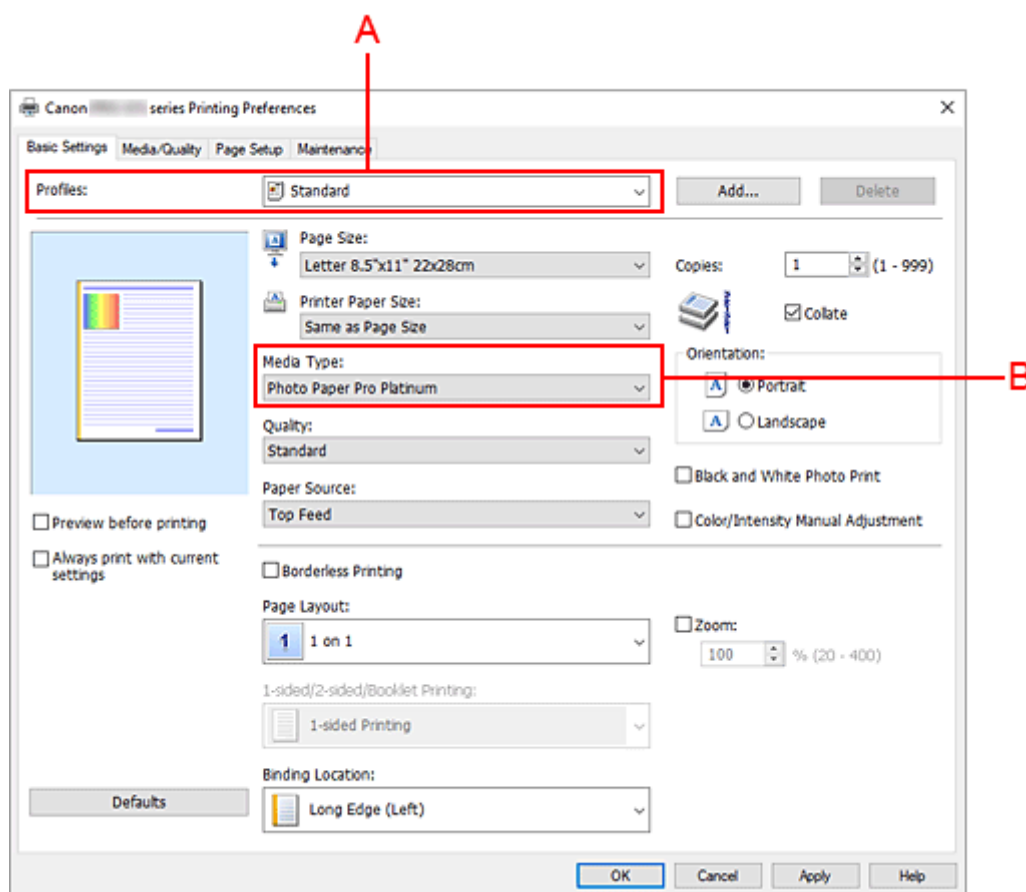
1. [Check that printer is turned on](#)
2. Open [printer driver's setup screen](#)
3. Select Profile (A)

Select the print settings according to your purpose in **Profiles** on the **Basic Settings** tab.

If you select a print setting, **Paper Size** and **Media Type** will change automatically.

►►► Note

- When the paper size to be printed is selected from **Printer Paper Size**, the zoom level is automatically set according to the selected paper size.
To select a zoom level of your choice, add a checkmark to **Zoom** and enter a number.



4. Select Media Type (B) According to Requirements
5. [Set Paper](#)
6. Click **OK**

Note

- For details about the paper information to be registered to the printer driver and on the printer, see the following:
 - [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Media Type\)](#)
 - [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Paper Size\)](#)

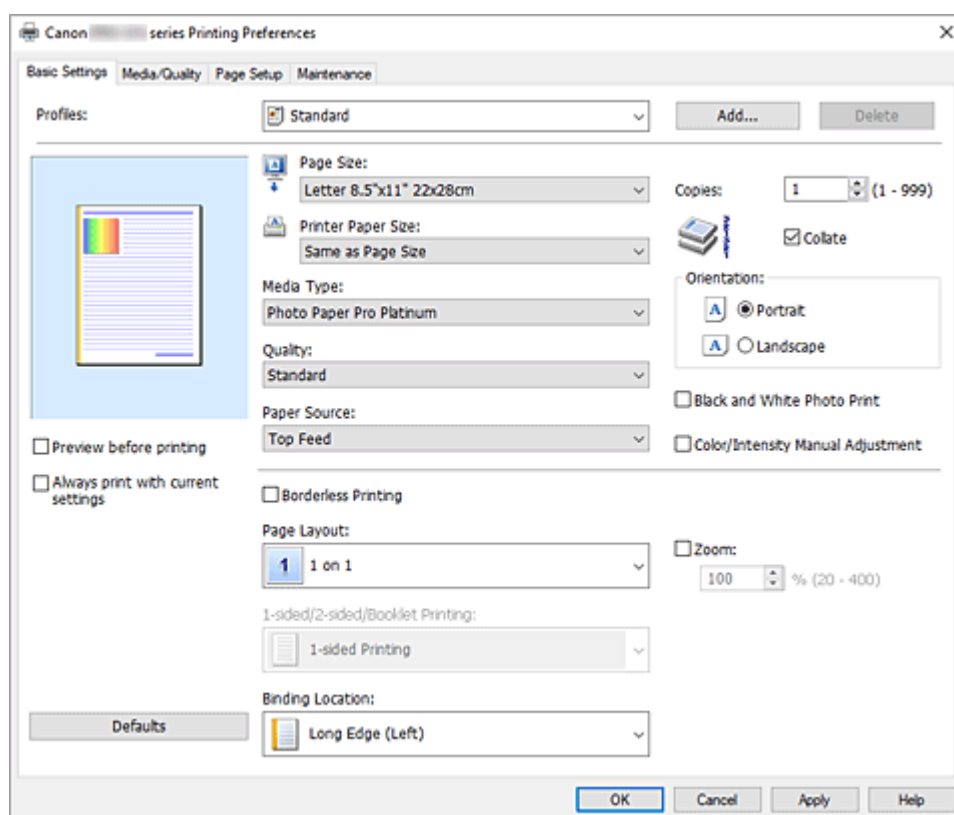
Main Controls (Basic Settings Tab)

- **Basic Settings Tab Description**
- **Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Media Type)**
- **Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Paper Size)**
- **Registering a Frequently Used Printing Profile**
- **Preventing Printing Errors**

Basic Settings Tab Description

The **Basic Settings** tab is for registering commonly used print settings. When you select a registered setting, the printer automatically switches to the preset items.

- [Profiles](#)
- [Settings Preview](#)
- [Preview before printing](#)
- [Always print with current settings](#)
- [Page Size](#)
- [Printer Paper Size](#)
- [Media Type](#)
- [Quality](#)
- [Paper Source](#)
- [Copies](#)
- [Collate](#)
- [Orientation](#)
- [Grayscale Printing](#)
- [Borderless Printing](#)
- [Page Layout](#)
- [Zoom](#)
- [1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing](#)
- [Binding Location](#)



Profiles

The names and icons of frequently used printing profiles are registered. When you select a printing profile according to the purpose of the document, settings that match the purpose are applied.

You can also change a printing profile and register it under a new name. You can delete the registered printing profile.

Standard

These are the factory settings.

If **Page Size**, **Orientation**, and **Copies** were set from the application software, those settings have priority.

Photo Printing

If you select this setting when printing a photo, the photo paper and photo size generally used are set. The **Borderless Printing** check box is checked automatically.

If **Orientation** and **Copies** were set from the application software, those settings have priority.

Paper Saving

Select this setting to save paper when printing a general document. **Page Layout** is set to **2 on 1**, and **1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing** is set to **2-sided Printing (Manual)**.

If **Page Size**, **Orientation**, and **Copies** were set from the application software, those settings have priority.

Envelope

If you select this setting for printing an envelope, **Media Type** is set automatically to **Envelope**. In the **Envelope Size Setting** dialog box, select the size of the envelope to be used.

Greeting Card

When selected for printing a greeting card, the **Media Type** is automatically set to **Inkjet Greeting Card**. The **Quality** is also set to **High**, and a check-mark is added to **Borderless Printing**.

▶▶▶ Note

- You cannot change the order of print settings.

Add...

Displays the [Add to Profiles dialog box](#).

Click this button when you want to save the information that you set on the **Basic Settings**, **Media/Quality**, and **Page Setup** tabs to **Profiles**.

Delete

Deletes a registered printing profile.

Select the name of the setting to be deleted from **Profiles**, and click **Delete**. When a confirmation message is displayed, click **OK** to delete the specified printing profile.

▶▶▶ Note

- Printing profiles that are registered in the initial settings cannot be deleted.

Settings Preview

The paper illustration shows how the original will be laid out on a sheet of paper.

You can check an overall image of the layout.

Preview before printing

Shows what the print result will look like before you actually print the data.

Check this check box to display a preview before printing.

Uncheck this check box if you do not want to display a preview.

Always print with current settings

Prints documents with the current settings starting from the next print execution.

When you select this function and then close the [printer driver setup window](#), the information that you set on the **Basic Settings**, **Media/Quality**, and **Page Setup** tabs are saved and printing with the same settings is possible starting from the next print execution.

»»» Important

- If you log on with a different user name, the settings that were set when this function was enabled are not reflected in the print settings.
- If a setting was specified on the application software, it has priority.

Page Size

Selects a page size.

Ensure that you select the same page size as you selected within the application.

If you select **Custom...**, the [Custom Paper Size dialog box](#) opens and allows you to specify any vertical and horizontal dimensions for the paper size.

Printer Paper Size

Selects the size of paper actually loaded into the printer.

Normally, it will appear as **Same as Page Size**, and the document is printed with no scaling.

If you select a paper size that is smaller than the **Page Size**, the document size will be reduced. If you select a paper size that is larger, the document size will be enlarged.

Also if you select **Custom...**, the [Custom Paper Size dialog box](#) opens and allows you to specify any vertical and horizontal dimensions for the paper size.

Media Type

Selects a type of printing paper.

Select a media type that matches the paper that is loaded in the printer. This ensures that printing is carried out properly for the specified paper.

Quality

Selects your desired printing quality.

Select one of the following to set the print quality level that is appropriate for the purpose.

To set the print quality level individually, click the **Media/Quality** tab, and for **Quality**, select **Custom**. The **Set...** becomes enabled. Click **Set...** to open the [Custom dialog box](#), and then specify the desired settings.

High

Gives priority to print quality over printing speed.

Standard

Prints with average speed and quality.

Fast

Gives priority to printing speed over print quality.

Paper Source

Shows the source from which paper is supplied.

You may be able to switch the paper source with the printer driver.

Manual Feed

Paper is supplied from the manual feed tray in the back.

Top Feed

Paper is always supplied from the top feed.

»»» Important

- Depending on the media type and size, the **Paper Source** settings that can be selected may differ.

Copies

Specifies the number of copies you want to print. You can specify a value from 1 to 999.

»»» Important

- When the application software that you used to create the document has the same function, specify the settings on the printer driver. However, if the print results are not acceptable, specify the function settings on the application software.

Collate

Check this check box to group together the pages of each copy when you want to print multiple copies. Uncheck this check box when you want to print with all pages of the same page number grouped together.

»»» Important

- When the application software that you used to create the document has the same function, give priority to the printer driver settings. However, if the print results are not acceptable, specify the function settings on the application software. When you specify the number of copies and the printing order with both the application and this printer driver, the number of copies may be multiplied numbers of the two settings or the specified printing order may not be enabled.

Orientation

Selects the printing orientation.

If the application used to create your document has a similar function, select the same orientation that you selected in that application.

Portrait

Prints the document so that its top and bottom positions are unchanged relative to the paper feed direction. This is the default setting.

Landscape

Prints the document by rotating it 90 degrees relative to the paper feed direction.

You can change the rotation direction by going to the [Maintenance tab](#), opening the **Custom Settings** dialog box, and then using **Rotate 90 degrees left when orientation is [Landscape]** check box.

To rotate the document 90 degrees to the left when printing, select the **Rotate 90 degrees left when orientation is [Landscape]** check box.

Black and White Photo Print

This function converts the data to monochrome data when printing your document.

Color/Intensity Manual Adjustment

Select this setting if you want to select the **Color Correction** method, or if you want to individually set **Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Tone, Brightness**, or **Contrast**.

Borderless Printing

Performs borderless printing without any margins on the paper.

With the borderless printing function, the document to be printed is enlarged, so that it extends slightly off the paper. In other words, the document is printed without any margin.

To adjust the amount that the document extends beyond the paper, click the **Page Setup** tab, add a checkmark to **Borderless Printing**, and enter the value in **Amount of Extension**.

Page Layout

Selects the size of the document you want to print and the type of printing.

1 on 1 to 16 on 1

Multiple pages of document can be printed on one sheet of paper.

To change the page order, click **Preferences....** In the [Page Layout Printing dialog box](#) that appears, specify **Page Order**.

Poster (1 x 2) to Poster (4 x 4)

This function enables you to enlarge the image data and divide the enlarged data into several pages to be printed. You can also glue together these sheets of paper to create large printed matter, such as a poster.

Preferences...

Opens the [Poster Printing dialog box](#).

Click this button to set details on poster printing.

Zoom

Specifies an enlargement or reduction ratio for the document you want to print.

1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing

1-sided Printing

Select when performing single-sided printing.

2-sided Printing (Manual)

Select when performing duplex printing.

Booklet Printing (Manual)

The booklet printing function allows you to print data for a booklet. Data is printed on both sides of the paper. This type of printing ensures that pages can be collated properly, in page number order, when the printed sheets are folded and stapled at the center.

Preferences...

Opens the [Booklet Printing dialog box](#).

Click this button to set details on booklet printing.

Binding Location

Selects the stapling margin position. The printer analyzes the **Orientation** and **Page Layout** settings, and automatically selects the best stapling margin position. Check **Binding Location**, and select from the list to change it.

To specify the width of the binding margin, set it from the **Page Setup** tab.

Defaults

Restores all the settings you have changed to their default values.

Click this button to return all settings on the **Basic Settings**, **Media/Quality**, and **Page Setup** tabs to their default values (factory settings).

Add to Profiles dialog box

This dialog box allows you to save the information that you set on the **Basic Settings**, **Media/Quality**, and **Page Setup** tabs and add the information to the **Profiles** list on the **Basic Settings** tab.

Name

Enter the name for the printing profile you wish to save.

Up to 255 characters can be entered.

The name appears, with its associated icon, in the **Profiles** list on the **Basic Settings** tab.

Options...

Opens the [Add to Profiles dialog box](#).

Changes the details of printing profile to be saved.

Add to Profiles dialog box

Select the icons of the printing profiles to be registered to **Profiles**, and change the items to be saved in the printing profiles.

Icon

Select the icon for the printing profile you wish to save.

The selected icon appears, with its name, in the **Profiles** list on the **Basic Settings** tab.

Save the paper size setting

Saves the paper size to the printing profile in **Profiles**.

To apply the saved paper size when the printing profile is selected, check this check box.

If this check box is unchecked, the paper size is not saved, and consequently the paper size setting is not applied when the printing profile is selected. Instead the printer prints with the paper size specified with the application software.

Save the orientation setting

Saves the **Orientation** to the printing profile in **Profiles**.

To apply the saved print orientation when the printing profile is selected, check this check box.

If this check box is unchecked, the print orientation is not saved, and consequently the **Orientation** setting is not applied when the printing profile is selected. Instead the printer prints with the print orientation specified with the application software.

Save the copies setting

Saves the **Copies** setting to the printing profile in **Profiles**.

To apply the saved copies setting when the printing profile is selected, check this check box.

If this check box is unchecked, the copies setting is not saved, and consequently the **Copies** setting is not applied when the printing profile is selected. Instead the printer prints with the copies setting specified with the application software.

Custom Paper Size dialog box

This dialog box allows you to specify the size (width and height) of the custom paper.

Units

Select the unit for entering a user-defined paper size.

Paper Size

Specifies the **Width** and the **Height** of the custom paper. Measurement is shown according to the units specified in **Units**.

Page Layout Printing dialog box

This dialog box allows you to select the number of document pages to be placed on one sheet of paper, the page order, and whether a page border line is to be printed around each document page. The settings specified in this dialog box can be confirmed in the settings preview on the printer driver.

Page Order

Specifies the document orientation to be printed on a sheet of paper.

Page Border

Prints a page border line around each document page. Check this check box to print the page border line.

Exclude single page documents from Page Layout Printing

If you add a checkmark, single-page documents are printed on a single sheet without performing Page Layout Printing.

Poster Printing dialog box

This dialog box allows you to select the size of the image to be printed. You can also make settings for cut lines and paste markers which are convenient for pasting together the pages into a poster. The settings specified in this dialog box can be confirmed in the settings preview on the printer driver.

Print "Cut/Paste" in margins

Specifies whether to print the words "Cut" and "Paste" in the margins. These words serve as guidelines for pasting together the pages into a poster. Check this check box to print the words.

▶▶▶ Note

- Depending on the environment of the printer driver you are using, this function may not be available.

Print "Cut/Paste" lines in margins

Specifies whether to print cut lines that serve as guidelines for pasting together the pages into a poster. Check this check box to print the cut lines.

Print page range

Specifies the printing range. Select **All** under normal circumstances.
Select **Pages** to specify a specific page or range.

▶▶▶ Note

- If some of the pages have not been printed well, specify the pages that do not need to be printed by clicking them in the settings preview of the **Page Setup** tab. Only the pages shown on the screen will be printed this time.

Booklet Printing dialog box

This dialog box allows you to set how to bind the document as a booklet. Printing only on one side and printing a page border, can also be set in this dialog box.

The settings specified in this dialog box can be confirmed in the settings preview on the printer driver.

Preview Icon

Shows the settings made on the **Booklet Printing** dialog box.

You can check what the document will look like when printed as a booklet.

Margin for stapling

Specifies which side of the booklet is to be stapled.

Insert blank page

Selects whether to print the document on one side or both sides of the booklet.

Check this check box to print the document on one side of the booklet and select the side to be left blank from the list.

Margin

Specifies the width of the stapling margin.

The specified width becomes the stapling margin from the center of the sheet.

Page Border

Prints a page border line around each document page.

Check this check box to print the page border line.

Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Media Type)

When you use this printer, selecting a media type and [paper size](#) that matches the print purpose will help you achieve the best print results.

Depending on the media type you are using, specify the media type settings on the printer driver or the printer's operation panel as described below.

Canon genuine papers (Document Printing)

Media name <Model No.>	Media Type in the printer driver	Paper information registered on the printer
Canon Red Label Superior <WOP111>	Plain Paper	Plain paper
Canon Océ Office Colour Paper <SAT213>	Plain Paper	Plain paper
High Resolution Paper <HR-101N>	High Resolution Paper	High-Res Paper

Canon genuine papers (Photo Printing)

Media name <Model No.>	Media Type in the printer driver	Paper information registered on the printer
Photo Paper Plus Glossy II <PP-201/PP-208/PP-301>	Photo Paper Plus Glossy II A	Plus Glossy II A
Photo Paper Pro Platinum <PT-101>	Photo Paper Pro Platinum	Pro Platinum
Photo Paper Pro Luster <LU-101>	Photo Paper Pro Luster	Pro Luster
Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss <SG-201>	Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss	Plus Semi-gloss
Glossy Photo Paper "Everyday Use" <GP-501>	Glossy Photo Paper A	Glossy A
Photo Paper Glossy <GP-701>	Glossy Photo Paper A	Glossy A
Matte Photo Paper <MP-101>	Matte Photo Paper	Matte
Premium Fine Art Rough <FA-RG1>	Premium Fine Art Rough	Fine Art Rough
Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte <PM-101>	Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte A	ProPremiumMatteA

Canon genuine papers (Original Product)

Media name <Model No.>	Media Type in the printer driver	Paper information registered on the printer
Dark Fabric Iron-on Transfers <DF-101>	Dark Fabric Iron-on Transfers	DF Iron Transfers

Commercially available papers

When you use non-genuine Canon paper, you can print easily by using the existing settings that have been prepared on the printer's operation panel and in the printer driver.

Media name	Media Type in the printer driver	Paper information registered on the printer
Plain Paper (including recycled paper)	Plain Paper	Plain paper
Japanese Paper Washi	Japanese Paper Washi *1	Japanese Paper
Lightweight Photo Paper (Approximately 0.1mm to less than 0.3mm)	Lightweight Photo Paper *1	Light Photo Paper
Heavyweight Photo Paper (Approximately 0.3mm to less than 0.6mm)	Heavyweight Photo Paper *1	Heavy Photo Paper
Heavyweight Fine Art Paper (Approximately 0.1mm to less than 0.3mm)	Heavyweight Fine Art Paper *1	Heavy Art Paper
Extra Heavyweight Fine Art Paper (Approximately 0.3mm to less than 0.6mm)	Extra Heavyweight Fine Art Paper *1	EX Hvy Art Paper
Canvas	Canvas *1	Canvas
Envelopes	Envelope	Envelope
T-Shirt Transfers	T-Shirt Transfers	T-Shirt Transfers
Greeting Cards	Inkjet Greeting Card	IJ Greeting Card
Card Stock	Card Stock	Card stock

*1 To improve the print quality and paper feeding when using paper other than Canon genuine paper, create a custom paper by using Media Configuration Tool and add it to the printer.
These media types can be used as custom paper standards.

»» Note

- If you have added a new media type using the Media Configuration Tool, open the printer driver settings screen and from the **Maintenance** tab, select **Update Media Information** and carry out a driver media information update.
When printing on a newly added media type, change both the media settings on the printer driver and the registered media information on the printer to those of the new media.
- When you set **Media Type** to **Matte Photo Paper**, **Premium Fine Art Rough**, or **Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte A** in the printer driver,, we recommend that you set **Page Size** to **4"x6" 10x15cm, L 89x127mm**, or **"XXX (Margin 25)"** in the printer driver.
For information about printable ranges, refer to "[Printing Area](#)."
- For information on Washi that can be used with the printer, see "Print Using Washi."

Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Paper Size)

When you use this printer, selecting a paper size that matches the print purpose will help you achieve the best print results.

You can use the following paper sizes on this printer.

Printer Paper Size in the printer driver	Paper information registered on the printer
Letter 8.5"x11" 22x28cm	Letter
Legal 8.5"x14" 22x36cm	Legal
11"x17" 279.4x431.8mm	11"x17"(28x43cm)
A5	A5
A4	A4
A3	A3
A3+ 13"x19" 33x48cm	A3+
B5	B5
B4	B4
4"x6" 10x15cm	KG/4"x6"(10x15)
5"x7" 13x18cm	2L/5"x7"(13x18)
7"x10" 18x25cm	7"x10"(18x25cm)
8"x10" 20x25cm	8"x10"(20x25cm)
10"x12" 25x30cm	10"x12"(25x30cm)
210x594mm	210x594mm
L 89x127mm	L(89x127mm)
2L 127x178mm	2L/5"x7"(13x18)
Square 5"x5" 13x13cm	Square 5"
Square 12"x12" 30x30cm	12"x12"(30x30cm)
Letter (Margin 25)	Letter
210x594mm (Margin 25)	210x594mm
11"x17" (Margin 25)	11"x17"(28x43cm)
A4 (Margin 25)	A4

A3 (Margin 25)	A3
A3+ (Margin 25)	A3+
Hagaki 100x148mm	Hagaki
Hagaki 2 200x148mm	Hagaki 2
Envelope Com 10	Envelope Com 10
Envelope DL	Envelope DL
Nagagata 3 4.72"x9.25"	Nagagata 3
Nagagata 4 3.54"x8.07"	Nagagata 4
Yougata 4 4.13"x9.25"	Yougata 4
Yougata 6 3.86"x7.48"	Yougata 6
Custom Size	Others

Registering a Frequently Used Printing Profile

You can register the frequently used printing profile to **Profiles** on the **Basic Settings** tab. Unnecessary printing profiles can be deleted at any time.

Registering a Printing Profile

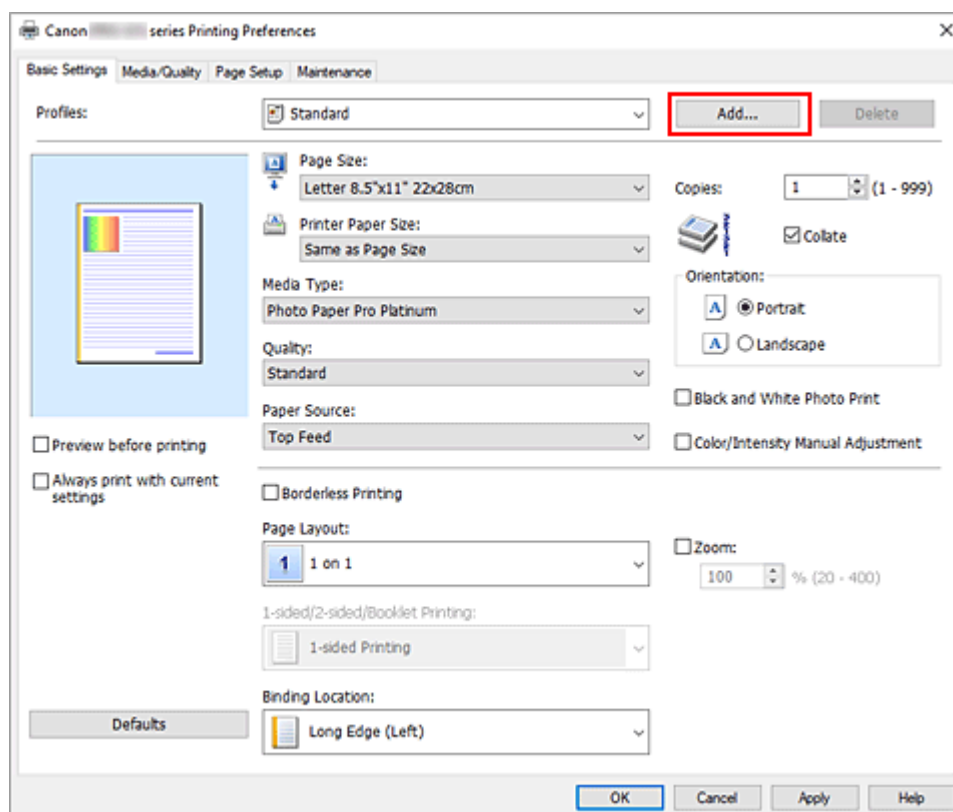
1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Set the necessary items

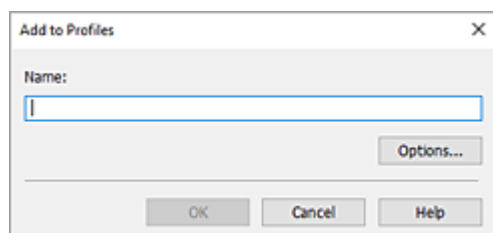
From **Profiles** on the **Basic Settings** tab, select the printing profile to be used and if necessary, change each of the settings.

You can also register necessary items on the **Media/Quality** and **Page Setup** tabs.

3. Click **Add...**



The **Add to Profiles** dialog box opens.



4. Save the settings

Enter a name for the print settings to register in the **Name** field. If necessary, click **Options...**, set the items, and then click **OK**.

In the **Add to Profiles** dialog box, click **OK** to save the print settings and return to the **Basic Settings** tab.

The name and icon are displayed in **Profiles**.

»» Important

- To save the page size, orientation, and number of copies that was set in each sheet, click **Options...**, and check each item.

»» Note

- When you re-install the printer driver or upgrade the printer driver version, the print settings that are already registered will be deleted from **Profiles**.
Registered print settings cannot be saved and preserved. If a profile is deleted, register the print settings again.

Deleting Unnecessary Printing Profile

1. Select the printing profile to be deleted

Select the printing profile you want to delete from the **Profiles** list on the **Basic Settings** tab.

2. Delete the printing profile

Click **Delete**. When the confirmation message appears, click **OK**.

The selected printing profile is deleted from the **Profiles** list.

»» Note

- Printing profiles that are registered in the initial settings cannot be deleted.

Preventing Printing Errors

You can display and check the print result before printing.

You can also set the print results display on the **Basic Settings** tab.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Set the preview

Check the **Preview before printing** check box on the **Media/Quality** tab.

3. Click **OK**

When you perform print, the Canon IJ Preview opens and displays the print results.

Related Topic

➡ [Canon IJ Preview](#)

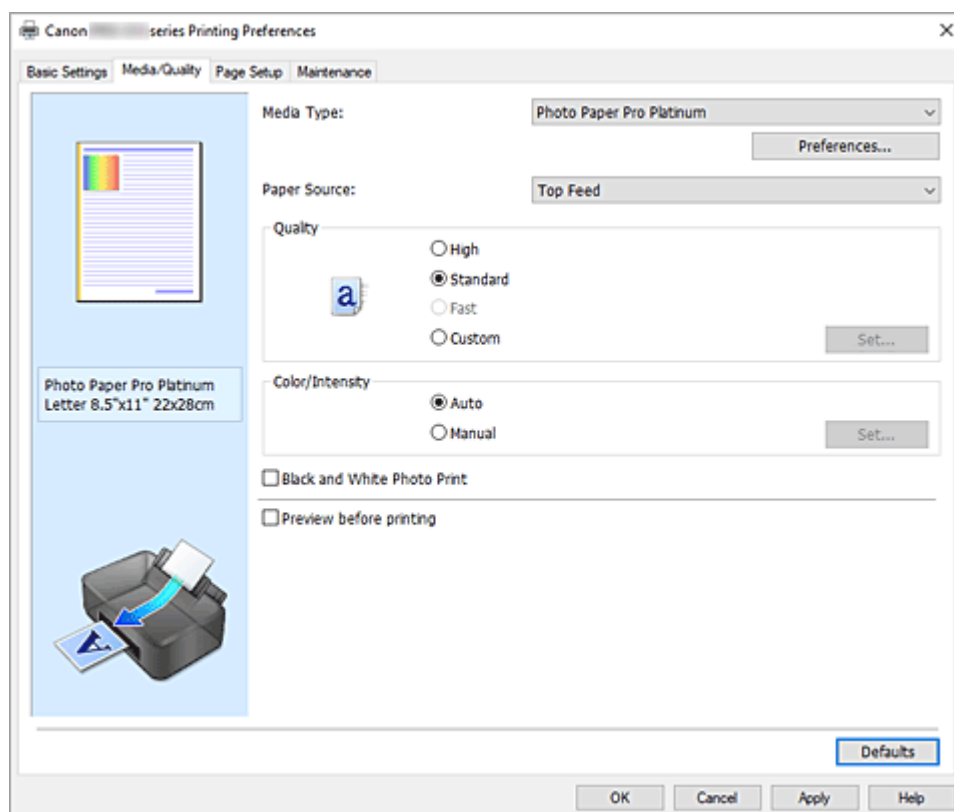
Set Media Type, Quality, etc. (Media/Quality Tab)

- **Media/Quality Tab Description**
- **Switching the Paper Source to Match the Purpose**
- **Printing a Color Document in Monochrome**
- **Adjusting Tone**
- **Specifying Color Correction**
 - Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data
 - Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver
 - Printing with ICC Profiles
 - Interpreting the ICC Profile
- **Adjusting Color Balance**
- **Adjusting Brightness**
- **Adjusting Contrast**

Media/Quality Tab Description

The **Media/Quality** tab allows you to create a basic print setup in accordance with the media type. You can also adjust the print quality and color tones.

- [Settings Preview](#)
- [Media Type](#)
- [Paper Source](#)
- [Quality](#)
- [Color/Intensity](#)
- [Grayscale Printing](#)
- [Preview before printing](#)



Settings Preview

The paper illustration shows how the original will be laid out on a sheet of paper.

You can check an overall image of the layout.

The printer illustration shows how to load paper to match the printer driver settings.

Check whether the printer is set up correctly by looking at the illustration before you start printing.

Media Type

Selects a type of printing paper.

Select a media type that matches the paper that is loaded in the printer. This ensures that printing is carried out properly for the specified paper.

Preferences...

Open the [Advanced Paper Settings dialog box](#), and specify detailed print settings that match the media type loaded in the printer.

Paper Source

Shows the source from which paper is supplied.

You may be able to switch the paper source with the printer driver.

Manual Feed

Paper is supplied from the manual feed tray in the back.

Top Feed

Paper is always supplied from the top feed.

»» Important

- Depending on the media type and size, the **Paper Source** settings that can be selected may differ.

Quality

Selects your desired printing quality.

Select one of the following to set the print quality level that is appropriate for the purpose.

»» Important

- Depending on the **Media Type** settings, the same print results may be produced even if the **Quality** is changed.

High

Gives priority to print quality over printing speed.

Standard

Prints with average speed and quality.

Fast

Gives priority to printing speed over print quality.

Custom

Select this to set the print quality level individually.

Set...

Select **Custom** in **Quality** to make it clickable.

Open the [Custom dialog box](#) to set individual print quality levels.

Color/Intensity

Selects color adjustment method.

Auto

Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Brightness, Contrast, and so on are adjusted automatically.

Manual

Select when you set the individual settings such as **Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Tone, Brightness, Contrast**, etc. and **Color Correction** method.

Set...

Select **Manual** for **Color/Intensity** to enable this button.

In the **Manual Color Adjustment** dialog box, you can adjust individual color settings such as **Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Tone, Brightness**, and **Contrast** on the [Color Adjustment tab](#), and select the **Color Correction** method on the [Matching tab](#).

»» Note

- If you want to use an ICC profile to adjust colors, use the **Manual Color Adjustment** dialog box to set the profile.

Black and White Photo Print

Black and white photo print refers to a function that converts data to monochrome data when printing your document.

Check this check box to print a color document in monochrome.

Preview before printing

Shows what the print result will look like before you actually print the data.

Check this check box to display a preview before printing.

Defaults

Restores all the settings you have changed to their default values.

Clicking this button restores all the settings on the current screen to their default values (factory settings).

Advanced Paper Settings dialog box

Drying Time

Allows you to set how long the printer rests before printing of the next page starts.

If the next page is ejected before the print surface dries completely and the paper becomes stained, set a longer ink drying time.

Print Head Height

Allows you to widen the gap between the print head and the paper to reduce paper abrasion when printing high density pages. To reduce paper abrasion, select **Avoid Paper Abrasion**.

Custom dialog box

Set the quality level, and select the desired print quality.

Quality

You can use the slider bar to adjust the print quality level.

Important

- Certain print quality levels cannot be selected depending on the settings of **Media Type**.

Note

- The **High**, **Standard**, or **Fast** print quality modes are linked with the slider bar. Therefore when the slider bar is moved, the corresponding quality and value are displayed on the left. This is the same as when the corresponding radio button is selected for **Quality** on the **Media/Quality** tab.

Color Adjustment Tab

This tab allows you to adjust the color balance by changing the settings of the **Cyan**, **Magenta**, **Yellow**, **Tone**, **Brightness**, and **Contrast** options.

Preview

Shows the effect of color adjustment.

The color and brightness change when each item is adjusted.

»»» Note

- The graphic is in monochrome when the **Black and White Photo Print** check box is checked.

View Color Pattern

Displays a pattern for checking color changes produced by color adjustment.

If you want to display the preview image with a color pattern, check this check box.

Cyan / Magenta / Yellow

Adjusts the strengths of **Cyan**, **Magenta**, and **Yellow**.

Moving the slider to the right makes a color stronger, and moving the slider to the left makes a color weaker.

You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50.

This adjustment changes the relative amount of ink of each color used, which alters the total color balance of the document. Use your application if you want to change the total color balance significantly. Use the printer driver only if you want to adjust the color balance slightly.

Tone

Set the color tones for monochrome printing.

You can also select colors for monochrome color tones from the pull-down menu.

Cool Tone

This item adjusts color tones to cool shades of gray (cool black). When you select this item, a value of -30 is entered for **X**, and a value of 0 for **Y**.

Black and White

This item adjusts color tones to neutral shades of gray. When you select this item, a value of 0 is entered for **X**, and a value of 0 for **Y**.

Warm Tone

This item adjusts color tones to warm shades of gray (warm black). When you select this item, a value of 30 is entered for **X**, and a value of 0 for **Y**.

Custom

You can adjust the color tones by using the horizontal and vertical sliders while checking the colors in the center adjustment area.

Adjust the horizontal and vertical sliders by dragging them to the left/right or up/down, respectively.

You can also adjust color tones by clicking or dragging the center adjustment area with the mouse.

You can also directly enter values that are linked to the sliders. When you enter values, set values in the range of -100 to 100 for **X**, and -50 to 50 for **Y**.

»»» Note

- **Custom** cannot be selected since it is displayed automatically when the adjustment value is directly entered.

X, Y (Monochromatic adjustment value)

If necessary, you can adjust monochromatic colors manually.

To adjust the color tones, either enter values directly or click the up/down arrows.

You can also adjust the color tones by clicking or dragging the adjustment area with the mouse.

The value is also linked to the horizontal and vertical sliders.

When you enter values, set values in the range of -100 to 100 for **X**, and -50 to 50 for **Y**.
The selected value will be shown in the preview on the left side.

»» Important

- This function is not available for certain **Media Type** settings.

Brightness

Adjusts the brightness of your print. You cannot change the levels of pure white and black. However, the brightness of the colors between white and black can be changed. Moving the slider to the right brightens (dilutes) the colors, and moving the slider to the left darkens (intensifies) the colors. You can also directly enter brightness values that are linked to the slider bar. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50.

Contrast

Adjusts the contrast between light and dark in the image to be printed.
Moving the slider to the right increases the contrast, moving the slider to the left decreases the contrast.
You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50.

Matching Tab

Allows you to select the method for adjusting colors to match the type of document to be printed.

Color Correction

Allows you to select **Driver Matching**, **ICM**, or **None** to match the purpose of the print operation.

Driver Matching

With Canon Digital Photo Color, you can print sRGB data with color tints that most people prefer.

ICM

Adjusts the colors by using an ICC profile when printing.
Specify the input profile, printer profile, and rendering intent to be used.

»» Important

- If the application software is set so that ICM is disabled, **ICM** is unavailable for **Color Correction** and the printer may not be able to print the image data properly.

None

Disables color adjustment with the printer driver. Select this value when you are specifying an individually created printing ICC profile in an application software to print data.

Input Profile

Specifies the input profile to be used when you select **ICM** for **Color Correction**.

Standard

The standard printer profile (sRGB), which supports the color space of ICM, is used. This is the default setting.

Printer Profile

Specifies the printer profile to be used when **ICM** is selected for **Color Correction**.
Normally **Auto** is selected but you can also select a printer profile manually.

Rendering Intent

Specifies the matching method to be used when you select **ICM** for **Color Correction**.

Saturation

This method reproduces images even more vividly than the **Perceptual** method.

Perceptual

This method reproduces images by focusing on colors that most people find desirable. Select this method to print photos.

Relative Colorimetric

When image data is converted to the color space of the printer, this method converts the image data so the color reproduction approximates the shared color regions. Select this method to print image data with colors that are close to the original colors.

The white spots are reproduced as white spots (background color) on the paper.

Absolute Colorimetric

This method uses the white spot definitions in the input and output ICC profiles to convert the image data.

Although the color and color balance of the white spots change, you may not be able to get the desired output results because of the profile combination.

»» Important

- Depending on the media type, you may obtain the same print results even when you change the **Rendering Intent** setting.

Switching the Paper Source to Match the Purpose

In this printer, there are two paper sources, a manual feed tray and a top feed.

You can facilitate printing by selecting a paper source setting that matches your media type or purpose.

The procedure for setting paper source is as follows:

You can also set the paper source on the **Basic Settings** tab.

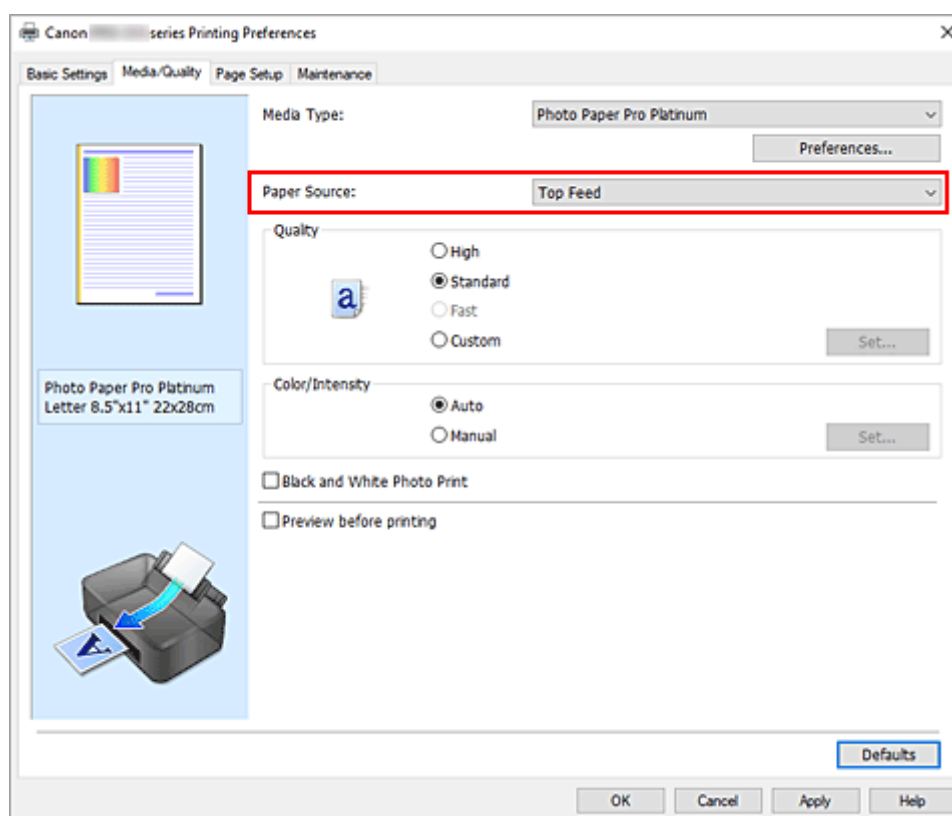
1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Select the media type

Select the type of paper loaded in the printer from the **Media Type** list on the **Media/Quality** tab.

3. Select the paper source

From the **Paper Source** list, select the paper source that matches your purpose.



Manual Feed

Paper is supplied from the manual feed tray in the back.

»»» Important

- When one of the following paper types is selected for **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** tab, paper cannot be supplied from the manual feed tray in the back.
 - A5
 - B5
 - 4"x6" 10x15cm
 - 5"x7" 13x18cm

- 7"x10" 18x25cm
 - L 89x127mm
 - 2L 127x178mm
 - Square 5"x5" 13x13cm
 - Hagaki 100x148mm
 - Hagaki 2 200x148mm
 - Envelope Com 10
 - Envelope DL
 - Nagagata 3 4.72"x9.25"
 - Nagagata 4 3.54"x8.07"
 - Yougata 4 4.13"x9.25"
 - Yougata 6 3.86"x7.48"
- When one of the following paper types is selected for **Media Type** on the **Media/Quality** tab, paper cannot be supplied from the manual feed tray in the back.
 - Plain Paper
 - Envelope
 - Hagaki A
 - Ink Jet Hagaki
 - Hagaki K
 - Hagaki
 - High Resolution Paper
 - T-Shirt Transfers

Top Feed

Paper is fed from the top feed.

►► Important

- When one of the following paper types is selected for **Media Type** on the **Media/Quality** tab, paper cannot be supplied from the top feed.
 - Heavyweight Photo Paper
 - Premium Fine Art Rough
 - Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte A
 - Extra Heavyweight Fine Art Paper

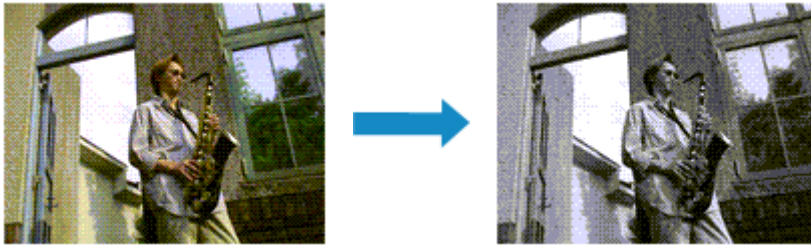
4. Click **OK**

When you perform print, the printer uses the specified paper source to print the data.

►► Note

- If the paper settings in the printer driver differ from the paper information registered on the printer, an error may occur. For instructions on what to do if an error occurs, see "[Register Paper Information](#)."
- For details about the paper information to be registered on the printer, see the following:
- [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Media Type\)](#)
 - [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Paper Size\)](#)

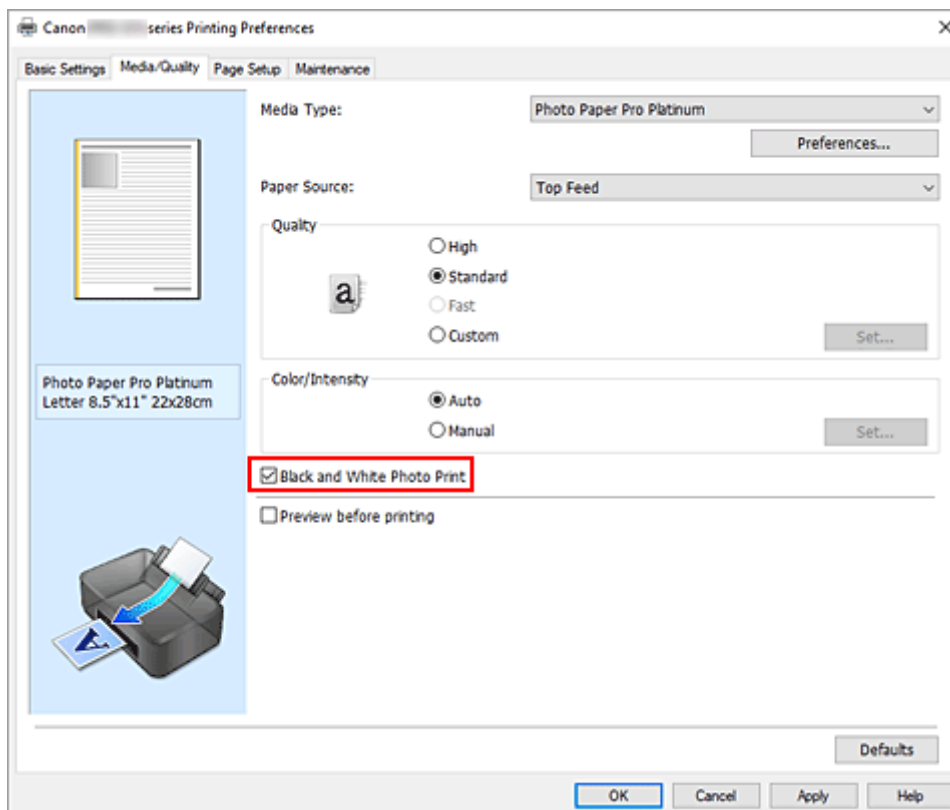
Printing a Color Document in Monochrome



You can also set a black and white photo print in **Black and White Photo Print** on the **Basic Settings** tab.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Set black and white photo printing

Check the **Black and White Photo Print** check box on the **Media/Quality** tab.



3. Click **OK**

When you perform print, the document is converted to grayscale data. It allows you to print the color document in monochrome.

»» Important

- When the **Black and White Photo Print** check box is checked, the printer driver processes image data as sRGB data. In this case, actual colors printed may differ from those in the original image data.

When using the grayscale printing function to print Adobe RGB data, convert the data to sRGB data using an application software.

»» Note

- During **Black and White Photo Print**, inks other than black ink may be used as well.

| Related Topic

➡ [Adjusting Tone](#)

Adjusting Tone

When printing black and white photos, you can produce the cooling effects of cool colors and the warming effects of warm colors.



Cool Tone is selected **Black and White** is selected **Warm Tone** is selected

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

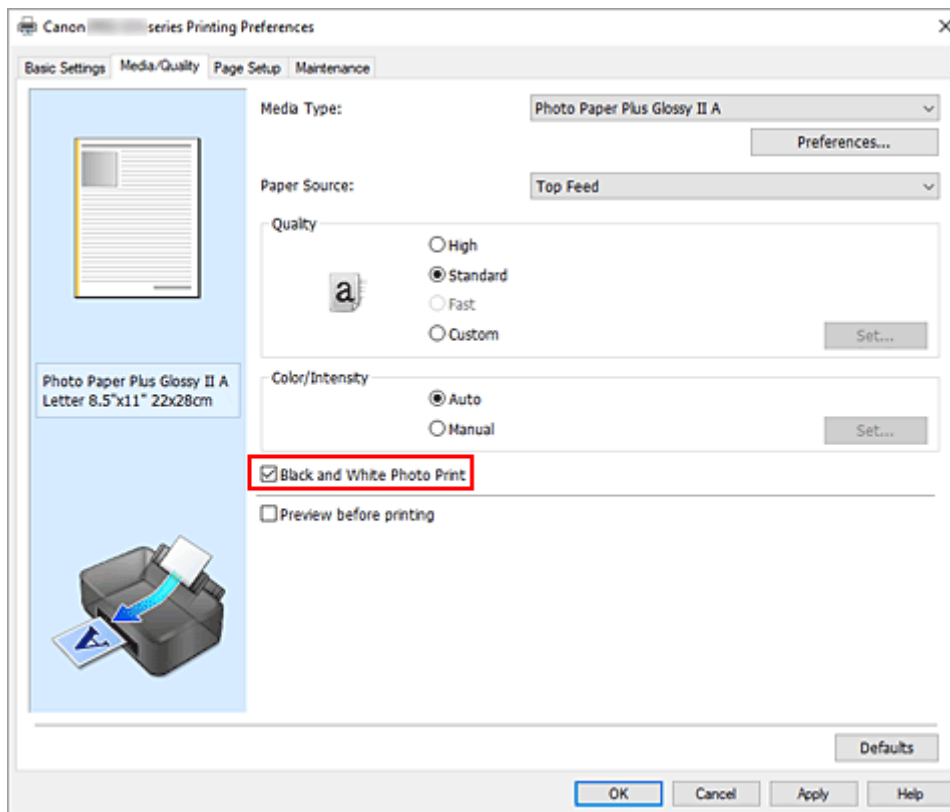
2. Select the media type

For **Media Type** on the **Media/Quality** tab, select the following paper types.

- **Photo Paper Plus Glossy II A**
- **Photo Paper Pro Platinum**
- **Photo Paper Pro Luster**
- **Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss**
- **Photo Paper Pro Crystal Grade**
- **Lightweight Photo Paper**
- **Heavyweight Photo Paper**
- **Premium Fine Art Rough**
- **Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte A**
- **Heavyweight Fine Art Paper**
- **Extra Heavyweight Fine Art Paper**
- **Canvas**
- **Japanese Paper Washi**

3. Set black and white photo printing

Check the **Black and White Photo Print** check box.



4. Select the manual color adjustment

Select **Manual** for **Color/Intensity**, and click **Set....**

The **Manual Color Adjustment** dialog box opens.

5. Adjusting monochrome tones

From the **Tone** pull-down menu, specify any of the following items.

Cool Tone

This item adjusts color tones to cool shades of gray (cool black). When you select this item, a value of -30 is entered for **X**, and a value of 0 for **Y**.

Black and White

This item adjusts color tones to neutral shades of gray. When you select this item, a value of 0 is entered for **X**, and a value of 0 for **Y**.

Warm Tone

This item adjusts color tones to warm shades of gray (warm black). When you select this item, a value of 30 is entered for **X**, and a value of 0 for **Y**.

Custom

You can adjust the color tones by using the horizontal and vertical sliders while checking the colors in the center adjustment area.

Adjust the horizontal and vertical sliders by dragging them to the left/right or up/down, respectively. You can also adjust color tones by clicking or dragging the center adjustment area with the mouse. You can also directly enter values that are linked to the sliders. When you enter values, set values in the range of -100 to 100 for **X**, and -50 to 50 for **Y**.

»» Note

- **Custom** cannot be selected since it is displayed automatically when the adjustment value is directly entered.

X, Y (Monochromatic adjustment value)

If necessary, you can adjust monochromatic colors manually.

To adjust the color tones, either enter values directly or click the up/down arrows.

You can also adjust the color tones by clicking or dragging the adjustment area with the mouse.

The value is also linked to the horizontal and vertical sliders.

When you enter values, set values in the range of -100 to 100 for **X**, and -50 to 50 for **Y**.

The selected value will be shown in the preview on the left side.

After adjusting the tones, click **OK**.

6. Complete the setup

Click **OK** on the **Media/Quality** tab.

When you perform print, the color document is converted to grayscale data with adjusted tones. It allows you to print the color document in monochrome.

Related Topics

- ➡ [Printing a Color Document in Monochrome](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Brightness](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Contrast](#)

Specifying Color Correction

You can specify the color correction method suited to the type of document to be printed.

Normally, when data is printed, the printer driver automatically adjusts the colors.

When you want to print by using the color space of the image data effectively, select **ICM**. When you want to use an application software to specify a printing ICC profile, select **None**.

You can also set the color correction in **Color/Intensity Manual Adjustment** in the **Basic Settings** tab.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Select the manual color adjustment

On the **Media/Quality** tab, select **Manual** for **Color/Intensity**, and click **Set....**

The **Manual Color Adjustment** dialog box opens.

3. Select color correction

Click the [Matching tab](#). Select the **Color Correction** method for the color that matches the document type that you are printing, and then click **OK**.

4. Complete the setup

Click **OK** on the **Media/Quality** tab.

When you perform print, the document data is printed with the specified color correction.

»» Important

- When ICM is disabled in the application software, **ICM** is unavailable for **Color Correction** and the printer may not be able to print the image data properly.

Related Topics

- ➡ [Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver](#)
- ➡ [Printing with ICC Profiles](#)
- ➡ [Interpreting the ICC Profile](#)

Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data

When people print images taken with digital cameras, they sometimes feel that the printed color tones differ from those of actual image or those displayed on the monitor.

To get the print results as close as possible to the desired color tones, you must select a printing method that is best suited to the application software used or to your purpose.

Color Management

Devices such as digital cameras, scanners, monitors, and printers handle color differently. Color management (color matching) is a method that manages device-dependent "colors" as a common color space.

For Windows, a color management system called "ICM" is built into the operating system. sRGB is one of the common color spaces that is frequently used.

ICC profiles convert device-dependent "colors" into a common color space. By using an ICC profile and carrying out color management, you can draw out the color space of the image data within the color reproduction area that the printer can express.

▶▶▶ Note

- Normally, image files are saved in JPEG format. Some digital cameras allow you to save images in a format called RAW. RAW data refers to an image saving format that requires a computer to develop the image. You can embed an input ICC profile tag into a RAW file by using special application software.

Selecting a Printing Method Suited to the Image Data

The recommended printing method depends on the color space of the image data or the application software to be used.

There are two typical printing methods.

Check the color space of the image data and the application software to be used, and then select the printing method suited to your purpose.

Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver

This section describes the procedure for printing data by using the color correction function of the printer driver.

Select this function when you want to print impressions that are close to those displayed on the monitor, for example, if you corrected the colors while checking the print image on the monitor.

Printing with ICC Profiles

Describes the procedure for printing by using the color space of the image data effectively.

You can print with a common color space by setting up the application software and the printer driver so that the color management matches the input ICC profile of the image data.

The method for setting up the printer driver differs depending on the application software to be used.

Related Topic

➡ [Interpreting the ICC Profile](#)

Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver

To use driver matching when printing, turn on the printer driver's color correction function.

Driver matching accurately applies the characteristics of data displayed on the monitor and allows you to obtain print results of impressions that are close to those displayed on the monitor.

Important

- When printing using driver matching, Canon recommends that you set the monitor and the environment light as follows:
 - Monitor
 - Color temperature: D50 (5000K)
 - Brightness: 100 to 120cd/m²
 - Gamma: 2.2
 - Environment light
 - Fluorescent light for D50 color evaluation (color temperature 5000K, high color rendering properties)
 - Brightness when looking at printed materials: 500 lx ± 125 lx

Note

- When printing from an application software that can identify ICC profiles and allows you to specify them, use a printing ICC profile in the application software, and select settings for color management.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Select the manual color adjustment

On the **Media/Quality** tab, select **Manual** for **Color/Intensity**, and click **Set....**

The **Manual Color Adjustment** dialog box opens.

3. Select color correction

Click **Matching** tab, and select **Driver Matching** for **Color Correction**.

4. Set the other items

If necessary, click **Color Adjustment** tab, and adjust the color balance (**Cyan**, **Magenta**, **Yellow**) and adjust **Brightness** and **Contrast** settings, and then click **OK**.

5. Complete the setup

Click **OK** on the **Media/Quality** tab.

When you print, the colors get adjusted by the printer driver when printing the data.

Related Topics

- ➡ [Adjusting Color Balance](#)
- ➡ [Specifying Color Correction](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Brightness](#)

➡ [Adjusting Contrast](#)

Printing with ICC Profiles

When the image data has a specified input ICC profile, you can print by using the color space of the data effectively.

The printer driver setting procedure varies depending on the application software used to print.

Specify an ICC Profile from the Application Software and Print the Data

When you print the editing and touch-up results of Adobe Photoshop, Canon Digital Photo Professional, or any application software that allows you to specify input and printing ICC profiles, you print by effectively using the color space of the input ICC profile specified in the image data.

To use this printing method, use your application software to select color management items and specify an input ICC profile and a printing ICC profile in the image data.

Even if you print using a printing ICC profile that you created yourself or one for special Canon paper, be sure to select color management items from your application software.

For instructions, refer to the manual of the application software you are using.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Select the manual color adjustment

On the **Media/Quality** tab, select **Manual** for **Color/Intensity**, and click **Set....**

The **Manual Color Adjustment** dialog box opens.

3. Select color correction

Click **Matching** tab, and select **None** for **Color Correction**.

4. Set the other items

If necessary, click **Color Adjustment** tab, and adjust the color balance (**Cyan**, **Magenta**, **Yellow**) and adjust **Brightness** and **Contrast** settings, and then click **OK**.

5. Complete the setup

Click **OK** on the **Media/Quality** tab.

When you perform print, the printer uses the color space of the image data.

Specify an ICC Profile with the Printer Driver, and then Print

Print from an application software that cannot identify input ICC profiles or does not allow you to specify one by using sRGB as the color space of the data.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Select the manual color adjustment

On the **Media/Quality** tab, select **Manual** for **Color/Intensity**, and click **Set....**
The **Manual Color Adjustment** dialog box opens.

3. Select color correction

Click **Matching** tab, and select **ICM** for **Color Correction**.

4. For Input Profile, select Standard

Important

- When the application software specifies an input profile, the input profile setting of the printer driver becomes invalid.

5. Select the printer profile

Select **Printer Profile**.

- To set the printer profile automatically:
Select **Auto**.
- To set the printer profile manually:
Select a printer profile that matches the media type to be used.

6. Select the rendering intent

Select the coloring adjustment method in **Rendering Intent**.

- **Saturation**

This method reproduces images even more vividly than the **Perceptual** method.

- **Perceptual**

This function effectively prints the color space that the printer can reproduce. Because this function accurately renders the attributes of the data displayed on the monitor, select this function when you want to print with impressions that are close to those displayed on the monitor.

Important

- When you select **Perceptual** to print images, Canon recommends that you set the monitor and the environment light as follows:
 - Monitor
Color temperature: D50 (5000K)
Brightness: 100 to 120cd/m²
Gamma: 2.2
 - Environment light
Fluorescent light for D50 color evaluation (color temperature 5000K, high color rendering properties)
Brightness when looking at printed materials: 500 lx ± 125 lx

- **Relative Colorimetric**

When image data is converted to the color space of the printer, this method converts the image data so the color reproduction approximates the shared color regions. Select this method to print image data with colors that are close to the original colors.

- **Absolute Colorimetric**

When **Relative Colorimetric** is selected, white spots are reproduced as white spots of the paper (background color). However, when **Absolute Colorimetric** is selected, how the white spots are reproduced depends on the image data.

»» Important

- Depending on the media type, you may obtain the same print results even when you change the **Rendering Intent** setting.

7. Set the other items

If necessary, click **Color Adjustment** tab, and adjust the color balance (**Cyan, Magenta, Yellow**) and adjust **Brightness** and **Contrast** settings, and then click **OK**.

8. Complete the setup

Click **OK** on the **Media/Quality** tab.

When you perform print, the printer uses the color space of the image data.

Related Topics

- ⇒ [Adjusting Color Balance](#)
- ⇒ [Specifying Color Correction](#)
- ⇒ [Adjusting Brightness](#)
- ⇒ [Adjusting Contrast](#)

Interpreting the ICC Profile

When you need to specify an ICC profile for this printer, specify the ICC profile of the print output media.

The ICC profiles installed for this printer appear as follows.

Canon XXXXX Photo Paper Plus Glossy II
(1) (2)

- (1) : Printer model
- (2) : Media type

This media name corresponds to the following media type:

Canvas -P: Canvas

Extra Heavyweight Fine Art Paper -P: Extra Heavyweight Fine Art Paper

Glossy Photo Paper A: Photo Paper Glossy

Heavyweight Fine Art Paper -P: Heavyweight Fine Art Paper

Heavyweight Photo Paper -P: Heavyweight Photo Paper

Japanese Paper Washi -P: Japanese Paper Washi

Lightweight Photo Paper -P: Lightweight Photo Paper

Matte Photo Paper -P: Matte Photo Paper

Photo Paper Plus Glossy II A: Photo Paper Plus Glossy II

Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss: Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss

Photo Paper Pro Crystal Grade: Photo Paper Pro Crystal Grade

Photo Paper Pro Luster: Photo Paper Pro Luster

Photo Paper Pro Platinum: Photo Paper Pro Platinum

Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte A: Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte

Premium Fine Art Rough: Premium Fine Art Rough

▶▶▶ Note

- For ICC profiles that display "-P" at the end of the media type, the print results are the same when you set **Rendering Intent** to **Perceptual** or **Relative Colorimetric**.

Adjusting Color Balance

You can adjust the color tints when printing.

Since this function adjusts color balance of the output by changing the ink ratios of each color, it changes the total color balance of the document. Use the application software when you want to change the color balance significantly. Use the printer driver only when you want to adjust the color balance slightly.

The following sample shows the case when color balance is used to intensify cyan and to diminish yellow so that the overall colors are more uniform.



No adjustment Adjust color balance

You can also set the color balance in **Color/Intensity Manual Adjustment** in the **Basic Settings** tab.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Select the manual color adjustment

On the **Media/Quality** tab, select **Manual** for **Color/Intensity**, and click **Set...**

The **Manual Color Adjustment** dialog box opens.

3. Adjust color balance

There are individual sliders for **Cyan**, **Magenta**, and **Yellow**. Each color becomes stronger when the corresponding slider is moved to the right, and becomes weaker when the corresponding slider is moved to the left. For example, when cyan becomes weaker, the color red becomes stronger.

You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50. The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.

After adjusting each color, click **OK**.

4. Complete the setup

Click **OK** on the **Media/Quality** tab.

When you perform print, the document is printed with the adjusted color balance.

»» Important

- When the **Black and White Photo Print** check box on the **Media/Quality** tab is checked, the color balance (**Cyan**, **Magenta**, **Yellow**) cannot be set.

Related Topics

- ➡ [Specifying Color Correction](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Brightness](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Contrast](#)

Adjusting Brightness

You can brighten or darken the colors of the overall image data during printing.

The following sample shows the case when light colors are darkened when the image data is printed.



No adjustment



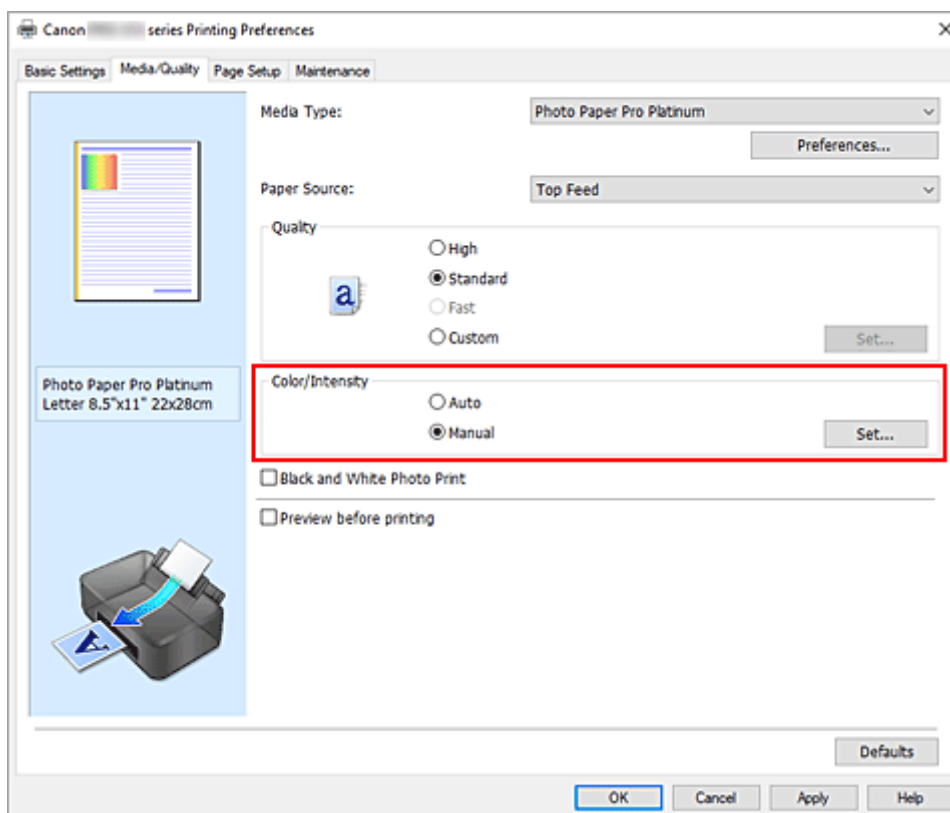
Darken light colors

You can also set brightness on the **Basic Settings** tab by choosing **Color/Intensity Manual Adjustment**.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Select the manual color adjustment

On the **Media/Quality** tab, select **Manual** for **Color/Intensity**, and click **Set...**



The **Manual Color Adjustment** dialog box opens.

3. Adjust brightness

Moving the **Brightness** slider to the right brightens (dilutes) the colors, and moving the slider to the left darkens (intensifies) the colors.

You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50. The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.

After adjusting the brightness, click **OK**.

4. Complete the setup

Click **OK** on the **Media/Quality** tab.

When you perform print, the data is printed at the adjusted brightness.

Related Topics

- ➡ [Specifying Color Correction](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Color Balance](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Contrast](#)

Adjusting Contrast

You can adjust the image contrast during printing.

To make the differences between the light and dark portions of images greater and more distinct, increase the contrast. On the other hand, to make the differences between the light and dark portions of images smaller and less distinct, reduce the contrast.



No adjustment

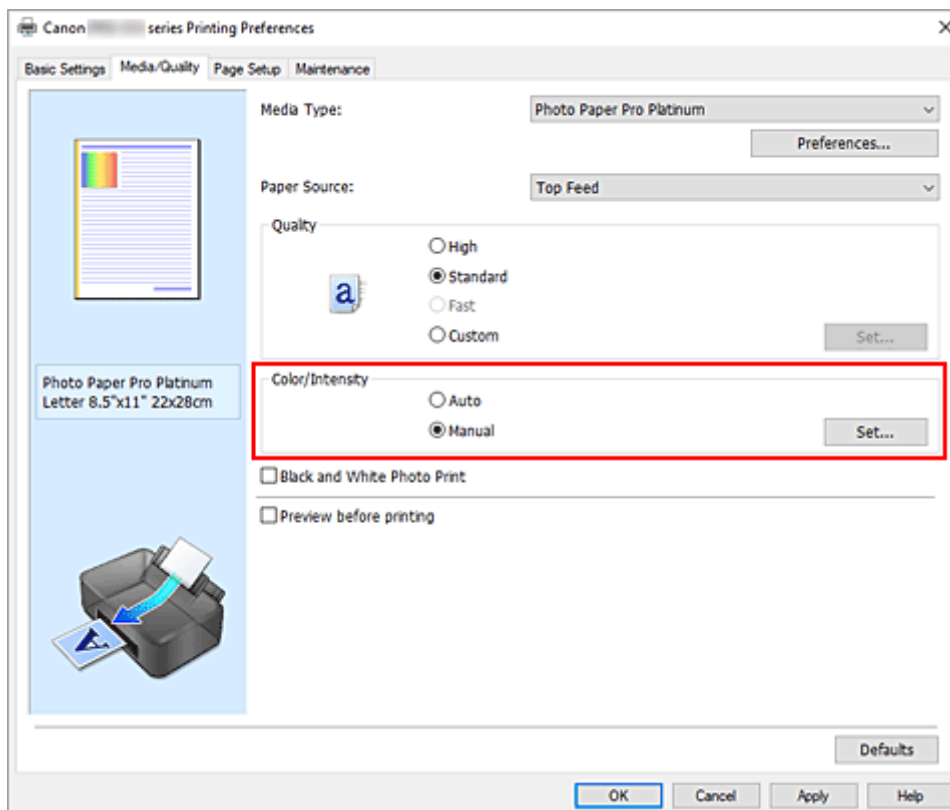


Adjust the contrast

You can also set the contrast in **Color/Intensity Manual Adjustment** in the **Basic Settings** tab.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Select the manual color adjustment

On the **Media/Quality** tab, select **Manual** for **Color/Intensity**, and click **Set...**



The **Manual Color Adjustment** dialog box opens.

3. Adjust the contrast

Moving the **Contrast** slider to the right increases the contrast, and moving the slider to the left decreases the contrast.

You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50. The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.

After adjusting the contrast, click **OK**.

4. Complete the setup

Click **OK** on the **Media/Quality** tab.

When you perform print, the image is printed with the adjusted contrast.

Related Topics

- ➡ [Specifying Color Correction](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Color Balance](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Brightness](#)

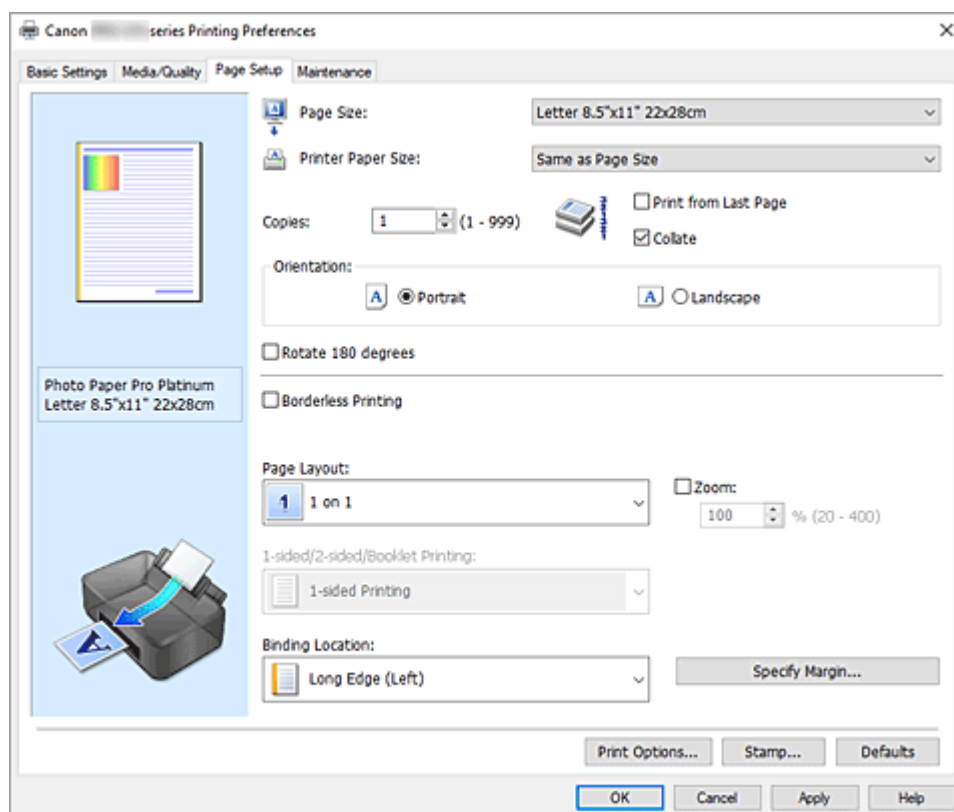
Set the Layout of Printed Documents (Page Setup Tab)

- **Page Setup Tab Description**
- **Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order**
- **Perform Borderless Printing**
- **Page Layout Printing**
- **Tiling/Poster Printing**
- **Booklet Printing**
- **Duplex Printing**
- **Setting Up Envelope Printing**
- **Printing on Postcards**
- **Print Using Washi**
- **Setting Paper Dimensions (Custom Size)**

Page Setup Tab Description

The **Page Setup** tab allows you to determine how a document is to be arranged on the paper. Also, this tab allows you to set the number of copies and the order of printing. If the application which created the document has a similar function, set them with the application.

- [Settings Preview](#)
- [Page Size](#)
- [Printer Paper Size](#)
- [Copies](#)
- [Print from Last Page](#)
- [Collate](#)
- [Orientation](#)
- [Rotate 180 degrees](#)
- [Borderless Printing](#)
- [Page Layout](#)
- [Zoom](#)
- [1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing](#)
- [Binding Location](#)
- [Specify Margin](#)
- [Print Options](#)
- [Stamp](#)



Settings Preview

The paper illustration shows how the original will be laid out on a sheet of paper. You can check an overall image of the layout.

The printer illustration shows how to load paper to match the printer driver settings.
Check whether the printer is set up correctly by looking at the illustration before you start printing.

Page Size

Selects a page size.

Ensure that you select the same page size as you selected within the application.

If you select **Custom...**, the [Custom Paper Size dialog box](#) opens and allows you to specify any vertical and horizontal dimensions for the paper size.

Printer Paper Size

Selects the size of paper actually loaded into the printer.

The default setting is **Same as Page Size** to perform normal-sized printing.

If you select a paper size that is smaller than the **Page Size**, the document size will be reduced. If you select a paper size that is larger, the document size will be enlarged.

Also if you select **Custom...**, the [Custom Paper Size dialog box](#) opens and allows you to specify any vertical and horizontal dimensions for the paper size.

Copies

Specifies the number of copies you want to print. You can specify a value from 1 to 999.

►►► Important

- If the application used to create your document has a similar function, specify the number of copies with the application without specifying it here.

Print from Last Page

Check this check box when you want to print from the last page in order. If you do this, you do not need to sort the pages into their correct order after printing.

Uncheck this check box to print your document in normal order, starting from the first page.

Collate

Check this check box to group together the pages of each copy when you want to print multiple copies.

Uncheck this check box when you want to print with all pages of the same page number grouped together.

►►► Important

- When the application software that you used to create the document has the same function, give priority to the printer driver settings. However, if the print results are not acceptable, specify the function settings on the application software. When you specify the number of copies and the printing order with both the application and this printer driver, the number of copies may be multiplied numbers of the two settings or the specified printing order may not be enabled.

Orientation

Selects the printing orientation.

If the application used to create your document has a similar function, select the same orientation that you selected in that application.

Portrait

Prints the document so that its top and bottom positions are unchanged relative to the paper feed direction. This is the default setting.

Landscape

Prints the document by rotating it 90 degrees relative to the paper feed direction.

You can change the rotation direction by going to the [Maintenance tab](#), opening the **Custom**

Settings dialog box, and then using **Rotate 90 degrees left when orientation is [Landscape]** check box.

To rotate the document 90 degrees to the left when printing, select the **Rotate 90 degrees left when orientation is [Landscape]** check box.

Rotate 180 degrees

Prints the document by rotating it 180 degrees against the paper feed direction.

The width of print area and the amount of extension that are configured in other application software will be reversed vertically and horizontally.

Borderless Printing

Chooses whether you are printing on a full page without any page margins or printing with page margins.

In borderless printing, originals are enlarged to extend slightly off the paper. Thus, printing can be performed without any margins (border).

Use **Amount of Extension** to adjust how much of the document extends off the paper during borderless printing.

Amount of Extension

Adjusts how much of the document extends off the paper during borderless printing.

Moving the slider to the right increases the amount of extension and allows you to perform borderless printing with no problems.

Moving the slider to the left reduces the amount of extension and expands the range of the document to print.

Page Layout

Selects the size of the document you want to print and the type of printing.

1 on 1 to 16 on 1

Multiple pages of document can be printed on one sheet of paper. To change the page order, click **Preferences....** In the [Page Layout Printing dialog box](#) that appears, specify **Page Order**.

Poster (1 x 2) to Poster (4 x 4)

This function enables you to enlarge the image data and divide the enlarged data into several pages to be printed.

You can also glue together these sheets of paper to create large printed matter, such as a poster.

Preferences...

Opens the [Poster Printing dialog box](#).

Click this button to set details on poster printing.

Zoom

Specifies an enlargement or reduction ratio for the document you want to print.

1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing

1-sided Printing

Select when performing single-sided printing.

2-sided Printing (Manual)

Select when performing duplex printing.

Booklet Printing (Manual)

The booklet printing function allows you to print data for a booklet. Data is printed on both sides of the paper. This type of printing ensures that pages can be collated properly, in page number order, when the printed sheets are folded and stapled at the center.

Preferences...

[Opens the Booklet Printing dialog box.](#) Click this button to set details on booklet printing.

Binding Location

Selects the stapling margin position.

The printer analyzes the **Orientation** and **Page Layout** settings, and automatically selects the best stapling margin position. Check **Binding Location**, and select from the list to change it.

Specify Margin...

[Opens the Specify Margin dialog box.](#) You can specify the width of the margin.

Print Options...

Opens the [Print Options dialog box](#).

Changes detailed printer driver settings for print data that is sent from applications.

Stamp...

Opens the [Stamp dialog box](#).

The **Stamp** function allows you to print a stamp text or a bitmap over or behind document data. It also allows you to print date, time and user name.

Depending on the environment, **Stamp** may not be available.

Defaults

Restores all the settings you have changed to their default values.

Clicking this button restores all the settings on the current screen to their default values (factory settings).

Custom Paper Size dialog box

This dialog box allows you to specify the size (width and height) of the custom paper.

Units

Select the unit for entering a user-defined paper size.

Paper Size

Specifies the **Width** and the **Height** of the custom paper. Measurement is shown according to the units specified in **Units**.

Page Layout Printing dialog box

This dialog box allows you to select the number of document pages to be placed on one sheet of paper, the page order, and whether a page border line is to be printed around each document page.

The settings specified in this dialog box can be confirmed in the settings preview on the printer driver.

Page Order

Specifies the document orientation to be printed on a sheet of paper.

Page Border

Prints a page border line around each document page.

Check this check box to print the page border line.

Exclude single page documents from Page Layout Printing

If you add a checkmark, single-page documents are printed on a single sheet without performing Page Layout Printing.

Poster Printing dialog box

This dialog box allows you to select the size of the image to be printed. You can also make settings for cut lines and paste markers which are convenient for pasting together the pages into a poster.

The settings specified in this dialog box can be confirmed in the settings preview on the printer driver.

Print "Cut/Paste" in margins

Specifies whether to print the words "Cut" and "Paste" in the margins. These words serve as guidelines for pasting together the pages into a poster.

Check this check box to print the words.

»»» Note

- Depending on the environment of the printer driver you are using, this function may not be available.

Print "Cut/Paste" lines in margins

Specifies whether to print cut lines that serve as guidelines for pasting together the pages into a poster.

Check this check box to print the cut lines.

Print page range

Specifies the printing range. Select **All** under normal circumstances.

Select **Pages** to specify a specific page or range.

»»» Note

- If some of the pages have not been printed well, specify the pages that do not need to be printed by clicking them in the settings preview of the **Page Setup** tab. Only the pages shown on the screen will be printed this time.

Booklet Printing dialog box

This dialog box allows you to set how to bind the document as a booklet. Printing only on one side and printing a page border, can also be set in this dialog box.

The settings specified in this dialog box can be confirmed in the settings preview on the printer driver.

Preview Icon

Shows the settings made on the **Booklet Printing** dialog box.

You can check what the document will look like when printed as a booklet.

Margin for stapling

Specifies which side of the booklet is to be stapled.

Insert blank page

Selects whether to print the document on one side or both sides of the booklet.

Check this check box to print the document on one side of the booklet and select the side to be left blank from the list.

Margin

Specifies the width of the stapling margin.

The specified width becomes the stapling margin from the center of the sheet.

Page Border

Prints a page border line around each document page.
Check this check box to print the page border line.

Specify Margin dialog box

This dialog box allows you to specify the margin width for the side to be stapled. If a document does not fit on one page, the document is reduced when printed.

Margin

Specifies the width of the stapling margin.
The width of the side specified by **Binding Location** becomes the stapling margin.

Print Options dialog box

Makes changes to print data that is sent to the printer.

Depending on the environment, this function may not be available.

Disable ICM required from the application software

Disables the ICM function required from the application software.
When an application software uses Windows ICM to print data, unexpected colors may be produced or the printing speed may decrease. If these problems occur, checking this check box may resolve the problems.

Important

- Uncheck this check box under normal circumstances.
- This function does not work when **ICM** is selected for **Color Correction** on the **Matching** tab of the **Manual Color Adjustment** dialog box.

Disable the color profile setting of the application software

Checking this check box disables information in the color profile that was set on the application software.
When the information in the color profile set on the application software is output to the printer driver, the print result may contain unexpected colors. If this happens, checking this check box may resolve the problem.

Important

- Uncheck this check box under normal circumstances.
- Even when this check box is checked, only some of the information in the color profile is disabled, and the color profile can still be used for printing.

Disable the paper source setting of the application software

Disables the paper feed method that is set by the application.
With some applications such as Microsoft Word, the data may be printed with a feed method that differs from the printer driver setting. In this case, check this function.

Important

- When this function is enabled, normally the paper feeding method cannot be changed from the Canon IJ Preview.

Ungroup Papers

Sets the display method of **Media Type**, **Page Size**, and **Printer Paper Size**.

To display the items separately, select the check box.

To display the items as a group, clear the check box.

Do not allow application software to compress print data

Compression of the application software print data is prohibited.

If the print result has missing image data or unintended colors, selecting this check box may improve the condition.

»» Important

- Uncheck this check box under normal circumstances.

Print after creating print data by page

The print data is created in page units, and printing starts after the processing of one page of print data is complete.

If a printed document contains unintended results such as streaks, selecting this check box may improve the results.

»» Important

- Uncheck this check box under normal circumstances.

Cancel the safety margin regulation for paper size

Cancels the safety margin regulation when you set **Media Type** to **Matte Photo Paper**, **Premium Fine Art Rough**, or **Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte A** on the **Media/Quality** tab.

When you check this item, the safety margin regulation is canceled, printing in a wider print area and borderless full-page printing become possible, and printing can be performed for all paper sizes.

»» Important

- When the safety margin regulation is canceled, the paper may become smudged or the print quality may drop depending on the paper size used and the environment.
If that happens, we recommend that you print on a paper size that has large margins.

Prevention of Print Data Loss

You can reduce the size of the print data that was created with the application software and then print the data.

Depending on the application software being used, the image data may be cut off or may not be printed properly. In such cases, select **On (Weak)** or **On (Strong)**.

Off

The printer prints data without using this function.

On (Weak)

The printer uses this function to print data only when the data quality is acceptable.

On (Strong)

The printer always uses this function to print data.

»» Important

- When using this function, the print quality may drop depending on the print data.

Unit of Print Data Processing

Selects the processing unit of the print data to be sent to the printer.

Select **Recommended** under normal circumstances.

»» Important

- A large amount of memory may be used for certain settings.
Do not change the setting if your computer has a small amount of memory.

Stamp dialog box

Depending on the environment, **Stamp** may not be available.

The **Stamp** dialog box allows you to print a stamp over or behind the document pages. In addition to the pre-registered ones, you can register and use your original stamp.

Stamp

Stamp printing is a function that prints a stamp over a document.

Check this check box and select a title from the list to print a stamp.

Define Stamp...

Opens the [Stamp Settings dialog box](#).

You can check the details of a selected stamp or save a new stamp.

Place stamp over text

Sets how the stamp is to be printed over the document.

Check the **Stamp** check box to enable this.

Check this check box to print a stamp over the printed document page. The printed data may be hidden behind the stamp.

Uncheck this check box to print the document data over the stamp. The printed data will not be hidden behind the stamp. However, the sections of the stamp that are overlapped by the document may be hidden.

Stamp first page only

Selects whether the stamp is to be printed on the first page only or on all pages when the document has two or more pages.

Check the **Stamp** check box to enable this.

Check this check box to print a stamp on the first page only.

Stamp Tab

The Stamp tab allows you to set the text and bitmap file (.bmp) to be used for a stamp.

Preview Window

Shows the status of the stamp configured in each tab.

Stamp Type

Specifies the stamp type.

Select **Text** to create a stamp with characters. Select **Bitmap** to create with a bitmap file. Select **Date/Time/User Name** to display the creation date/time and user name of the printed document.

The setting items in the **Stamp** tab change depending on the selected type.

- For **Text** registration, the characters must already be entered in **Stamp Text**. If necessary, change the **TrueType Font**, **Style**, **Size**, and **Outline** settings. You can select the color of the stamp by clicking **Select Color....**
- For **Bitmap**, click **Select File...** and select the bitmap file (.bmp) to be used. If necessary, change the settings of the **Size** and **Transparent white area**.

- For **Date/Time/User Name**, the creation date/time and user name of the printed object are displayed in **Stamp Text**. If necessary, change the settings of **TrueType Font**, **Style**, **Size**, and **Outline**. You can select the color of the stamp by clicking **Select Color....**

When **Stamp Type** is **Text** or **Date/Time/User Name**

Stamp Text

Specifies the stamp text string.

Up to 64 characters can be entered.

For **Date/Time/User Name**, the creation date/time and user name of the printed object are displayed in **Stamp Text**.

TrueType Font

Selects the font for the stamp text string.

Style

Selects the font style for the stamp text string.

Size

Selects the font size for the stamp text string.

Outline

Selects a frame that encloses the stamp text string.

If a large font size is selected for **Size**, characters may extend outside of the stamp border.

Color/Select Color...

Shows the current color for the stamp.

To select a different color, click **Select Color...** to open the **Color** dialog box, and select or create a color you wish to use as a stamp.

When **Stamp Type** is **Bitmap**

File

Specifies the name of the bitmap file to be used as the stamp.

Select File...

Opens the dialog box to open a file.

Click this button to select a bitmap file to be used as a stamp.

Size

Adjusts the size of the bitmap file to be used as a stamp.

Moving the slider to the right increases the size, moving the slider to the left decreases the size.

Transparent white area

Specifies whether to make white-filled areas of the bitmap transparent.

Check this check box to make white-filled areas of the bitmap transparent.

»» Note

- Click **Defaults** to set **Stamp Type** to text, **Stamp Text** to blank, **TrueType Font** to Arial, **Style** to Regular, **Size** to 36 points, **Outline** unchecked, and **Color** to gray with the RGB values (192, 192, 192).

Placement Tab

The Placement tab allows you to set the position where the stamp is to be printed.

Preview Window

Shows the status of the stamp configured in each tab.

Position

Specifies the stamp position on the page.

Selecting **Custom** from the list allows you to enter values for the **X-Position** and **Y-Position** coordinates directly.

You can also change the stamp position by dragging the stamp in the preview window.

Rotation

Specifies the angle of rotation for the stamp. The angle can be set by entering the number of degrees.

Negative values rotate the stamp clockwise.

»» Note

- **Rotation** is enabled only when **Text** or **Date/Time/User Name** is selected for **Stamp Type** on the **Stamp** tab.

»» Note

- Click **Defaults** to set the stamp position to **Center** and the rotation to "0."

Save settings Tab

The **Save settings** tab allows you to register a new stamp or delete an unnecessary stamp.

Title

Enter the title to save the stamp you created.

Up to 64 characters can be entered.

»» Note

- Spaces, tabs, and returns cannot be entered at the beginning or end of a title.

Stamps

Shows a list of saved stamp titles.

Specify a title to display the corresponding stamp in **Title**.

Save/Save overwrite

Saves the stamp.

Enter a title in **Title**, and then click this button.

Delete

Deletes an unnecessary stamp.

Specify the title of an unnecessary stamp from the **Stamps** list, and click this button.

Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order

You can also set the number of copies on the **Basic Settings** tab.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Specify the number of copies to be printed

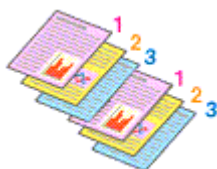
For **Copies** on the **Page Setup** tab, specify the number of copies to be printed.

3. Specify the print order

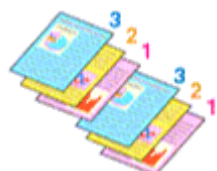
Check the **Print from Last Page** check box when you want to print from the last page in order, and uncheck the check box when you want to print from the first page.

Check the **Collate** check box when you are printing multiple copies of a document and want to print out all pages in each copy together. Uncheck this check box when you want to print all pages with the same page number together.

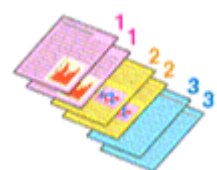
• **Print from Last Page:** ☒ / **Collate:** ☒



• **Print from Last Page:** ☐ / **Collate:** ☒



• **Print from Last Page:** ☒ / **Collate:** ☐



• **Print from Last Page:** ☐ / **Collate:** ☐



4. Click **OK**

When you perform print, the specified number of copies will be printed with the specified printing order.

Important

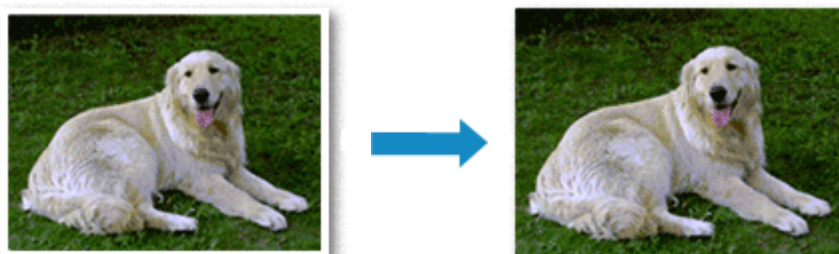
- When the application software that you used to create the document has the same function, specify the settings on the printer driver. However, if the print results are not acceptable, specify the function settings on the application software. When you specify the number of copies and the printing order with both the application software and this printer driver, the number of copies may be multiplied numbers of the two settings or the specified printing order may not be enabled.

Note

- By setting both **Print from Last Page** and **Collate**, you can perform printing so that papers are collated one by one starting from the last page.

Perform Borderless Printing

The borderless printing function allows you to print data without any margin by enlarging the data so that it extends slightly off the paper. In standard printing, margins are created around the document area. However, in borderless printing function, these margins are not created. When you want to print data such as a photo without providing any margin around it, set borderless printing.



You can also set borderless printing on the **Basic Settings** Tab.

»» Note

- You can also set **Magnification level for borderless** on the operation panel of the printer, but the settings on the printer driver will be prioritized.

Setting Borderless Printing

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Set borderless printing

Add a checkmark to **Borderless Printing** on the **Page Setup** tab.

Click **OK** when the confirmation message appears.

When a message prompting you to change the media type appears, select a media type from the list and click **OK**.

3. Check the paper size

Check the **Page Size** list. When you want to change it, select another page size from the list. The list displays only sizes that can be used for borderless printing.

4. Adjust the amount of extension from the paper

If necessary, adjust the amount of extension using the **Amount of Extension** slider.

Moving the slider to the right increases the amount extending off the paper, and moving the slider to the left decreases the amount.

It is recommended to set the slider at the second position from the right for most cases.



»» Important

- When the **Amount of Extension** slider is set to the rightmost position, the back side of the paper may become smudged.

5. Click OK

When you perform print, the data is printed without any margins on the paper.

»» Important

- When a page size that cannot be used for borderless printing is selected, the size is automatically changed to the valid page sizes for borderless printing.
- Depending on the type of the media used during borderless printing, the print quality may deteriorate at the top and bottom of the sheet or stains may form.
- When the ratio of the height to the width differs from the image data, a portion of the image may not be printed depending on the size of the media used.
In this case, crop the image data with an application software according to the paper size.

»» Note

- When **Plain Paper** is selected for **Media Type** on the **Media/Quality** tab, borderless printing is not recommended. Therefore, the message for media selection appears.
When you are using plain paper for test printing, select **Plain Paper**, and click **OK**.

Expanding the Range of the Document to Print

Setting a large amount of extension allows you to perform borderless printing with no problems. However, the portion of the document extending off the paper range will not be printed and for this reason, the subjects around the perimeter of a photo may not be printed.

When you are not satisfied with the result of borderless printing, reduce the amount of extension. The extension amount decreases as the **Amount of Extension** slider is moved to the left.

»» Important

- When the amount of extension is decreased, an unexpected margin may be produced on the print, depending on the size of the paper.

»» Note

- When the **Amount of Extension** slider is set to the leftmost position, image data will be printed in the full size. If you set this when printing the address side of a postcard, the postal code of the sender is printed in the correct position.
- When **Preview before printing** is checked on the **Media/Quality** tab, you can confirm whether there will be no margin before printing.
- To perform borderless full-page printing on **Matte Photo Paper**, **Premium Fine Art Rough**, or **Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte A** go to the **Page Setup** tab, display the **Print Options** dialog box, and change the [Cancel the safety margin regulation for paper size](#) setting.

Page Layout Printing

The page layout printing function allows you to print more than one page image on a single sheet of paper.



1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Set page layout printing

Select a page layout number from **1 on 1** to **16 on 1** from the **Page Layout** list on the **Page Setup** tab. The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.

3. Select the print paper size

Select the size of the paper loaded in the printer from the **Printer Paper Size** list.

4. Set the number of pages to be printed on one sheet and the page order

If necessary, click **Preferences...**, specify the following settings in the **Page Layout Printing** dialog box, and click **OK**.

Page Order

To change the page arrangement order, select a placement method from the list.

Page Border

To print a page border around each document page, check this check box.

Exclude single page documents from Page Layout Printing

If you add a checkmark, single-page documents are printed on a single sheet without performing Page Layout Printing.

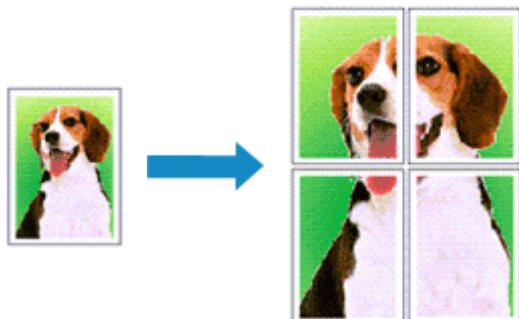
5. Complete the setup

Click **OK** on the **Page Setup** tab.

When you perform print, the specified number of pages will be arranged on each sheet of paper in the specified order.

Tiling/Poster Printing

The tiling/poster printing function allows you to enlarge image data, divide it into several pages, and print these pages on separate sheets of paper. You can also paste the pages together to create a large print like a poster.



Setting Tiling/Poster Printing

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Set tiling/poster printing

Select from **Poster (1 x 2)** to **Poster (4 x 4)** from the **Page Layout** list on the **Page Setup** tab. The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.

3. Select the print paper size

Select the size of the paper loaded in the printer from the **Printer Paper Size** list.

4. Set the number of image divisions and the pages to be printed

If necessary, click **Preferences...**, configure the required settings, and then click **OK**.

Print "Cut/Paste" in margins

To leave out words "Cut" and "Paste," uncheck this check box.

»»» Note

- Depending on the environment of the printer driver you are using, this function may not be available.

Print "Cut/Paste" lines in margins

To leave out cut lines, uncheck this check box.

Print page range

Specifies the printing range. Select **All** under normal circumstances.

To reprint only a specific page, select **Pages** and enter the page number you want to print. To specify multiple pages, enter the page numbers by separating them with commas or by entering a hyphen between the page numbers.

»»» Note

- You can also specify the print range by clicking the pages in the settings preview.

5. Complete the setup

Click **OK** on the **Page Setup** tab.

When you perform print, the document will be divided into several pages during printing.

Printing Only Specific Pages

If ink becomes faint or runs out during printing, you can reprint only the specific pages by following the procedure below:

1. Set the print range

In the settings preview on the left of the **Page Setup** tab, click the pages that do not need to be printed.

The pages that were clicked are deleted, and only the pages to be printed are displayed.

▶▶▶ Note

- Click the deleted pages to display them again.
- Right-click the settings preview to select **Print all pages** or **Delete all pages**.

2. Complete the setup

After completing the page selection, click **OK**.

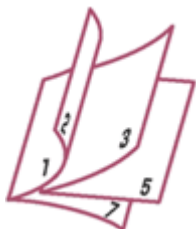
When you perform print, only specified pages will be printed.

▶▶▶ Important

- Since tiling/poster printing enlarges the document when printing it, the print results may become coarse.

Booklet Printing

The booklet printing function allows you to print data for a booklet. Data is printed on both sides of the paper. This type of printing ensures that pages can be collated properly, in page number order, when the printed sheets are folded and stapled at the center.



1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Set booklet printing

Select **Booklet Printing (Manual)** from **1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing** on the **Page Setup** tab. The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the window.

3. Select the print paper size

Select the size of the paper loaded in the printer from the **Printer Paper Size** list.

4. Set the margin for stapling and the margin width

Click **Preferences...** and specify the binding method and margin for the finished booklet in the [Booklet Printing dialog box](#), and then click **OK**.

5. Complete the setup

Click **OK** on the **Page Setup** tab.

When you print, the document will be printed on one side of a sheet of paper. When the printing of one side is complete, set the paper correctly by following the message, and then press **OK** button on the printer.

When the printing of the other side is complete, fold the paper at the center of the margin and make a booklet.

Important

- If you want to select **Booklet Printing (Manual)**, select **Plain Paper** for **Media Type** on the **Media/Quality** tab.

Note

- The stamp is not printed on the inserted blank sheets with the **Insert blank page** function of booklet printing.

Duplex Printing



You can also set duplex printing in the **Basic Settings** tab.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Set duplex printing

Select **2-sided Printing (Manual)** from **1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing** on the **Page Setup** tab.

3. Select the layout

Select the layout you want to use from the **Page Layout** list.

4. Specify the side to be stapled

The best **Binding Location** is selected automatically from the **Orientation** and **Page Layout** settings. To change the setting, select another stapling side from the **Binding Location** list.

5. Set the margin width

If necessary, click **Specify Margin...** and set the margin width, and then click **OK**.

6. Complete the setup

Click **OK** on the **Page Setup** tab.

When you perform print, the document is first printed on one side of a sheet of paper. After one side is printed, reload the paper correctly according to the message.

Then tap **Start print** on the printer operation panel to print the opposite side.

Setting Up Envelope Printing

1. [Load envelope](#) on the printer

2. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

3. Select the media type

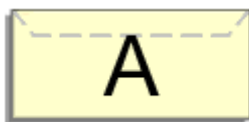
Select **Envelope** from **Profiles** on the **Basic Settings** tab.

4. Select the paper size

When the **Envelope Size Setting** dialog box is displayed, select the envelope size you want to use, and then click **OK**.

5. Set the orientation

To print the addressee horizontally, select **Landscape** for **Orientation**.



▶▶▶ Note

- If **Envelope Com 10**, **Envelope DL**, **Yougata 4 4.13"x9.25"**, or **Yougata 6 3.86"x7.48"** is selected for **Printer Paper Size**, the printer rotates the paper 90 degrees to the left to print, regardless of the **Rotate 90 degrees left when orientation is [Landscape]** setting for **Custom Settings** in the [Maintenance tab](#).

6. Select the print quality

For **Quality**, select the quality according to your purpose.

7. Click **OK**

When you perform print, the information is printed on the envelope.

▶▶▶ Important

- When you perform envelope printing, guide messages are displayed.
To hide the guide messages, check the **Do not show this message again** check box.
To show the guide again, click the **View Printer Status** button on the **Maintenance** tab, and start the Canon IJ Status Monitor.
Then click **Envelope Printing** from **Display Guide Message** of the **Option** menu to enable the setting.

Printing on Postcards

1. [Load postcard](#) on the printer

2. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

3. Select commonly used settings

Display the **Basic Settings** tab, and for **Profiles**, select **Standard**.

4. Select the paper size

For **Printer Paper Size**, select **Hagaki 100x148mm** or **Hagaki 2 200x148mm**.

»»» Important

- Return postcards can be used only when you print them from the computer.
- When printing a return postcard, always set the paper size to **Hagaki 2 200x148mm** from your application software or the printer driver.
- Do not fold the return postcard. If a crease is formed, the printer will not be able to feed the postcard properly, and this condition will cause line shifts or a paper jam.
- With return postcards, borderless printing cannot be used.

5. Select the media type

For **Media Type**, select **Hagaki A**, **Ink Jet Hagaki**, **Hagaki K**, or **Hagaki**.

»»» Important

- This printer cannot print on postcards that have photos or stickers attached.
- You will get cleaner printing if you print the message side first and then print the address side.
- The paper settings on the printer driver are different, depending on whether you are printing on the address side or the message side.

For details about the paper information to be registered to the printer driver and on the printer, see the following:

- [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Media Type\)](#)
- [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Paper Size\)](#)

6. Set the print orientation

To print the address horizontally, set **Orientation** to **Landscape**.

7. Select the print quality

For **Quality**, select the quality according to your purpose.

8. Click **OK**

When you perform printing, the data will be printed onto the postcard.

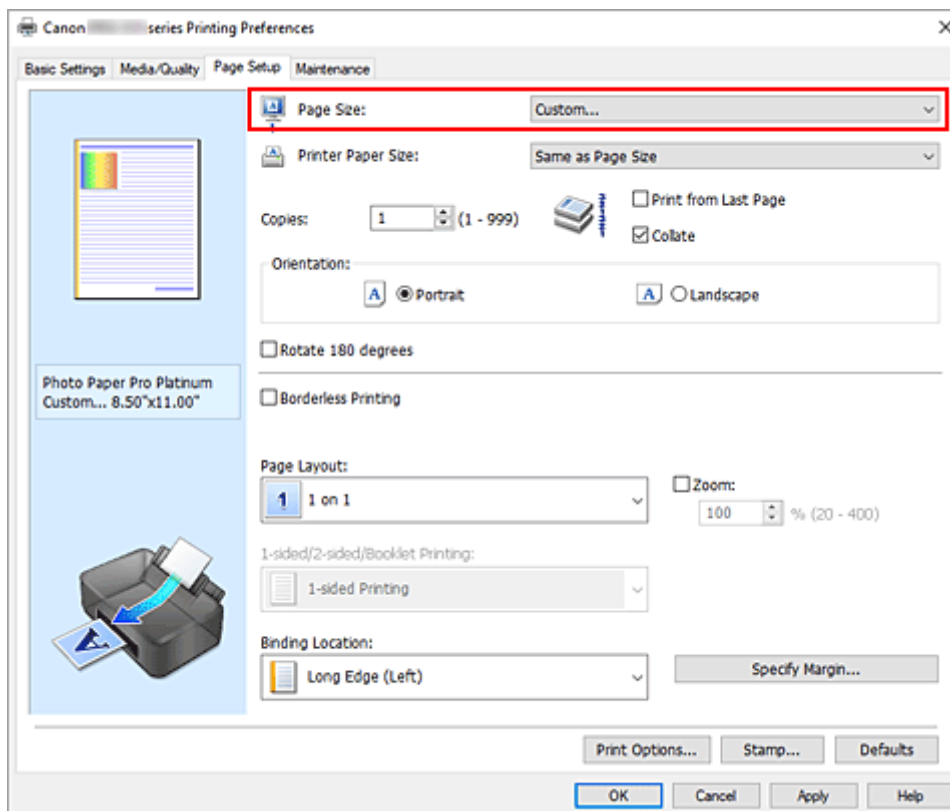
Setting Paper Dimensions (Custom Size)

You can specify the height and width of paper when its size cannot be selected from the **Page Size**. Such a paper size is called "custom size."

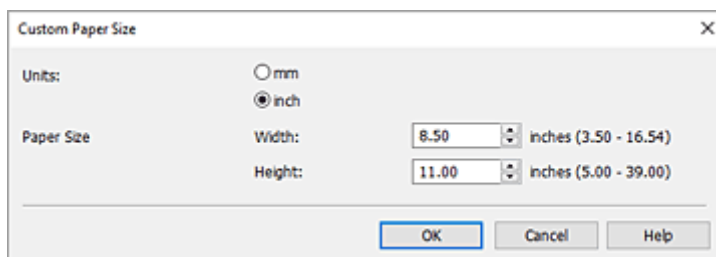
You can also set a custom size in **Printer Paper Size** on the **Basic Settings** tab.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Select the paper size

Select **Custom...** for **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** tab.



The **Custom Paper Size** dialog box opens.



3. Set the custom paper size

Specify **Units**, and enter the **Width** and **Height** of the paper to be used. Then click **OK**.

4. Complete the setup

Click **OK** on the **Page Setup** tab.

When you perform print, the data is printed with the specified paper size.

»» Note

- If the application software that created the document has a function for specifying height and width values, use the application software to set the values. If the application software does not have such a function or if the document does not print correctly, perform the above procedure from the printer driver to set the values.
- Printing may be disabled depending on the size of the specified user-defined media.
For information about printable sizes for user-defined media, see "[Media Types You Can Use](#)."
- If the paper settings in the printer driver differ from the paper information registered on the printer, an error may occur. For instructions on what to do if an error occurs, see "[Register Paper Information](#)."
For details about the paper information to be registered on the printer, see the following:
 - [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Media Type\)](#)
 - [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Paper Size\)](#)

Overview of the Printer Driver

- **Canon IJ Printer Driver**
 - Opening Printer Driver's Setup Screen
- **Canon IJ Status Monitor**
 - Checking Ink Status from Your Computer
- **Instructions for Use (Printer Driver)**
- **Canon IJ Preview**
- **Updating Media Information in Printer Driver**
- **Deleting the Undesired Print Job**
- **Maintenance Tab Description**
- **Canon IJ Status Monitor Description**
- **Canon IJ Preview Description**

Canon IJ Printer Driver

The Canon IJ printer driver (simply called printer driver below) is software that you install onto your computer so that it can communicate with the printer.

The printer driver converts the print data created by your application software into data that your printer can understand, and sends the converted data to the printer.

Because different models support different print data formats, you need a printer driver for the specific model you are using.

Installing the Printer Driver

To install the printer driver, install the driver from the Setup CD-ROM or our website.

Specifying the Printer Driver

To specify the printer driver, open the **Print** dialog box of the application software you are using, and select "Canon XXX" (where "XXX" is your model name).

Displaying the Manual from the Printer Driver

To display the description of a setup tab from the printer driver's setup screen, click **Help** on that tab.

Related Topic

➡ [Opening Printer Driver's Setup Screen](#)

Opening Printer Driver's Setup Screen

You can display the printer driver's setup screen from your application software or by clicking the printer icon.

Displaying the Printer Driver's Setup Screen from Your Application Software

Perform this procedure to set up the print settings during printing.

1. Select print command from application software

In general, select **Print** on the **File** menu to open the **Print** dialog box.

2. Select your printer model, and click **Preferences** (or **Properties**)

The printer driver's setup screen appears.

▶▶▶ Note

- Depending on the application software you are using, the command and menu names, and the number of steps may vary. For details, refer to the operating instructions of your application software.

Displaying the Printer Driver's Setup Screen by Clicking the Printer Icon

From the setup screen you can perform printer maintenance operations such as print head cleaning, or set print settings to be shared by all application software.

The following instructions are shown using screens displayed in Windows 11 as an example.

1. Select the **Settings -> Bluetooth & devices -> Printers & scanners**

2. Click your model name icon, and then select **Printing preferences** from the displayed menu

The printer driver setup window appears.

▶▶▶ Note

- If you're using Windows 10 or earlier, follow the steps below to display the printer driver settings screen.

1. Select the **Control Panel -> Hardware and Sound -> Devices and Printers**

2. Right-click your model name icon, and then select **Printing preferences** from the displayed menu

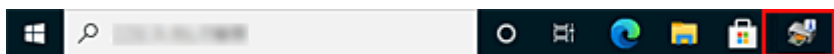
Opening the printer driver setup window through **Printer properties** displays such tabs regarding the Windows functions as the **Ports** (or **Advanced**) tab. Those tabs do not appear when opening through **Printing preferences** or application software. For tabs regarding Windows functions, refer to the user's manual for the Windows.

Canon IJ Status Monitor

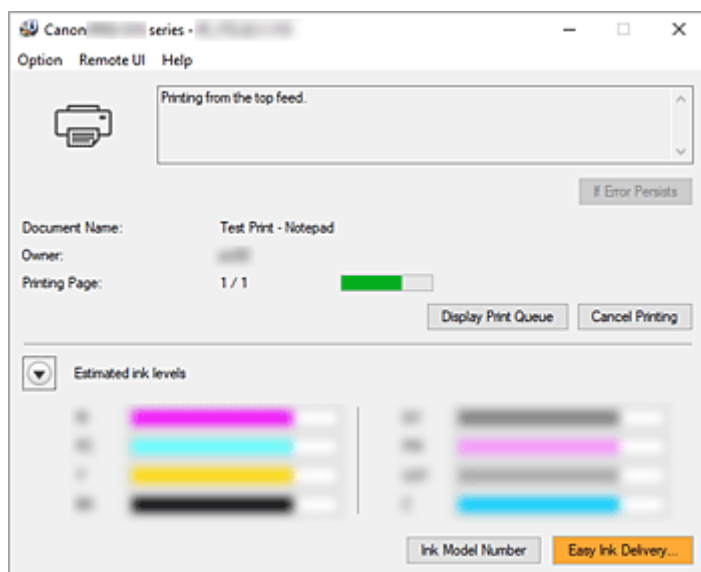
The Canon IJ Status Monitor displays the printer status and the printing progress. The printer status is shown by the images, icons, and messages in the status monitor.

Launching the Canon IJ Status Monitor

The Canon IJ Status Monitor launches automatically when print data is sent to the printer. When launched, the Canon IJ Status Monitor appears as a button on the task bar.



Click the button of the status monitor displayed on the task bar. The Canon IJ Status Monitor appears.



Note

- To open the Canon IJ Status Monitor when the printer is not printing, open the [printer driver setup window](#) and click **View Printer Status** on the **Maintenance** tab.
- The information displayed on the Canon IJ Status Monitor may differ depending on the country or region where you are using your printer.

When Errors Occur

The Canon IJ Status Monitor is automatically displayed if an error occurs (e.g., if the printer runs out of paper or if the ink is low).

In such cases, take the appropriate action as described.

Related Topic

➔ [Canon IJ Status Monitor Description](#)

Checking Ink Status from Your Computer

You can check the remaining ink level and the ink tank types for your model.

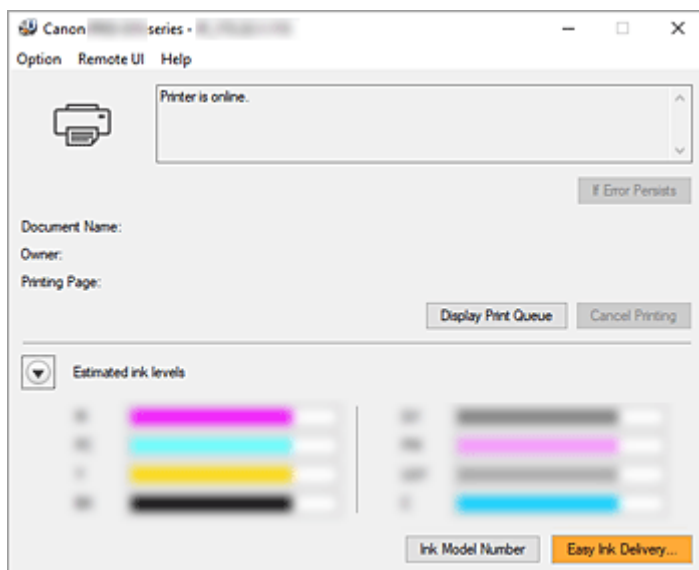
1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Launching the Canon IJ Status Monitor

On the **Maintenance** tab, click **View Printer Status**.

3. Display **Estimated ink levels**

Ink status is displayed as an illustration.



▶▶▶ Note

- When you print on A3 paper or larger paper sizes, the ink may run out before printing is finished or the printing may become faint or streaky (with white lines).

Instructions for Use (Printer Driver)

This printer driver is subject to the following restrictions. Keep the following points in mind when using the printer driver.

Restrictions on the Printer Driver

- Depending on the document type to be printed, the paper feed method specified in the printer driver may not operate correctly.
If this happens, open the [printer driver setup window](#) from the **Print** dialog box of the application software, and check the setting in the **Paper Source** field on the **Media/Quality** tab.
- With some applications, the **Copies** setting in the **Page Setup** tab of the printer driver may not be enabled.
In this case, use the copies setting in the **Print** dialog box of the application software.
- If the selected **Language** in the **About** dialog box of the **Maintenance** tab does not match the operating system interface language, the printer driver setup window may not be displayed properly.
- Do not change the **Advanced** tab items of the printer properties. If you change any of the items, you will not be able to use the following functions correctly.
Also, if **Print to file** is selected in the **Print** dialog box of the application software and with applications that prohibit EMF spooling, the following functions will not operate.
 - **Preview before printing** on the **Media/Quality** tab
 - **Prevention of Print Data Loss** in the **Print Options** dialog box on the **Page Setup** tab
 - **Booklet Printing (Manual)** in **1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing** on the **Page Setup** tab
 - **Print from Last Page**, **Collate**, **Specify Margin...**, and **Stamp...** on the **Page Setup** tab
- Since the resolution in the preview display differs from the printing resolution, text and lines in the preview display may appear different from the actual print result.
- With some applications, the printing is divided into multiple print jobs.
To cancel printing, delete all divided print jobs.
- If image data is not printed correctly, display the **Print Options** dialog box from the **Page Setup** tab and change the setting of **Disable ICM required from the application software**. This may solve the problem.
- If you are using a model that has a card slot, the card slot of the printer may become inaccessible. In such cases, restart the printer or turn it off and reconnect the USB cable.

Points to Note About Applications with Restrictions

- There are following restrictions in Microsoft Word (Microsoft Corporation).
 - When Microsoft Word has the same printing functions as the printer driver, use Word to specify them.
 - When a setting from **2 on 1** to **16 on 1** or **Zoom** is used for **Page Layout** on the **Page Setup** tab of the printer driver, the document may not print normally in certain versions of Word.
 - When **Page Size** in Word is set to "XXX Enlarge/Reduce," the document may not print normally in certain versions of Word.
If this happens, follow the procedure below.
 1. Open Word's **Print** dialog box.

2. Open the [printer driver setup window](#), and on the **Page Setup** tab, set **Page Size** to the same paper size that you specified in Word.
 3. Set **Booklet Printing (Manual)** in **Page Layout** or **1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing** according to your requirements.
 4. Click **OK** to close the window.
 5. Without starting printing, close the **Print** dialog box.
 6. Open Word's **Print** dialog box again.
 7. Open the printer driver setup window and click **OK**.
 8. Start printing.
- If bitmap printing is enabled in Adobe Illustrator (Adobe Incorporated), printing may take time or some data may not be printed. Print after unchecking the **Bitmap Printing** check box in the **Print** dialog box.

Canon IJ Preview

The Canon IJ Preview is an application software that displays what the print result will look like before a document is actually printed.

The preview reflects the information that is set within the printer driver and allows you to check the document layout, print order, and number of pages. You can also change the media type and paper source settings.

When you want to display a preview before printing, open the [printer driver setup window](#), click the **Media/Quality** tab, and check the **Preview before printing** check box.

When you do not want to display a preview before printing, uncheck the check box.

Related Topic

➡ [Preventing Printing Errors](#)

Updating Media Information in Printer Driver

This function gets the latest media information from the printer and updates the media information in the printer driver.

When the media information is updated, the media displayed for **Media Type** on the **Media/Quality** tab is updated to the latest information.

The procedure for updating media information is described below.



Update Media Information

1. Open printer driver setup screen
2. On **Maintenance** tab, click **Update Media Information**

The **Update Media Information** dialog box appears.

When media information on the driver cannot be successfully updated, click **Initial Check Items** and check the content that is displayed.

3. Update media information

By following the dialog instructions, check that the printer is on, and then click **Start**.

After checking whether or not the printer media information needs to be updated, a message will be displayed.

If the printer media information is up to date, click **OK** and finish updating media information.

If the information needs to be updated, follow the below steps to do so:

4. Update media information

When a confirmation message appears, click **OK**.

The printer driver media information will update.

»»» Important

- It may take some time to update the media information.

5. Finish updating media information

When a confirmation message appears, click **OK**.

The media information will be updated.

»»» Important

- Restart the printer driver after updating media information.

»»» Important

- Ensure that a user with administrative privileges carries out the media information update. Users other than administrators can check if a media information update is required, but cannot carry out the update itself.

- Do not change media information on the printer while you are updating media information on the driver.
- When you have added, deleted, or edited media using administrative tools (the Media Configuration Tool) but have not updated the media information, issues may arise such as the inability to print.

Deleting the Undesired Print Job

If the printer does not start printing, canceled or failed print job data may be remaining.
Delete the undesired print job by using the Canon IJ Status Monitor.

1. Display the [Canon IJ Status Monitor](#)

Click the icon of the Canon IJ Status Monitor displayed on the task bar.
The Canon IJ Status Monitor appears.

2. Display the print jobs

Click **Display Print Queue**.
The print queue window opens.

3. Delete the print jobs

Select the print jobs you want to delete, and select **Cancel** from the **Document** menu.
When the confirmation message appears, click **Yes**.

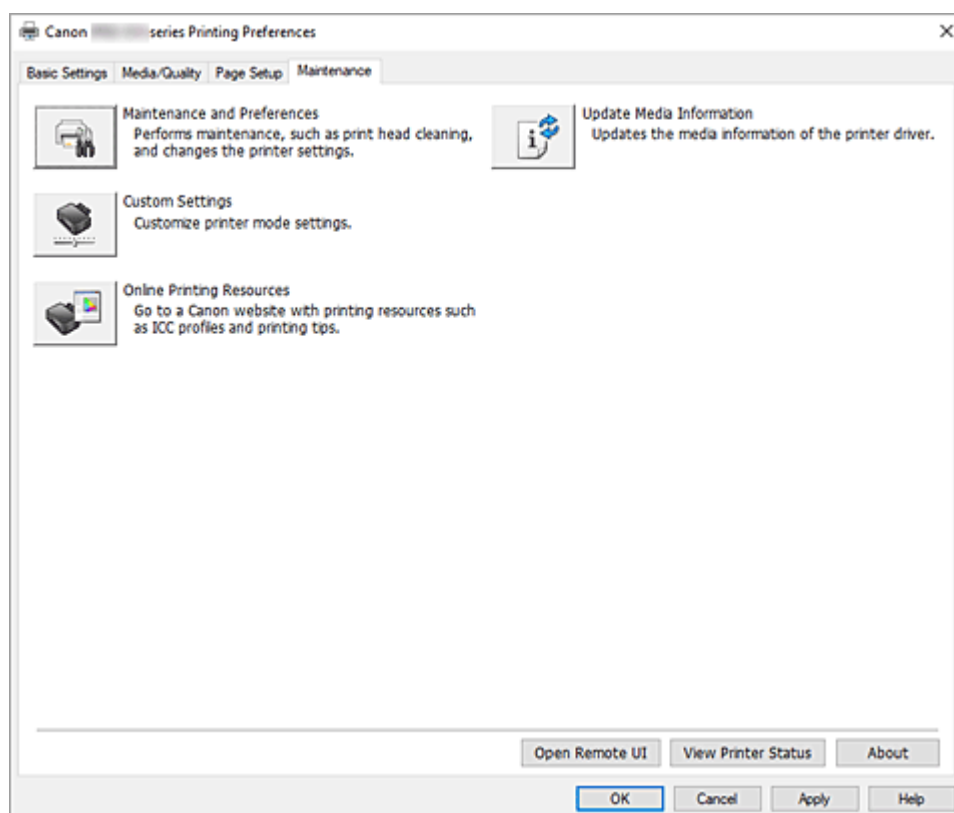
The deletion of the print job is complete.

»» Important

- Users who have not been granted access permission for printer management cannot delete the print job of another user.

Maintenance Tab Description

The **Maintenance** tab allows you to start the [Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool](#) or check the status of the printer.



Maintenance and Preferences

Canon IJ Printer Assistant Tool is started.

You can perform printer maintenance or change the settings of the printer.



Custom Settings

Opens the [Custom Settings dialog box](#).

Perform this function to change the settings of this printer.

►►► Note

- If the printer is off or if communication between the printer and the computer is disabled, an error message may appear because the computer cannot collect the printer status.
If this happens, click **OK** to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.



Online Printing Resources

Go to a Canon website with printing resources such as ICC profiles and printing tips.

»»» Important

- To use this function, you must have an Internet connection. Note that you are responsible for any Internet connection fees.



Update Media Information

Gets the latest media information from the printer and updates the media information in the printer driver.

When the media information is updated, the media displayed for **Media Type** on the **Media/Quality** tab is updated to the latest information.

When media information on the driver cannot be successfully updated, click [Initial Check Items](#) and check the content that is displayed.

Open Remote UI

Menu for performing printer maintenance and changing settings.

View Printer Status

Starts the Canon IJ Status Monitor.

Perform this function when you want to check the printer status and how a print job is proceeding.

About

Opens the [About dialog box](#).

The version of the printer driver, plus a copyright notice, can be checked.

In addition, the language to be used can be switched.

Custom Settings dialog box

When you click **Custom Settings**, the **Custom Settings** dialog box is displayed.

If necessary, switch between various modes of printer operation.

Rotate 90 degrees left when orientation is [Landscape]

On the **Page Setup** tab, you can change the rotation direction of the **Landscape** in the **Orientation**.

To rotate the print data 90 degrees to the left during printing, check this check box.

»»» Important

- Do not change this setting while the print job is displayed in the print wait list. Otherwise, characters may be omitted or the layout may become corrupt.

»»» Note

- If **Envelope Com 10**, **Envelope DL**, **Yougata 4 4.13"x9.25"**, or **Yougata 6 3.86"x7.48"** is selected for **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** tab, the printer rotates the paper 90 degrees to the left to print, regardless of the **Rotate 90 degrees left when orientation is [Landscape]** setting.

Do not detect mismatched paper settings when printing from a computer

When you print documents from your computer, the paper settings in the printer driver and the paper information registered on the printer do not match, this setting disables the message display and allows you to continue printing.

To enable detection of paper setting mismatches, uncheck this check box.

Disables paper width detection when printing from computer

Even if the paper width identified by the printer during printing from the computer differs from the paper width that was set in **Paper Size** on the **Page Setup** tab, this function disables the message display and allows you to continue printing.

To disable detection of the paper width during printing, check this check box.

Initial Check Items (Update Media Information)

Check that the printer is connected to the computer and that printer is turned on.

If you are unable to update media information, check the following points.

- Ensure that a user set with administrator privileges carries out the media information update. Users other than administrators can check if a media information update is required, but cannot carry out the update itself.
- Before updating media information, ensure you have added, edited, or deleted media information on the printer using the Media Configuration Tool.

Important

- It may take some time to update media information.
- Do not change media information on the printer while you are updating media information on the printer driver.

About dialog box

When you click **About**, the **About** dialog box is displayed.

This dialog box displays the version, copyright, and module list of the printer driver. You can select the language to be used and switch the language displayed in the setup window.

Modules

Lists the printer driver modules.

Language

Specifies the language you wish to use in the [printer driver setup window](#).

Important

- If the font for displaying the language of your choice is not installed in your system, the characters will be garbled.

Settings for Data Sending

If you click **Settings for Data Sending**, the **Settings for Data Sending** dialog box will be displayed.

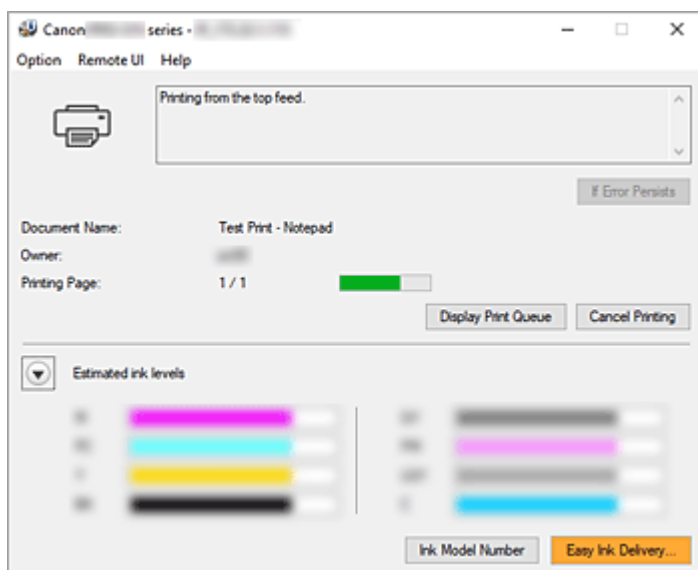
If it includes data you do not agree to sending, uncheck this check box.

Note

- Some printer functions can be set only from the **Maintenance** tab of **Printer properties**.

Canon IJ Status Monitor Description

The Canon IJ Status Monitor displays the printer status and the printing progress. The printer status is shown by the images, icons, and messages in the status monitor.



Features of the Canon IJ Status Monitor

The Canon IJ Status Monitor has the following functions:

Onscreen display of printer status

The status monitor displays the printer status in real-time.

You can check the progress of each document to be printed (print job).

Display of error content and correction procedure

The status monitor displays information on any errors that occur on the printer.

You can then immediately check what sort of action to perform.

Ink status display

Displays the ink status.

Ink tank types and ink levels can be confirmed.

Overview of the Canon IJ Status Monitor

The Canon IJ Status Monitor uses images, icons, and messages to display the printer status and the ink status.

During printing, you can check information about the document being printed and the print progress.

If an error occurs, the status monitor displays the error content and instructions on how to correct the error. Follow the message instructions.

Printer

Canon IJ Status Monitor shows an icon when a warning or error occurs to the printer.



: There is a warning.



: There has been an operator error.



: There is a notice about something other than a warning or an error.



: There has been an error which requires a service.

If Error Persists

If a warning or an error occurs, you can click the button.

A description of the warning or error will be displayed.

Document Name

Name of the document being printed.

Owner

Owner's name of the document being printed.

Printing Page

Page number of current page and the total page count.

Display Print Queue

The print queue, which controls the current document and documents waiting to be printed.

Cancel Printing

Cancels printing.

Estimated ink levels



Click (the disclosure triangle) to display a pictorial representation of the estimated ink level in the ink tank.

Also, if the remaining ink is low or empty, an icon or a message will appear (Ink level warning / Ink empty error).

Move the cursor onto the image to check detailed information such as the remaining ink levels and the names of ink tanks that the printer can use.

Ink Model Number

You can look up the correct ink tank for your printer.

Option Menu

If a printer message appears, select **Enable Status Monitor** to start the Canon IJ Status Monitor.

Select **Enable Status Monitor** to use the following commands:

Always Display Current Job

Displays the Canon IJ Status Monitor whenever a document is being printed.

Always Display on Top

Displays the Canon IJ Status Monitor in front of other windows.

Display Guide Message

Displays guide messages for complicated paper setting operations.

Envelope Printing

Displays a guide message when envelope printing starts.

To hide this guide message, select the **Do not show this message again** check box.

To display the guide message again, open the **Option** menu, select **Display Guide Message**, click **Envelope Printing**, and enable this setting.

Display Firmware Update Notifications

Displays firmware update notifications.

If there's a firmware update available, a dialog box is displayed when you start printing.

If you add a check mark to **Do not show this message again** in this dialog box, you can prevent it from displaying again.

Start when Windows is Started

Automatically starts the Canon IJ Status Monitor when Windows is started.

Remote UI menu

You are able to open the printer's Remote User Interface.

You are able to check the printer status and run maintenance functions on the printer when connected to and using it through a network.

Note

- When the printer is being used via USB connection **Remote UI** will not display.

Printer Information

Allows you to check detailed information, such as the printer status, the print progress, and remaining ink levels.

Maintenance

Allows you to run printer maintenance and change printer settings.

Download Security Certificate

Displays the **For secure communication** window.

This window allows you to download the route certificate, register it to the browser, and disable warning displays.

Help Menu

Select this menu to display Help information for the Canon IJ Status Monitor including version and copyright information.

Related Topic

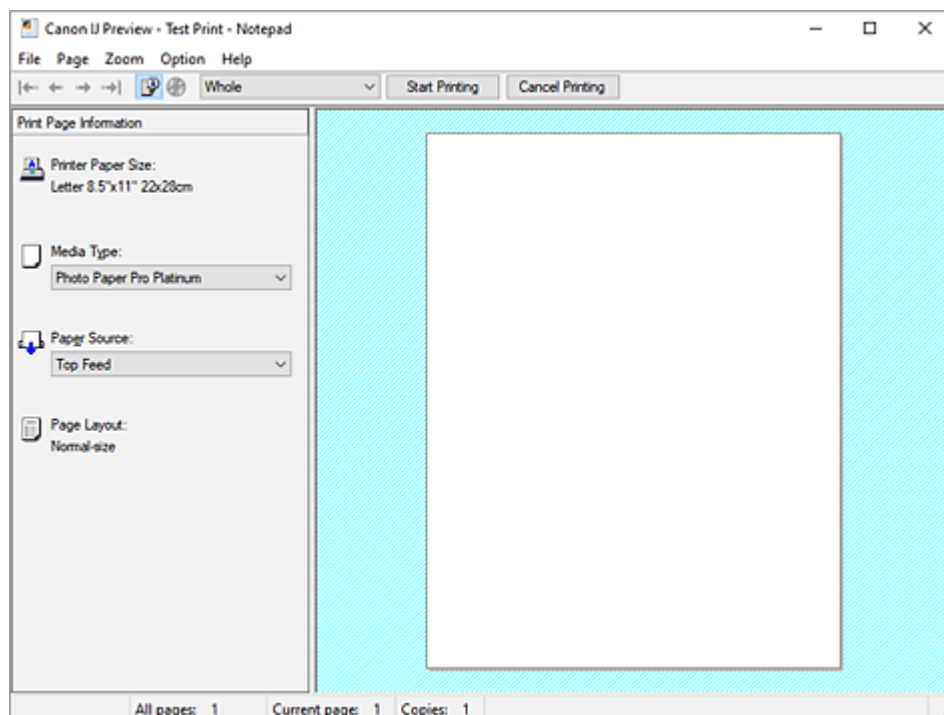
➡ [Canon IJ Status Monitor](#)

Canon IJ Preview Description

Canon IJ Preview is an application software that displays what the print result will look like before a document is actually printed.

The preview reflects the information that is set within the printer driver and allows you to check the document layout, print order, and number of pages. You can also change the media type and paper source settings.

When you want to display a preview before printing, open the [printer driver setup window](#), and check the **Preview before printing** check box on the **Media/Quality** tab.



File Menu

Selects the print operation.

Start Printing

Ends the Canon IJ Preview and then starts printing the document that is displayed on the preview screen.

This command has the same function as the **Start Printing** on the toolbar.

Cancel Printing

Ends the Canon IJ Preview and cancels the printing of the document that is displayed on the preview screen.

This command has the same function as the **Cancel Printing** on the toolbar.

Exit

Ends the Canon IJ Preview.

Page Menu

This menu includes the following commands to select page to be displayed.

All of these commands except **Page Selection...** can also be selected from the toolbar.

▶▶▶ Note

- If the pages are being spooled, the last spooled page becomes the last page.

- When the following functions are selected, the number of pages is the number of sheets to be used for printing, and not the number of pages in the original document created with the application software.
 - **2 on 1** to **Poster (4 x 4)** in **Page Layout** on the **Page Setup** tab
 - **2-sided Printing (Manual)** and **Booklet Printing (Manual)** in **1-sided/2-sided/Booklet Printing** on the **Page Setup** tab
- If duplex printing manually has been set, the front pages which will be printed first are all displayed together, and then the back pages are displayed.

First Page

Displays the first page of the document.

Previous Page

Displays the page located before the currently displayed page.

Next Page

Displays the page located after the currently displayed page.

Last Page

Displays the last page of the document.

Page Selection...

Displays the **Page Selection** dialog box.

This command allows you to specify the page number of the page to be displayed.

Zoom Menu

Selects the ratio of the actual size printed on the paper to the preview display size.

You can also select the ratio from the drop-down list box located on the toolbar.

Whole

Displays the entire page of data as one page.

50%

Reduces the displayed data to 50% of the actual size to be printed.

100%

Displays the data at the actual size to be printed.

200%

Enlarges the displayed data to 200% of the actual size to be printed.

400%

Enlarges the displayed data to 400% of the actual size to be printed.

Option Menu

This menu includes the following command:

Displays Print Page Information

Displays print setup information (including printer paper size, media type, and page layout) for each page at the left side of the preview screen.

This screen also allows you to change the media type and paper source settings.

Displays the printing area of the disc

Printable disc positions on the tray are displayed when printing disc labels.

You can check what area on the disc the document will be printed.

Help Menu

When you select this menu item, the Help window for Canon IJ Preview is displayed, and you can check the version and copyright information.

Start Printing button

Prints the documents selected in the document list.

The printed documents are deleted from the list, and when all documents are printed, the Canon IJ Preview closes.

Cancel Printing button

Ends the Canon IJ Preview, and cancels the printing of the document that is displayed on the preview screen.

You can click this button while spooling.

Print Page Information Screen

Displays print setup information for each page at the left side of the preview screen.

This screen also allows you to change the media type and paper source settings.

»»» Important

- If the media type and paper source are set from the application software, those settings have priority and the changed settings may become ineffective.

Printer Paper Size

Displays the paper size of the document to be printed.

Media Type

You can select the media type of the document to be printed.

Paper Source

You can select the paper source of the document to be printed.

Page Layout

Displays the page layout of the document to be printed.

Updating the Driver

Drivers include a printer driver and MP Drivers. The MP Drivers include a printer driver, ScanGear (scanner driver), and fax driver.

By updating the Driver to the latest version of the Driver, unresolved problems may be solved.

»» Important

- Check the following if you want to install or delete drivers.
 - Log on as a user who has the administrator account.
 - Terminate all running applications.

- [Installing the Driver](#)
- [Deleting the Unnecessary Driver](#)

Installing the Driver

1. Turn on the printer

2. Start the installer

Double-click the icon of the downloaded file.
The installation program starts.

3. Install the driver

Take the appropriate action as described on the screen.

4. Complete the installation

Click **Exit**.

Depending on the environment you are using, a message prompting you to restart the computer may be displayed. To complete the installation properly, restart the computer.

»» Important

- You can download the driver for free, but any Internet access charges incurred are your responsibility.

Deleting the Unnecessary Driver

The printer driver which you no longer use can be deleted.

1. Start the uninstaller

Select **Control Panel -> Programs -> Programs and Features**.

From the program list, select "Canon XXX Printer Driver/MP Drivers" (where "XXX" is your model name) and then click **Uninstall**.

The confirmation window for uninstalling the model appears.

2. Perform the uninstaller

Click **Start**. When the confirmation message appears, click **Yes**.

When all the files have been deleted, click **Complete**.

The deletion of the Driver is complete.

Printing from Your Computer (macOS)

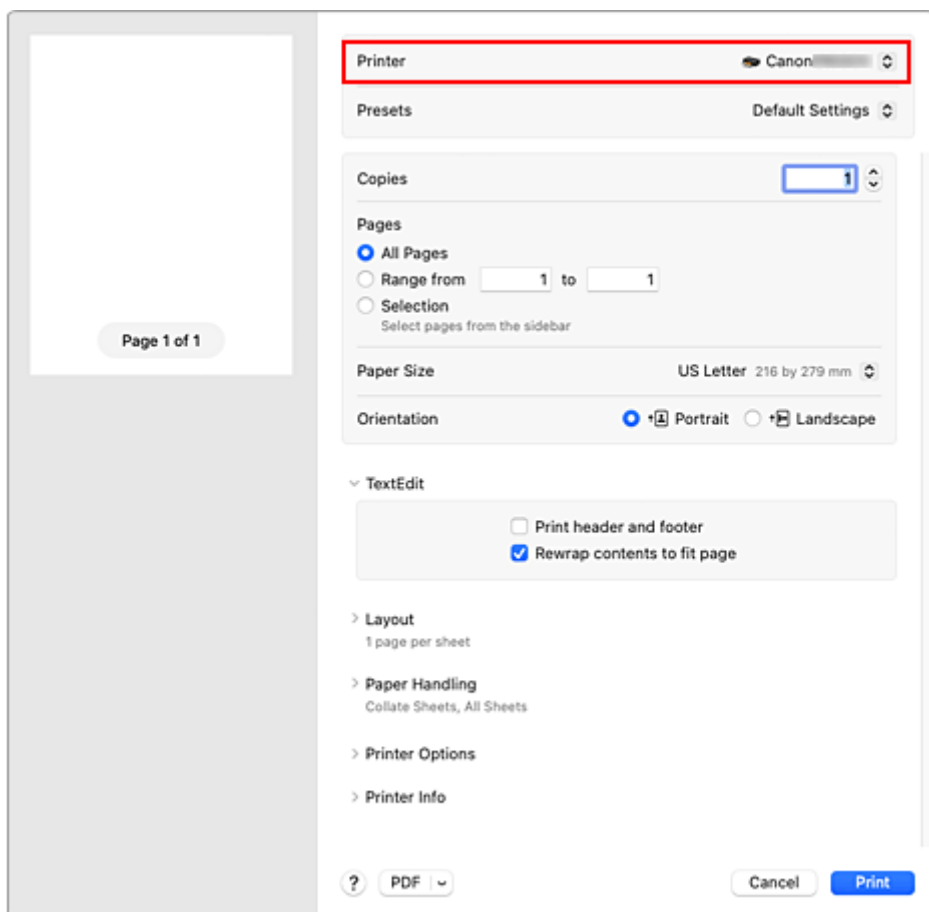
- **Basic Printing Setup** 📌 **Basic**
- **Various Printing Methods**
- **Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data**
- **Printing Using AirPrint**

Basic Printing Setup

The simple setup procedure for carrying out appropriate printing on this printer is as follows:

1. [Check that printer is turned on](#)
2. [Load paper](#) in printer
3. Select the printer

Select your model from the **Printer** list in the [Print Dialog](#).

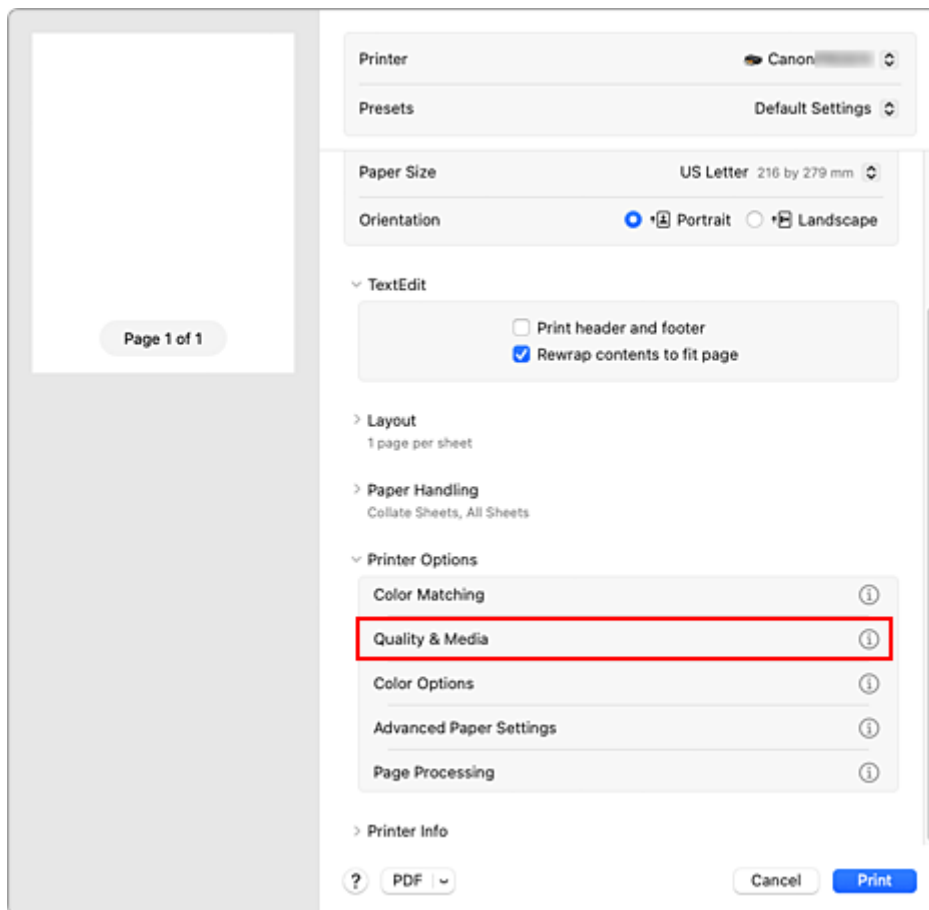


4. Select the paper size

For **Paper Size**, select the paper size to be used.

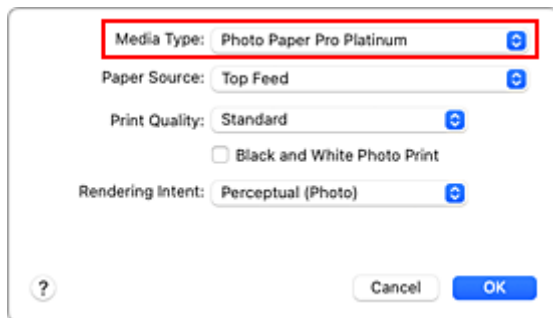
If necessary, set the number of copies, the pages to be printed, and the orientation.

5. Select **Quality & Media** from **Printer Options**



6. Select the media type

For **Media Type**, select the same paper type loaded in the printer.



»»» Important

- In the **Presets** section, click **Save Current Settings as Preset...** to [register the specified settings](#).

7. Select the paper source

For **Paper Source**, select the setting that matches your purpose.

8. Select the print quality

For **Print Quality**, select **High**, **Standard** or **Fast** according to your purpose.

»» Important

- The print quality settings that can be selected may differ depending on a printing profile.

9. Complete the setup

Click **Print**.

When you execute print, the document will be printed in accordance with the type and size of the media.

»» Important

- If you are performing large-format printing, make sure that the ink tank has plenty of remaining ink.
- To print by using the manual feed tray, perform the operation according to the instructions displayed on the screen.

»» Note

- For details about the paper information to be registered to the printer driver and on the printer, see the following:
 - [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Media Type\)](#)
 - [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Paper Size\)](#)

Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Media Type)

When you use this printer, selecting a media type and [paper size](#) that matches the print purpose will help you achieve the best print results.

Depending on the media type you are using, specify the media type settings on the printer driver or the printer's operation panel as described below.

Canon genuine papers (Document Printing)

Media name <Model No.>	Media Type in the printer driver	Paper information registered on the printer
Canon Red Label Superior <WOP111>	Plain Paper	Plain paper
Canon Océ Office Colour Paper <SAT213>	Plain Paper	Plain paper
High Resolution Paper <HR-101N>	High Resolution Paper	High-Res Paper

Canon genuine papers (Photo Printing)

Media name <Model No.>	Media Type in the printer driver	Paper information registered on the printer
Photo Paper Plus Glossy II <PP-201/PP-208/PP-301>	Photo Paper Plus Glossy II A	Plus Glossy II A
Photo Paper Pro Platinum <PT-101>	Photo Paper Pro Platinum	Pro Platinum
Photo Paper Pro Luster <LU-101>	Photo Paper Pro Luster	Pro Luster
Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss <SG-201>	Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss	Plus Semi-gloss
Glossy Photo Paper "Everyday Use" <GP-501>	Glossy Photo Paper A	Glossy A
Photo Paper Glossy <GP-701>	Glossy Photo Paper A	Glossy A
Matte Photo Paper <MP-101>	Matte Photo Paper	Matte
Premium Fine Art Rough <FA-RG1>	Premium Fine Art Rough	Fine Art Rough
Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte <PM-101>	Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte A	ProPremiumMatteA

Canon genuine papers (Original Product)

Media name <Model No.>	Media Type in the printer driver	Paper information registered on the printer
Dark Fabric Iron-on Transfers <DF-101>	Dark Fabric Iron-on Transfers	DF Iron Transfers

Commercially available papers

When you use non-genuine Canon paper, you can print easily by using the existing settings that have been prepared in the printer driver and on the printer's operation panel.

Media name	Media Type in the printer driver	Paper information registered on the printer
Plain Paper (including recycled paper)	Plain Paper	Plain paper
Japanese Paper Washi	Japanese Paper Washi *1	Japanese Paper
Lightweight Photo Paper (Approximately 0.1mm to less than 0.3mm)	Lightweight Photo Paper *1	Light Photo Paper
Heavyweight Photo Paper (Approximately 0.3mm to less than 0.6mm)	Heavyweight Photo Paper *1	Heavy Photo Paper
Heavyweight Fine Art Paper (Approximately 0.1mm to less than 0.3mm)	Heavyweight Fine Art Paper *1	Heavy Art Paper
Extra Heavyweight Fine Art Paper (Approximately 0.3mm to less than 0.6mm)	Extra Heavyweight Fine Art Paper *1	EX Hvy Art Paper
Canvas	Canvas *1	Canvas
Envelopes	Envelope	Envelope
T-Shirt Transfers	T-Shirt Transfers	T-Shirt Transfers
Greeting Cards	Inkjet Greeting Card	IJ Greeting Card
Card Stock	Card Stock	Card stock

*1 To improve the print quality and paper feeding when using paper other than Canon genuine paper, create a custom paper by using Media Configuration Tool and add it to the printer.
These media types can be used as custom paper standards.

»»» Note

- If you have added a new media type using the Media Configuration Tool, open the Canon IJ Printer Utility2, and from **Media Information**, select **Update Media Information (Correct Media Information)** and carry out a driver media information update.
When printing on a newly added media type, change both the media settings on the printer driver and the registered media information on the printer to those of the new media.
- When you set **Media Type** to **Matte Photo Paper**, **Premium Fine Art Rough**, or **Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte A** from the **Quality & Media** menu displayed from **Printer Options** of the print dialog, we recommend that you set **Paper Size** to **4 x 6**, **L**, or "XXX Margin 25" in the print dialog.
For information about printable ranges, refer to "[Printing Area](#)."

Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer (Paper Size)

When you use this printer, selecting a paper size that matches the print purpose will help you achieve the best print results.

You can use the following paper sizes on this printer.

Paper Size in the printer driver	Paper information registered on the printer
4 x 6	KG/4"x6"(10x15)
5 x 7	2L/5"x7"(13x18)
7 x 10	7"x10"(18x25cm)
8 x 10	8"x10"(20x25cm)
10"x12" 25x30cm	10"x12"(25x30cm)
210x594mm	210x594mm
210x594mm Margin 25	210x594mm
A3	A3
A3 (Margin 25)	A3
A3+ 13"x19" 33x48cm	A3+
A3+ (Margin 25)	A3+
A4	A4
A4 (Margin 25)	A4
A5	A5
Envelope #10	Envelope Com 10
Envelope Choukei 3	Nagagata 3
Envelope Choukei 4	Nagagata 4
Envelope DL	Envelope DL
Envelope You4	Yougata 4
Envelope You6	Yougata 6
JIS B4	B4
JIS B5	B5
L	L(89x127mm)

Postcard	Hagaki
Postcard Double	Hagaki 2
Square 5"x5" 13x13cm	Square 5"
Square 12"x12" 30x30cm	12"x12"(30x30cm)
Tabloid	11"x17"(28x43cm)
Tabloid (Margin 25)	11"x17"(28x43cm)
US Legal	Legal
US Letter	Letter
US Letter (Margin 25)	Letter
Custom Size	Others

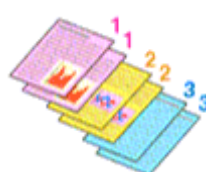
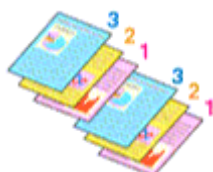
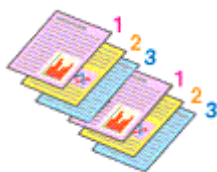
Various Printing Methods

- **Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order**
- **Perform Borderless Printing**
- **Scaled Printing**
- **Page Layout Printing**
- **Setting Up Envelope Printing**
- **Printing on Postcards**
- **Setting Paper Dimensions (Custom Size)**
- **Setting the Stapling Margin**
- **Scaling the Printing to Fit the Paper Size**
- **Switching the Paper Source to Match the Purpose**

Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order

Collate Sheets + Reverse Collate Sheets + Normal

Reverse

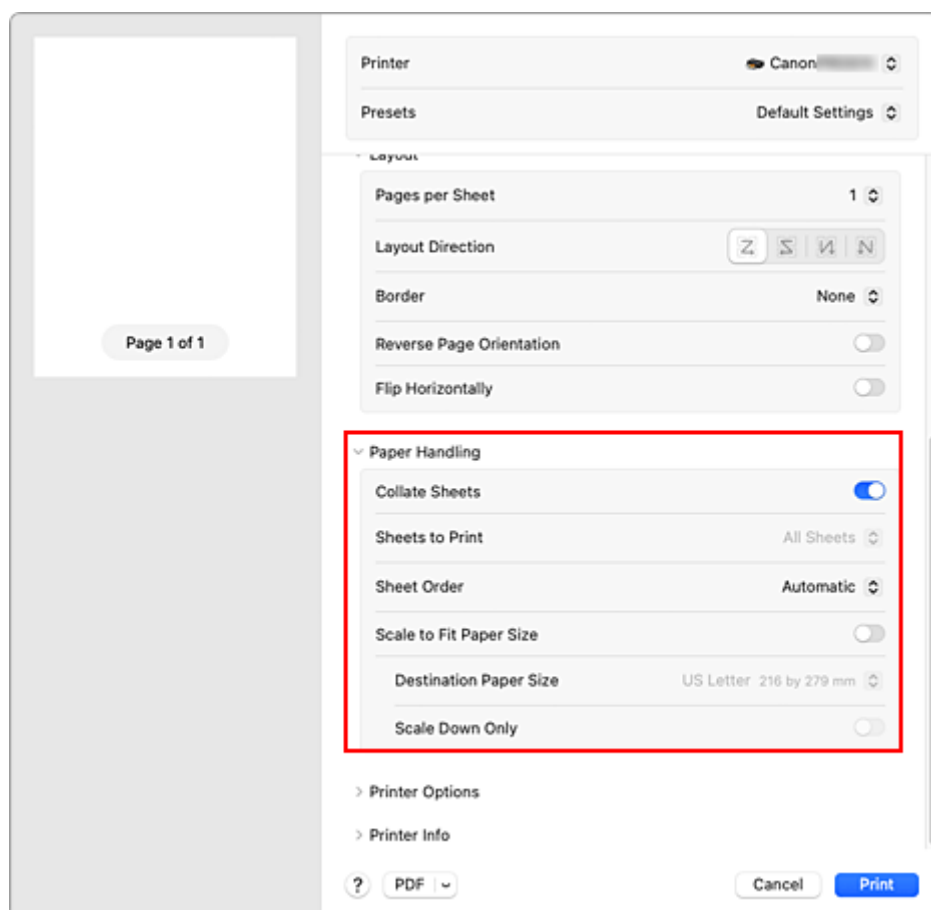


The procedure for specifying the number of copies and printing order is as follows:

1. Specify the number of copies to be printed

Specify the number of copies to print from the **Copies** in the [Print Dialog](#).

2. Select **Paper Handling**



3. Turn on **Collate Sheets** when you are specifying multiple copies in the **Copies** box

Turn on **Collate Sheets** to print all the pages of a single copy together.

Turn off this setting to print all pages with the same page number together.

4. Specify the print order

Check **Page Order**.

When you select **Reverse**, printing starts from the last page.

When you select **Automatic** or **Normal**, printing starts from the first page.

5. Complete the setup

Click **Print**.

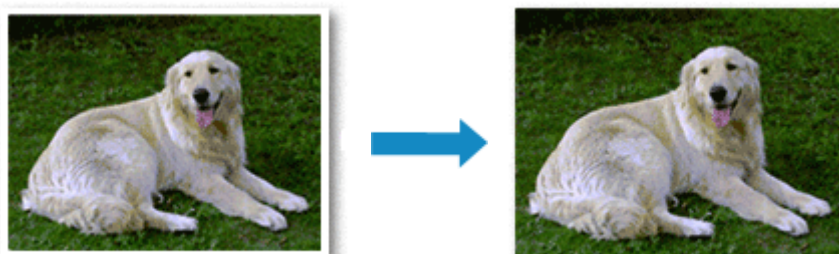
When you execute print, the specified number of copies will be printed with the specified printing order.

Important

- When the application software that you used to create the document has the same function, specify the settings on the printer driver. However, if the print results are not acceptable, specify the function settings on the application software. When you specify the number of copies and the printing order with both the application software and this printer driver, the number of copies may be multiplied numbers of the two settings or the specified printing order may not be enabled.

Perform Borderless Printing

The borderless printing function allows you to print data without any margin by enlarging the data so that it extends slightly off the paper. In standard printing, margins are created around the document area. However, in borderless printing function, these margins are not created. When you want to print data such as a photo without providing any margin around it, set borderless printing.



The procedure for performing borderless printing is as follows:

»» Note

- You can also set **Magnification level for borderless** on the operation panel of the printer, but the settings on the printer driver will be prioritized.

Setting Borderless Printing

1. Select sheet size for borderless printing

Select "XXX Borderless" for **Paper Size** from the print dialog.

2. Select **Page Processing** from **Printer Options**

3. Adjust the amount of extension from the paper

If necessary, adjust the amount of extension using the **Borderless Extension** slider.

Moving the slider to the right increases the amount extending off the paper, and moving the slider to the left decreases the amount.

It is recommended to set the slider at the second position from the right for most cases.

»» Important

- When the **Borderless Extension** slider is set to the rightmost position, the back side of the paper may become smudged.

4. Click **Print**

When you perform print, the data is printed without any margins on the paper.

»» Important

- Borderless printing only supports specific paper sizes. Make sure to select a paper size with the wording "Borderless" from the **Paper Size**.

- Print quality may deteriorate or the sheet may be stained at the top and bottom depending on the type of paper used.
- When the ratio of the height to the width differs from the image data, a portion of the image may not be printed depending on the size of the media used.
In this case, crop the image data with an application software according to the paper size.
- When scaled printing or page layout printing is enabled, you cannot perform borderless printing.

▶▶▶ Note

- If you set **Media Type** to the following paper types from the **Quality & Media** menu displayed from **Printer Options** of the print dialog, borderless full-page printing is not recommended.
 - Plain Paper
 - Matte Photo Paper
 - Premium Fine Art Rough
 - Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte A

Expanding the Range of the Document to Print

Setting a large amount of extension allows you to perform borderless printing with no problems. However, the portion of the document extending off the paper range will not be printed and for this reason, the subjects around the perimeter of a photo may not be printed.

When you are not satisfied with the result of borderless printing, reduce the amount of extension. The extension amount decreases as the **Borderless Extension** slider is moved to the left.

▶▶▶ Important

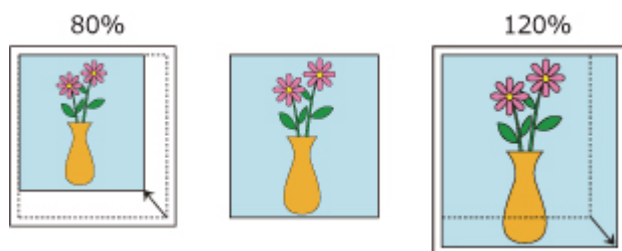
- When the amount of extension is decreased, an unexpected margin may be produced on the print, depending on the size of the paper.

▶▶▶ Note

- When the **Borderless Extension** slider is set to the leftmost position, image data will be printed in the full size.

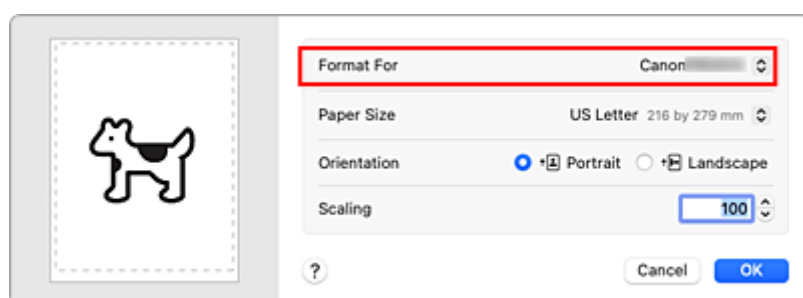
Scaled Printing

The procedure for printing a document with pages enlarged or reduced is as follows:



1. Select the printer

In the [Page Setup Dialog](#), select your model name from the **Format For** list.



2. Set scaled printing

Specify the scaling factor in the **Scaling** box, and click **OK**.

▶▶▶ Note

- Depending on the **Scaling** value that you set, an error message may be displayed.

3. Complete the setup

On the [Print Dialog](#), click **Print**.

When you execute print, the document will be printed with the specified scale.

▶▶▶ Important

- When the application software which you used to create the original has the scaled printing function, configure the settings on your application software. You do not need to configure the same setting in the Page Setup dialog.

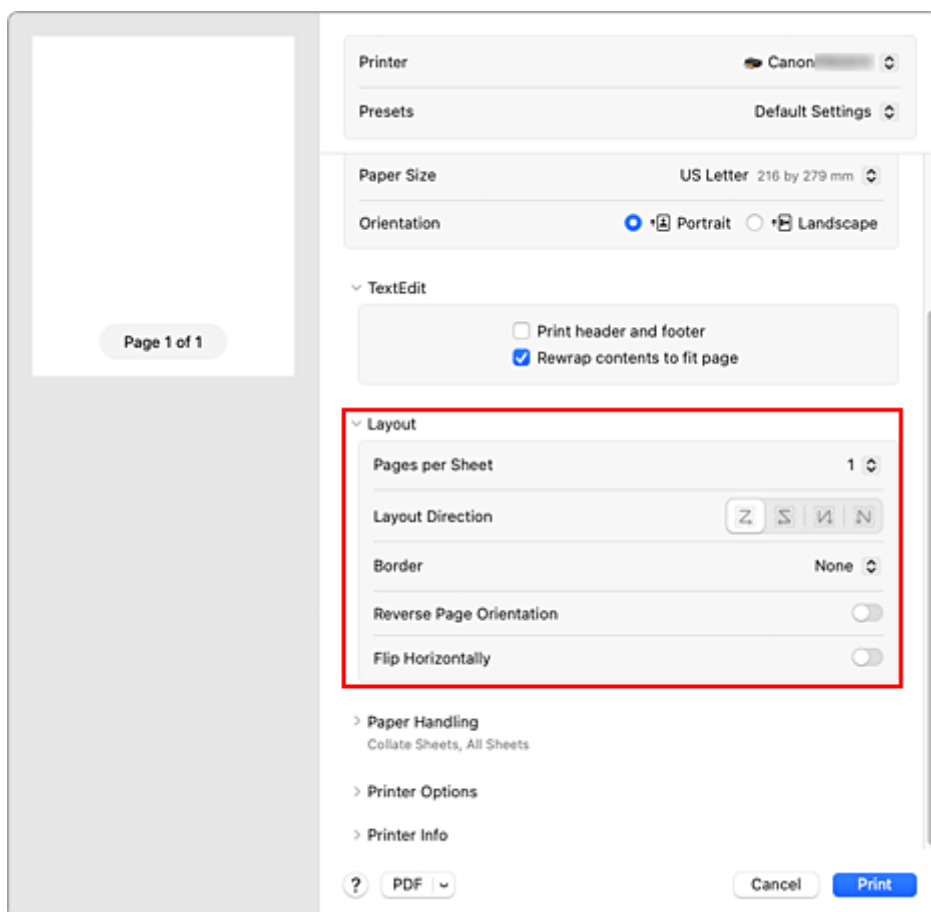
Page Layout Printing

The page layout printing function allows you to print more than one page image on a single sheet of paper.



The procedure for performing page layout printing is as follows:

1. Select **Layout** in the [Print Dialog](#)



2. Set the number of original you print on one page

In **Pages per Sheet**, specify the number of page you print on one page.

3. If necessary, set the following items

Layout Direction

To change the page placement order, select an icon from the list.

Border

To print a page border around each document page, select a type of page border.

Reverse Page Orientation

Turn this on to change the paper orientation.

Flip Horizontally

Turn this on to reverse left and right of the document.

4. Complete the setup

Click **Print**.

When you execute print, the specified number of pages will be arranged on each sheet of paper in the specified order.

Setting Up Envelope Printing

The procedure for performing envelope printing is as follows:

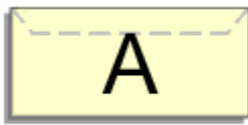
1. [Load envelope](#) into printer

2. Select paper size in [print dialog](#)

For **Paper Size**, select **Envelope #10**, **Envelope DL**, **Envelope You4**, or **Envelope You6**.

3. Set printing orientation

To print the addressee information horizontally, select Horizontal for **Orientation**. Then turn on **Reverse Page Orientation** from **Layout** in the Print dialog.



4. Select **Quality & Media** from **Printer Options**

5. Select media type

For **Media Type**, select **Envelope**.

6. Select print quality

For **Print Quality**, select the quality according to your purpose.

7. Click **Print**

When you perform printing, the information is printed on the envelope.

»» Important

- When printing on an envelope, always select the print settings from the print dialog.

Printing on Postcards

This section describes the procedure for printing on postcards.

1. [Load postcard](#) on the printer

2. Select paper size in the [Print Dialog](#)

Select **Postcard** or **Postcard Double** from the **Paper Size** menu.

»» Important

- Return postcards can be used only when you print them from the computer.
- When printing a return postcard, always set the paper size to **Postcard Double** from your application software or the printer driver.
- Do not fold the return postcard. If a crease is formed, the printer will not be able to feed the postcard properly, and this condition will cause line shifts or a paper jam.
- With return postcards, borderless printing cannot be used.

3. Select **Quality & Media** from **Printer Options**

4. Select the media type

For **Media Type**, select the same paper type loaded in the printer.

»» Important

- This printer cannot print on postcards that have photos or stickers attached.
- When printing on each side of a postcard separately, you will get cleaner printing if you print the message side first and then print the address side.
- The paper settings in the print dialog are different, depending on whether you are printing on the address side or the message side. For details about the paper information to be registered in the print dialog and on the printer, see the following:
 - [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Media Type\)](#)
 - [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Paper Size\)](#)

5. Click **Print**

The printer prints according to the specified settings.

»» Important

- If you check the **Do not show again** check box when a guide message is displayed before printing starts, this will stop any more guide messages from being displayed.

Setting Paper Dimensions (Custom Size)

You can specify the height and width of paper when its size cannot be selected from the **Paper Size** menu. Such a paper size is called "custom size."

The procedure for specifying a custom size is as follows:

1. Creating a new custom paper size

In the [Print Dialog](#), select **Manage Custom Sizes...** from **Paper Size**.

In the displayed dialog, click **+**.

Untitled will be added to the list.

2. Setting details about the custom paper size

Double-click **Untitled**, enter the name of the paper size you want to register, and specify the **Width** and **Height** of the paper.

Select **User Defined** or your model for **Margins**.

3. Registering the custom paper size

Click **OK**.

The custom size is registered.

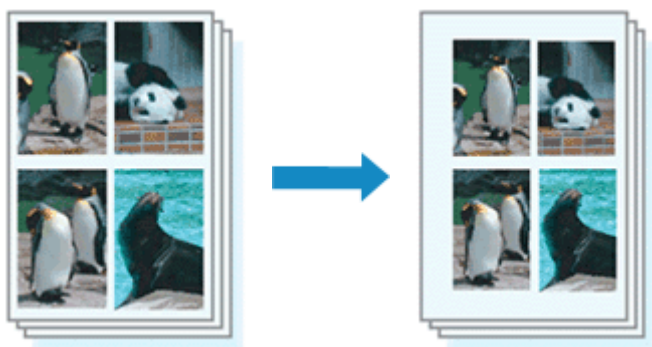
Important

- If the application software that created the document has a function for specifying height and width values, use the application software to set the values. If the application software does not have such a function or if the document does not print correctly, perform the above procedure from the printer driver to set the values.

Note

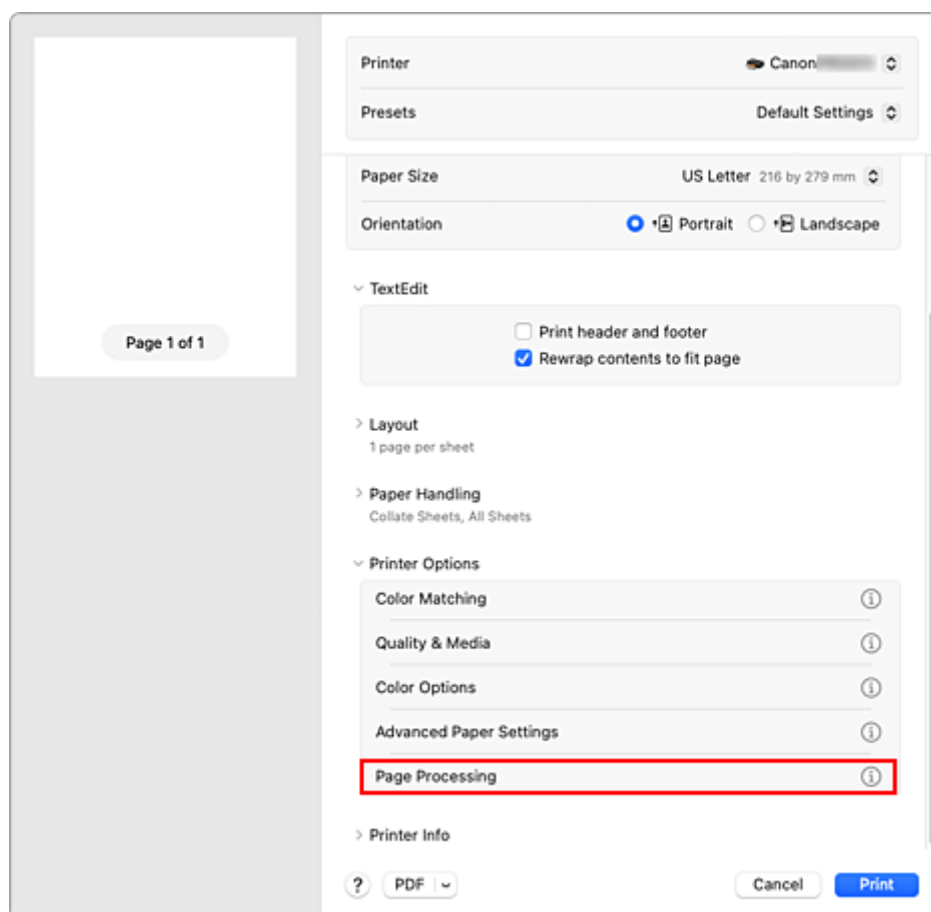
- To duplicate the registered paper size, select the paper size that you want to duplicate from the **Custom Paper Sizes** list, and click  **Duplicate**.
- To delete a registered paper size, select the paper size that you want to delete from the **Custom Paper Sizes** list, and click **-**.
- If the paper settings in the printer driver differ from the paper information registered on the printer, an error message may appear on the printer's operation panel. You can still print but you may not be able to obtain correct print results.

Setting the Stapling Margin



The procedure for setting the margin width and the staple side is as follows:

1. Select **Page Processing** from **Printer Options** in the [Print Dialog](#)



2. Set the margin width and the staple side

If necessary, set the **Margin** width, and select a stapling position from the **Stapling Side** list.

►►► Note

- The printer automatically reduces the print area depending on the staple position margin.

3. Click **Print**

When you perform print, the data is printed with the specified margin width and staple side.

Important

- When borderless printing is enabled, **Margin** and **Stapling Side** appear grayed out and are unavailable.

Scaling the Printing to Fit the Paper Size

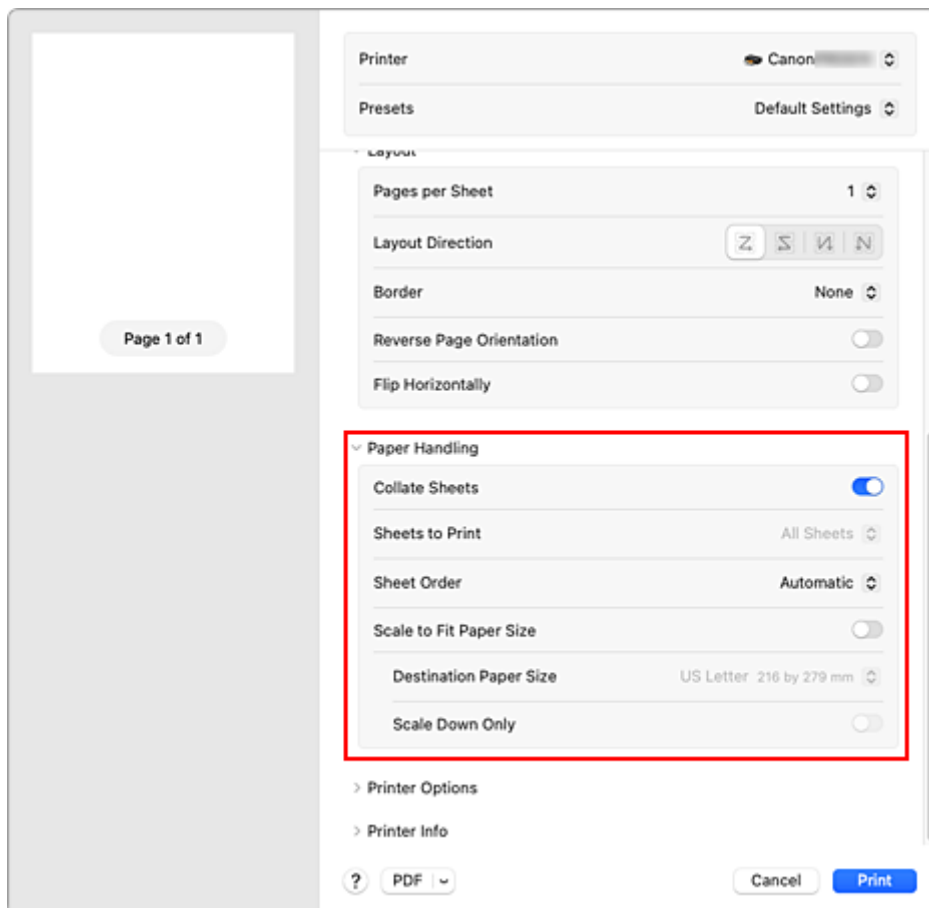


The procedure for printing a document that is automatically enlarged or reduced to fit the page size to be used is as follows:

1. Check the paper size

Check that the **Paper Size** in the [Print Dialog](#) is the same as the paper size that you set in the application software.

2. Select **Paper Handling** from the print dialog



3. Set the print paper size

Turn on **Scale to Fit Paper Size**. Then in **Destination Paper Size**, select the paper size that is actually loaded in the printer.

4. If necessary, turn on Scale Down Only

If you turn on **Scale Down Only**, the document will be reduced to fit the paper size when the document size is larger than the page size. The document will be printed in the original size when the document size is smaller than the page size.

5. Click Print

When printing, the document will be enlarged or reduced to fit the page size.

Switching the Paper Source to Match the Purpose

In this printer, there are two paper sources, a manual feed tray and a top feed.

You can facilitate printing by selecting a paper source setting that matches your media type or purpose.

The procedure for setting paper source is as follows:

1. Select **Quality & Media** from **Printer Options** in the [Print Dialog](#)

2. Select the media type

For **Media Type**, select the same paper type loaded in the printer.

3. Select the paper source

For **Paper Source**, select the item below that matches your purpose.

Manual Feed

Paper is supplied from the manual feed tray in the back.

»» Important

- When one of the following paper types is selected from **Media Type** menu of **Quality & Media**, paper cannot be supplied from the manual feed tray in the back.
 - Plain Paper
 - Envelope
 - Hagaki A
 - Ink Jet Hagaki
 - Hagaki K
 - Hagaki
 - High Resolution Paper
 - T-Shirt Transfers
- When one of the following paper types is selected for **Paper Size** on the Print dialog, paper cannot be supplied from the manual feed tray in the back.
 - 4 x 6
 - 5 x 7
 - 7 x 10
 - A5
 - Envelope #10
 - Envelope Choukei 3
 - Envelope Choukei 4
 - Envelope DL
 - Envelope You4
 - Envelope You6
 - JIS B5
 - L
 - Postcard
 - Postcard Double
 - Square 5"x5" 13x13cm

Top Feed

Paper is fed from the top feed.

►► Important

- When one of the following paper types is selected from the **Media Type** menu of the **Quality & Media**, paper cannot be supplied from the top feed.
 - **Heavyweight Photo Paper**
 - **Premium Fine Art Rough**
 - **Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte A**
 - **Extra Heavyweight Fine Art Paper**

4. Complete the setup

Click **Print**.

When you execute print, the printer uses the specified paper source to print the data.

►► Note

- If the paper settings in the print dialog differ from the paper information registered on the printer, an error may occur. For instructions on what to do if an error occurs, see "[Register Paper Information](#)."

For details about the paper information to be registered on the printer, see the following:

- [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Media Type\)](#)
- [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Paper Size\)](#)

Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data

- **Setting the Print Quality Level (Custom)**
- **Printing a Color Document in Monochrome**
- **Specifying Color Correction**
 - Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data
 - Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver
 - Printing with ICC Profiles (Specifying an ICC Profile from the Application Software)
 - Printing with ICC Profiles (Specifying an ICC Profile from the Printer Driver)
 - Interpreting the ICC Profile
- **Adjusting Tone**
- **Adjusting Color Balance**
- **Adjusting Brightness**
- **Adjusting Contrast**

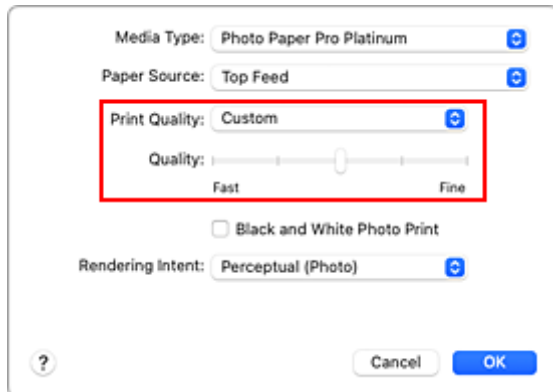
Setting the Print Quality Level (Custom)

The print quality level can be set in the **Custom**.

The procedure for setting the print quality level is as follows:

1. Select **Quality & Media** from **Printer Options** in the [Print Dialog](#)
2. Select the print quality

Select **Custom** for **Print Quality**.



3. Setting the print quality level

Move the **Quality** slider to select the print quality level.

»»» Important

- Certain print quality levels cannot be selected depending on the settings of media type.

4. Complete the setup

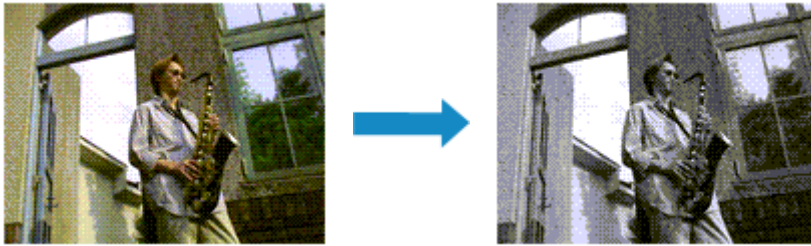
Click **Print**.

When you execute print, the image data is printed with the selected print quality level.

Related Topics

- ➡ [Specifying Color Correction](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Color Balance](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Brightness](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Contrast](#)

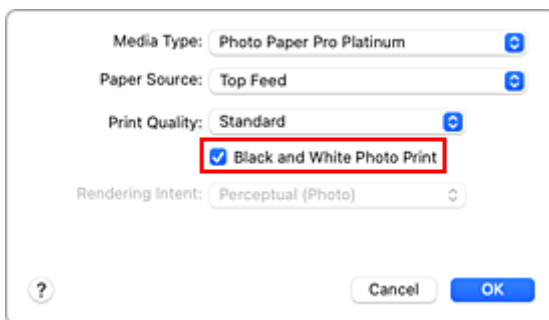
Printing a Color Document in Monochrome



The procedure for printing a color document in monochrome is as follows:

1. Select **Quality & Media** from **Printer Options** in the [Print Dialog](#)
2. Set black and white photo printing

Check the **Black and White Photo Print** check box.



3. Complete the setup

Click **Print**.

When you execute print, the document is converted to grayscale data. It allows you to print the color document in monochrome.

»» Note

- With **Black and White Photo Print**, inks other than black ink may be used as well.

Related Topic

➡ [Adjusting Tone](#)

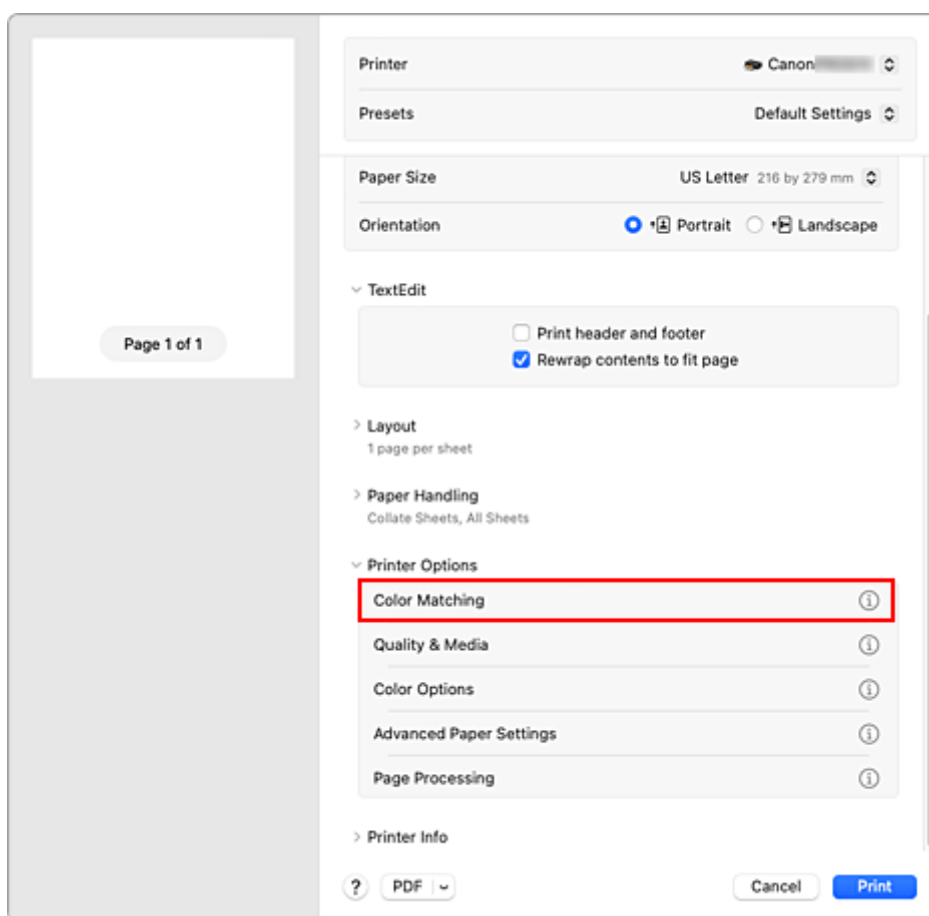
Specifying Color Correction

You can specify the color correction method suited to the type of document to be printed. Normally, when data is printed, the printer driver automatically adjusts the colors.

When you want to print by using the color space of the image data effectively or by specifying a printing ICC profile from your application software, select **ColorSync**. When you want to print by having the printer driver correct the colors, select **Canon Color Matching**.

The procedure for specifying color correction is as follows:

1. Select **Color Matching** from **Printer Options** in the [Print Dialog](#)



2. Select color correction

Select the item below that matches your purpose.

ColorSync

Perform color correction using ColorSync.

Canon Color Matching

The driver will perform necessary adjustments during printing.

For information about driver matching, see "[Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver](#)."

Important

- If you think that the colors displayed on the monitor are different from the printed results, go to **Quality & Media**, and then select **No Color Correction** in **Rendering Intent**.

3. Complete the setup

Click **Print**.

When you execute print, the document data is printed with the specified color correction.

Important

- Depending on the application software, when a printing ICC profile is specified from that application software, **Canon Color Matching** cannot be selected because **ColorSync** is selected automatically.
- The **Quality & Media** setting is necessary even when **ColorSync** or **Canon Color Matching** is selected.

Related Topics

- ⇒ [Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data](#)
- ⇒ [Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver](#)
- ⇒ [Printing with ICC Profiles \(Specifying an ICC Profile from the Application Software\)](#)
- ⇒ [Printing with ICC Profiles \(Specifying an ICC Profile from the Printer Driver\)](#)
- ⇒ [Interpreting the ICC Profile](#)

Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data

When people print images taken with digital cameras, they sometimes feel that the printed color tones differ from those of actual image or those displayed on the monitor.

To get the print results as close as possible to the desired color tones, you must select a printing method that is best suited to the application software used or to your purpose.

Color Management

Devices such as digital cameras, scanners, monitors, and printers handle color differently. Color management (color matching) is a method that manages device-dependent "colors" as a common color space.

For macOS, a color management system called "ColorSync" is built into the operating system. sRGB is one of the common color spaces that is frequently used.

ICC profiles convert device-dependent "colors" into a common color space. By using an ICC profile and carrying out color management, you can draw out the color space of the image data within the color reproduction area that the printer can express.

▶▶▶ Note

- Normally, image files are saved in JPEG format. Some digital cameras allow you to save images in a format called RAW. RAW data refers to an image saving format that requires a computer to develop the image. You can embed an input ICC profile tag into a RAW file by using special application software.

Selecting a Printing Method Suited to the Image Data

The recommended printing method depends on the color space of the image data or the application software to be used.

There are two typical printing methods.

Check the color space of the image data and the application software to be used, and then select the printing method suited to your purpose.

Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver

Describes the procedure for printing by using the color correction function of the printer driver.

Select this function when you want to print impressions that are close to those displayed on the monitor, for example, if you corrected the colors while checking the print image on the monitor.

Printing with ICC Profiles (Specifying an ICC Profile from the Application Software)

Describes the procedure for printing by using the color space of the image data effectively.

You can print with a common color space by setting up the application software and the printer driver so that the color management matches the input ICC profile of the image data.

The method for setting up the printer driver differs depending on the application software to be used.

Related Topic

➡ [Interpreting the ICC Profile](#)

Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver

To use printer driver matching when printing, turn on the printer driver's color correction function. Printer driver matching accurately applies the characteristics of data displayed on the monitor and allows you to obtain print results of impressions that are close to those displayed on the monitor.

Important

- When printing using printer driver matching, Canon recommends that you set the monitor and the environment light as follows:
 - Monitor
 - Color temperature: D50 (5000K)
 - Brightness: 100 to 120cd/m²
 - Gamma: 2.2
 - Environment light
 - Fluorescent light for D50 color evaluation (color temperature 5000K, high color rendering properties)
 - Brightness when looking at printed materials: 500 lx ± 125 lx

Note

- When printing from an application software that allows you to identify and specify ICC profiles, use an ICC profile for printing with that application software and select setting items that manage colors.

The procedure for adjusting colors with the printer driver is as follows:

1. Select **Color Matching** from **Printer Options** in the [Print Dialog](#)
2. Select color correction
Select **Canon Color Matching**.
3. Select **Quality & Media** from **Printer Options**
4. Select the rendering intent
Select **Perceptual (Photo)** in **Rendering Intent**.
5. Set the other items
From **Printer Options**, select **Color Options**. If necessary, adjust the color balance (**Cyan**, **Magenta**, **Yellow**) and adjust **Brightness**, and **Contrast** settings.
6. Complete the setup
Click **Print**.
When you execute print, the printer driver adjusts the colors when printing the data.

Related Topics

- ➡ [Setting the Print Quality Level \(Custom\)](#)
- ➡ [Specifying Color Correction](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Color Balance](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Brightness](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Contrast](#)

Printing with ICC Profiles (Specifying an ICC Profile from the Application Software)

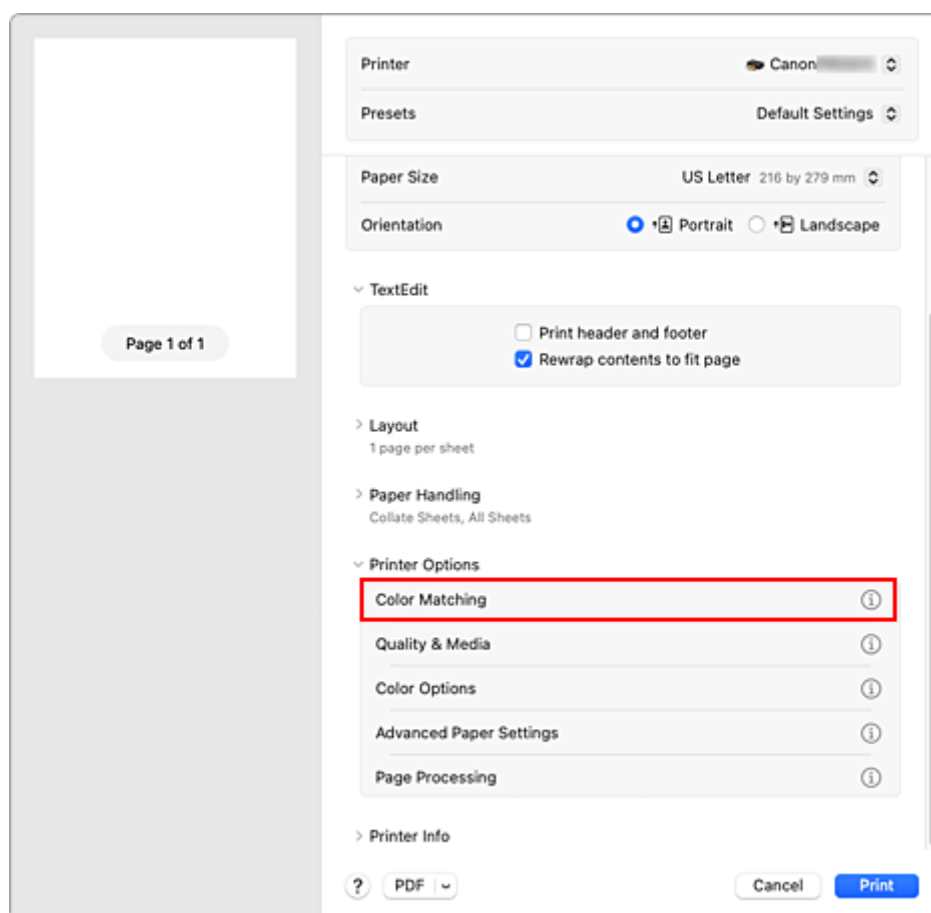
When you print from Adobe Photoshop, Canon Digital Photo Professional, or any application software that can identify input ICC profiles and allows you to specify such profiles, printer uses the color management system (ColorSync) built-into macOS when printing. The printer prints the editing and touch-up results of the application software and effectively uses the color space of the input ICC profile specified in the image data.

To use this printing method, use your application software to select color management items and specify an input ICC profile and a printing ICC profile in the image data.

Even if you print using a printing ICC profile that you created yourself or one for special Canon paper, be sure to select color management items from your application software.

For instructions, refer to the manual of the application software you are using.

1. Select **Color Matching** from **Printer Options** in the [Print Dialog](#)



2. Select color correction

Select **ColorSync**.

You can leave **Profile** set to **Automatic**.

»» Important

- Depending on the application software you use, you may not be able to select setting items other than **ColorSync**.

- If you choose a **Profile** setting other than **Automatic** or "Printing Paper ICC Profile", the printer will not be able to print with the correct colors.
- If you think that the colors displayed on the monitor are different from the printed results, go to **Quality & Media**, and then select **No Color Correction** in **Rendering Intent**.

3. Complete the setup

Click **Print**.

When you execute print, the printer uses the color space of the image data.

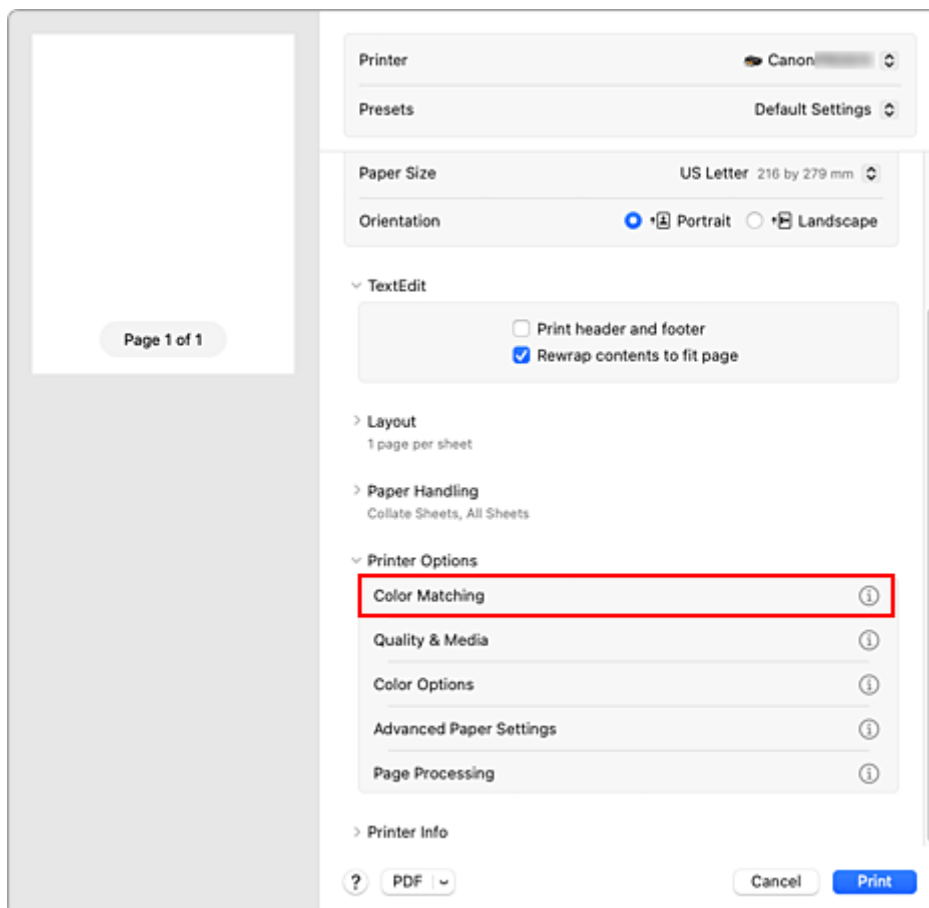
Related Topics

- ➡ [Setting the Print Quality Level \(Custom\)](#)
- ➡ [Specifying Color Correction](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Color Balance](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Brightness](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Contrast](#)

Printing with ICC Profiles (Specifying an ICC Profile from the Printer Driver)

Print from an application software that cannot identify or specify input ICC profiles by using the color space of the input ICC profile (sRGB) found in the data.

1. Select **Color Matching** from **Printer Options** in the [Print Dialog](#)



2. Select color correction

Select **ColorSync**.

You can leave **Profile** set to **Automatic**.

»»» Important

- If you choose a **Profile** setting other than **Automatic** or "Printing Paper ICC Profile", the printer will not be able to print with the correct colors.

3. Complete the setup

Click **Print**.

When you execute print, the printer uses the color space of the image data.

»»» Important

- You cannot specify an input ICC profile from the printer driver.

Related Topics

- ➡ [Setting the Print Quality Level \(Custom\)](#)
- ➡ [Specifying Color Correction](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Color Balance](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Brightness](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Contrast](#)

Interpreting the ICC Profile

When specifying an ICC profile for this printer, specify an ICC profile according to the print output media.

The ICC profiles installed for this printer appear as follows.

Canon XXXXX Photo Paper Plus Glossy II
(1) (2)

- (1) : Printer model
- (2) : Media type

This media name corresponds to the following media type:

Canvas -P: Canvas

Extra Heavyweight Fine Art Paper -P: Extra Heavyweight Fine Art Paper

Glossy Photo Paper A: Photo Paper Glossy

Heavyweight Fine Art Paper -P: Heavyweight Fine Art Paper

Heavyweight Photo Paper -P: Heavyweight Photo Paper

Japanese Paper Washi -P: Japanese Paper Washi

Lightweight Photo Paper -P: Lightweight Photo Paper

Matte Photo Paper -P: Matte Photo Paper

Photo Paper Plus Glossy II A: Photo Paper Plus Glossy II

Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss: Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss

Photo Paper Pro Crystal Grade: Photo Paper Pro Crystal Grade

Photo Paper Pro Luster: Photo Paper Pro Luster

Photo Paper Pro Platinum: Photo Paper Pro Platinum

Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte A: Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte

Premium Fine Art Rough: Premium Fine Art Rough

»» Note

- For ICC profiles that display "-P" at the end of the media type, the print results are the same as when you set **Rendering Intent** to **Perceptual (Photo)**.

Adjusting Tone

When printing black and white photos, you can produce the cooling effects of cool colors and the warming effects of warm colors.



Cool Tone is selected **Black and White** is selected **Warm Tone** is selected

The procedure for adjusting tone is as follows:

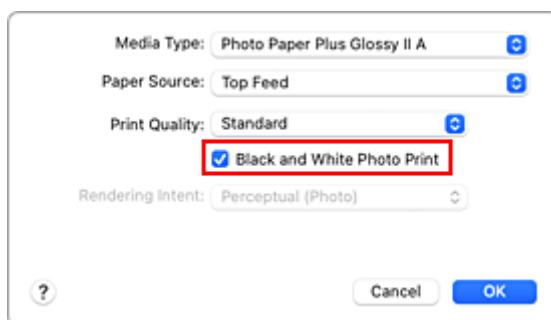
1. Select **Quality & Media** from **Printer Options** in the [Print Dialog](#)
2. Select the media type

For **Media Type**, select the following paper types.

- Photo Paper Plus Glossy II A
- Photo Paper Pro Platinum
- Photo Paper Pro Luster
- Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss
- Photo Paper Pro Crystal Grade
- Lightweight Photo Paper
- Heavyweight Photo Paper
- Premium Fine Art Rough
- Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte A
- Heavyweight Fine Art Paper
- Extra Heavyweight Fine Art Paper
- Canvas
- Japanese Paper Washi

3. Set black and white photo printing

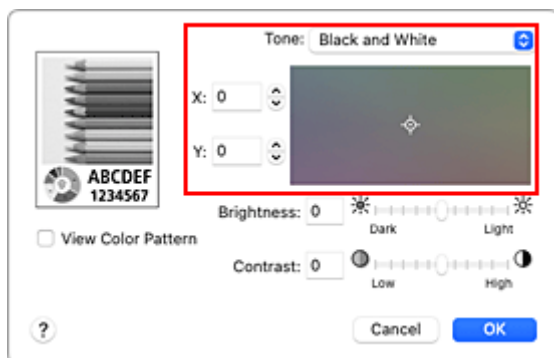
Check the **Black and White Photo Print** check box.



4. Select **Color Options** from **Printer Options**

5. Adjusting monochrome tones

Specify one of the following items from **Tone**. The selected value will be shown in the preview on the left side.



Cool Tone

This item adjusts color tones to cool shades (cool black). When you select **Cool Tone**, a value of -30 is entered for **X**, and a value of 0 for **Y**.

Black and White

This item adjusts color tones to neutral shades. When you select **Black and White**, a value of 0 is entered for **X**, and a value of 0 for **Y**.

Warm Tone

This item adjusts color tones to warm shades (warm black). When you select **Warm Tone**, a value of 30 is entered for **X**, and a value of 0 for **Y**.

Custom

You can adjust the color tones while checking the colors in the adjustment area.

To adjust the color tones, either enter values directly or click the up/down arrows. When you enter values, set values in the range of -100 to 100 for **X**, and -50 to 50 for **Y**.

You can also adjust the color tones by clicking or dragging the adjustment area with the mouse.

If you select another color tone and then select **Custom** again, the values that were preset in **Custom** are restored.

»» Important

- **Tone** and **X, Y** (Monochromatic adjustment value) are displayed when **Black and White Photo Print** check box is selected for **Quality & Media**.

6. If necessary, adjust monochromatic colors manually

To adjust the color tones, either enter values directly to **X** or **Y** (Monochromatic adjustment value) or click the up/down arrows.

You can also adjust the color tones by clicking or dragging the adjustment area with the mouse.

7. Complete the setup

Click **Print**.

When you execute print, the color document is converted to grayscale data with adjusted tones.

It allows you to print the color document in monochrome.

»» Important

- If you select **ColorSync** for **Color Matching**, then **Tone**, **X**, and **Y** appear grayed out and are unavailable.

Related Topics

- ➡ [Printing a Color Document in Monochrome](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Brightness](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Contrast](#)

Adjusting Color Balance

You can adjust the color tints when printing.

Since this function adjusts color balance of the output by changing the ink ratios of each color, it changes the total color balance of the document. Use the application software when you want to change the color balance significantly. Use the printer driver only when you want to adjust the color balance slightly.

The following sample shows the case when color balance is used to intensify cyan and to diminish yellow so that the overall colors are more uniform.



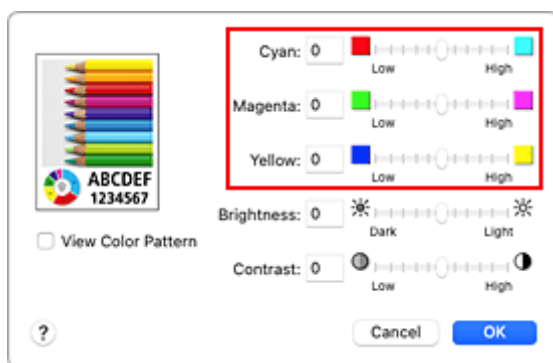
No adjustment Adjust color balance

The procedure for adjusting color balance is as follows:

1. Select **Color Options** from **Printer Options** in the [Print Dialog](#)
2. Adjust color balance

There are individual sliders for **Cyan**, **Magenta**, and **Yellow**. Each color becomes stronger when the corresponding slider is moved to the right, and becomes weaker when the corresponding slider is moved to the left. For example, when cyan becomes weaker, the color red becomes stronger.

You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50. The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.



3. Complete the setup

Click **Print**.

When you execute print, the document is printed with the adjusted color balance.

Related Topics

- ➡ [Setting the Print Quality Level \(Custom\)](#)
- ➡ [Specifying Color Correction](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Brightness](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Contrast](#)

Adjusting Brightness

You can brighten or darken the colors of the overall image data during printing.

The following sample shows the case when light colors are darkened when the image data is printed.



No adjustment



Darken light colors

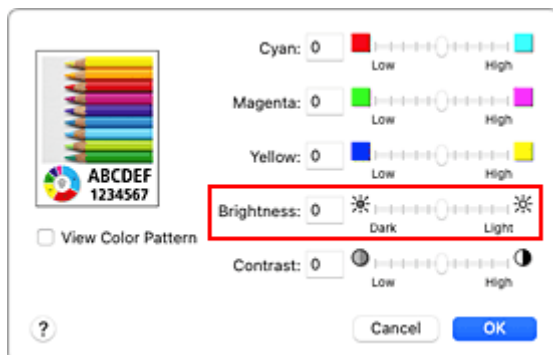
The procedure for adjusting brightness is as follows:

1. Select **Color Options** from **Printer Options** in the [Print Dialog](#)

2. Adjust brightness

Moving the **Brightness** slider to the right brightens the colors, and moving the slider to the left darkens the colors.

You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50. The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.



3. Complete the setup

Click **Print**.

When you execute print, the data is printed at the adjusted brightness.

Related Topics

- ➡ [Setting the Print Quality Level \(Custom\)](#)
- ➡ [Specifying Color Correction](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Color Balance](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Contrast](#)

Adjusting Contrast

You can adjust the image contrast during printing.

To make the differences between the light and dark portions of images greater and more distinct, increase the contrast. On the other hand, to make the differences between the light and dark portions of images smaller and less distinct, reduce the contrast.



No adjustment

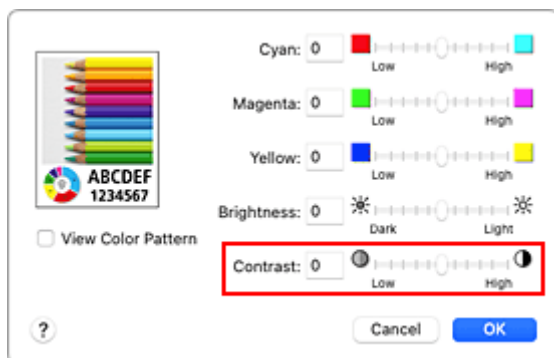
Adjust the contrast

The procedure for adjusting contrast is as follows:

1. Select **Color Options** from **Printer Options** in the [Print Dialog](#)
2. Adjust the contrast

Moving the **Contrast** slider to the right increases the contrast, and moving the slider to the left decreases the contrast.

You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50. The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.



3. Complete the setup

Click **Print**.

When you execute print, the image is printed with the adjusted contrast.

Related Topics

- ➡ [Setting the Print Quality Level \(Custom\)](#)
- ➡ [Specifying Color Correction](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Color Balance](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Brightness](#)

Printing Using AirPrint

You can print photographs, E-mails, web pages, and other documents using AirPrint, even if the printer driver is not installed or the application is not downloaded.

»»» Important

- There are [restrictions](#) for printing with AirPrint. Please be aware in advance. If you want to use all the functions of the printer, use the Canon IJ printer driver.

Checking Your Environment

First, check your environment.

- AirPrint Operation Environment
Mac running the latest version of OS
- Requirement
The Mac and the printer must be connected by one of the following methods:
 - Connected to the same network over a **LAN**
 - Connected directly without wireless router (Direct Connection)
 - Connected by USB

Add The Printer as AirPrint Printer on Your Mac

1. Open **System Settings** -> **Printers & Scanners**
2. Click **Add Printer, Scanner or Fax...**
3. Select your printer listed as **Bonjour**
4. Select your printer from **Use**
5. Click **Add**

The Printer will be added as AirPrint Printer on Your Mac

Print with AirPrint from a Mac

1. [Check that printer is turned on](#)

»»» Note

- If **Auto power on** is enabled, printer automatically turns itself on when receiving a print job.

2. [Load paper](#) in printer
3. Select paper size and paper type from printer

Register the set paper size and paper type on the printer operation panel.

For instructions, see "[Register Paper Information](#)."

4. Start printing from your application software

The Print dialog opens.

5. Select printer

Select your model from the **Printer** list in the Print dialog.

6. Check print settings

Set paper size and other items as needed.

Set paper type from the printer.

»» Important

- To feed paper from the manual feed tray, select **Multi-purpose Tray** from **Feed From**.
- An error may occur if the paper size set in the print dialog is different from the paper size set on the printer. Select the correct items on the print dialog and the printer that correspond to the paper being printed.

»» Note

- Use the Print dialog to set general print settings such as the layout and the print sequence. For information about print settings, refer to macOS help.
- You can set **Print quality settings (Color mode)** and **Magnification level for borderless** on the operation panel of the printer. For details, see "[Print settings](#)."

7. Click **Print**

The printer prints according to the specified settings.

»» Note

- It can take the Wi-Fi a few minutes to get connected after the printer turns on. Print after checking that the printer is connected to the network.
- You cannot use AirPrint if Bonjour settings of printer are disabled. Check **LAN** settings of printer and enable Bonjour settings.
- Refer to "Cannot Print Using AirPrint" for printing problems when using AirPrint.
- The display of the settings screen may differ depending on the application software you are using.

Deleting Print Job

Use **Stop** button from printer to cancel the print job.

Restrictions on the AirPrint

- Some paper sizes that are compatible with the Canon IJ printer driver are not compatible with AirPrint. If using these sizes, set a "custom size."

macOS Printer Driver

- Overview of the Printer Driver
- Description of Print Dialog
- Updating the Printer Driver

Overview of the Printer Driver

- **Canon IJ Printer Driver**
- **How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Dialog**
- **Page Setup Dialog**
- **Print Dialog**
- **Canon IJ Printer Utility2**
 - Opening the Canon IJ Printer Utility2
- **Displaying the Printing Status Screen**
- **Instructions for Use (Printer Driver)**
- **Deleting the Undesired Print Job**

Canon IJ Printer Driver

The Canon IJ printer driver (called printer driver below) is a software that is installed on your computer for printing data with this printer.

The printer driver converts the print data created by your application software into data that your printer can understand, and sends the converted data to the printer.

Because different models support different print data formats, you need a printer driver for the specific model you are using.

Using Help of the Printer Driver

You can display Help function from the [Print Dialog](#).

Select a setup item from **Printer Options** in the Print dialog. Then click help  at the bottom left of the screen to display an explanation of the item.

Help for the printer driver is displayed when the following item in **Printer Options** is selected:

- **Quality & Media**
- **Color Options**
- **Advanced Paper Settings**
- **Page Processing**

How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Dialog

You can display the printer driver setup dialog from the application software you are using.

Opening the Page Setup Dialog

Use this procedure to set the page (paper) settings before printing.

1. Select **Page Setup...** from the **File** menu of the application software

The [Page Setup Dialog](#) opens.

Opening the Print Dialog

Use this procedure to set the print settings before printing.

1. Select **Print...** from the **File** menu of the application software

The [Print Dialog](#) opens.

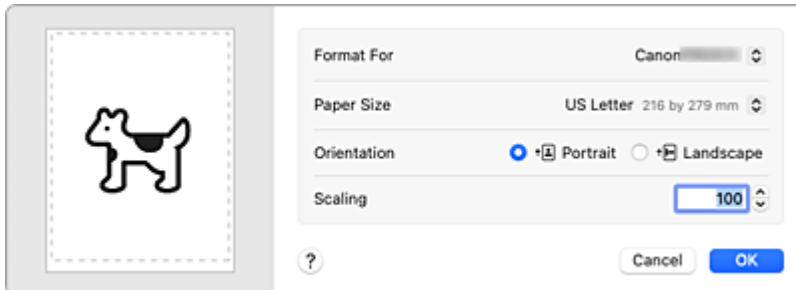
»» Important

- Depending on the macOS version or the application you are using, the print dialog screen display may differ.
Also, some features may be restricted.

Page Setup Dialog

In the Page Setup dialog, you configure the basic print settings such as the size of paper loaded in the printer or the scaling ratio.

To open the Page Setup dialog, you typically select **Page Setup...** from the **File** menu of your application software.



Format For

Select the model to be used for printing.

Paper Size

Select the size of the paper to be used for printing.

To set a non-standard size, select **Manage Custom Sizes....**

Orientation

Select the print orientation.

Scaling

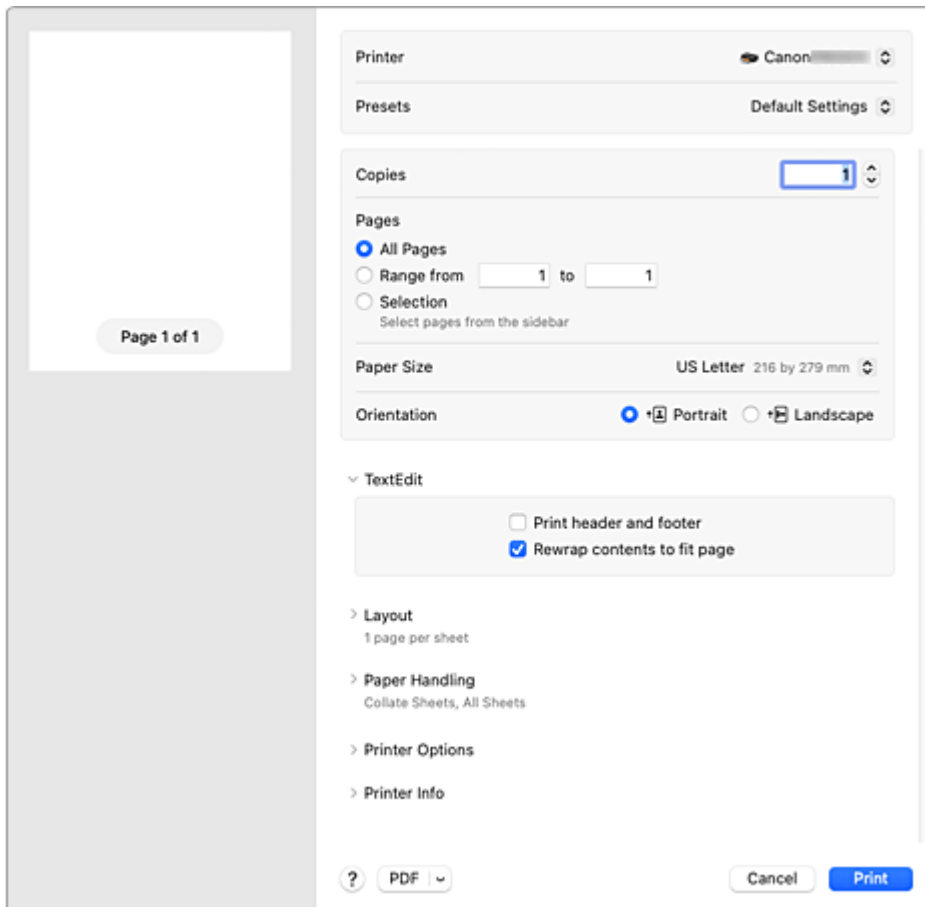
Set the scaling percentage.

You can expand or reduce the size of the document when printing.

Print Dialog

In the Print dialog, you can set paper type, paper source and print quality to start printing.

To open the Print dialog, you typically select **Print...** from the **File** menu of your application software.



Printer

Select the model to be used for printing.

When you click **Add Printer...**, a dialog for specifying the printer opens.

Presets

You can save or delete the settings of the Print dialog.

Copies

You can set the number of copies to be printed.

»»» Note

- You can set collated printing by choosing **Paper Handling**.

Pages

You can set the range of pages to be printed.

Paper Size

Select the size of the paper to be used for printing.

To set a non-standard size, select **Manage Custom Sizes....**

Orientation

Select the print orientation.

Printer Options

You can switch between pages in the Print dialog by **Printer Options**. The first menu to appear differs depending on the application software that opened the Print dialog.

You can choose one of the following items from **Printer Options**.

Color Matching

You can select the color correction method.

Quality & Media

You can set basic print settings that match the printer.

Color Options

You can adjust the print colors as you desire.

Advanced Paper Settings

Specifies detailed print settings that match the media type loaded in the printer.

Page Processing

Adjusts how much of the document extends outside the paper when full-page borderless printing is used, and specifies the stapling side and stapling margin when multiple sheets of paper are being stapled together.

Printer Info

Supply Levels

A rough indication of the remaining ink level is displayed.

PDF

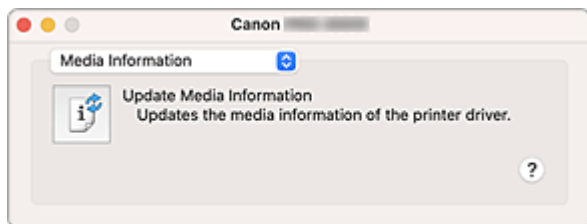
You can save a document in PDF (Portable Document Format) format.

By starting up Canon imagePROGRAF Free Layout, it is possible to allocate multiple source documents, and display the print results in imagePROGRAF Preview.

Canon IJ Printer Utility2

The Canon IJ Printer Utility2 allows you to perform printer maintenance or change the settings of the printer.

What You Can Do with the Canon IJ Printer Utility2



You can switch between pages in Canon IJ Printer Utility2 by the pop-up menu. You can choose one of the following items from the pop-up menu.

[Media Information](#)

Gets the latest media information from the printer and updates the media information in the printer driver.

Online Printing Resources

Go to a Canon website with printing resources such as ICC profiles and printing tips.

»»» Important

- To use this function, you must have an Internet connection. Note that you are responsible for any Internet connection fees.

[Custom Settings](#)

Change the settings of this printer.

»»» Note

- To operate the Canon IJ Printer Utility2, you must first turn on the printer.
- Depending on the items selected, the computer communicates with the printer to obtain information. If the computer is unable to communicate with the printer, an error message may be displayed. If this happens, click **Cancel** to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.

Opening the Canon IJ Printer Utility2

To open the Canon IJ Printer Utility2, follow the steps below.

1. Open **System Settings**, and select **Printers & Scanners**

2. Start the Canon IJ Printer Utility2

Select your model from the printer list, and click **Options & Supplies....**

Click **Open Printer Utility** in **Utility** tab.

Canon IJ Printer Utility2 is launched.

Displaying the Printing Status Screen

Check the print progress according to the following procedure:

1. Launch the printing status screen

- If the print data has been sent to the printer
The printing status screen opens automatically. To display the printing status screen, click the printer icon displayed on the Dock.
- If the print data has not been sent to the printer
Open **System Settings**, and select **Printers & Scanners**.
To display the printing status screen, select your printer model from the printer list, and then click **Printer Queue....**

2. Check the printing status

You can check the name of the file being printed or ready for being printed.

-  Deletes the specified print job.
-  Stops printing the specified document.
-  Resumes printing the specified document.
-  Stops printing all documents.
-  Displayed only when printing of all documents is being stopped, and resumes printing all documents.

Important

- If an error occurs, an error message will appear on the printing progress confirmation screen.
- The content of the error message may differ depending on the OS version.
- The printer part names in the error message may differ from what is listed in this manual.
- If the content of the error message is difficult to understand, check the error message displayed on the printer operation panel.

Instructions for Use (Printer Driver)

This printer driver is subject to the following restrictions. Keep the following points in mind when using the printer driver.

Restrictions on the Printer Driver

- When you set up the Page Setup dialog, be sure to begin by selecting the model you are using from the **Format For** list. If you select another printer, printing may not be performed properly.
- The following functions cannot be used in macOS, though they can be used in Windows computers.
 - Duplex Printing
 - Booklet Printing
 - Poster Printing
 - Stamp Printing
- Depending on the macOS version or the application you are using, the print dialog screen display may differ.
Also, some features may be restricted.
- If you connect this printer and AirPort with a USB cable and print, you must install the latest AirPort firmware.

Notes on Adding a Printer

- Install the Canon printer driver on a macOS, select your model from the **Add Printer** dialog, and then select Canon XXX (where "XXX" is your model name) from **Use** → **Select Software....**

Deleting the Undesired Print Job

If the printer does not start printing, canceled or failed print job data may be remaining.
Delete unnecessary print jobs from the print status check screen.

1. Open **System Settings, and select **Printers & Scanners****

2. Select your model, and then click **Printer Queue...**

The print status check screen appears.

3. Select the unnecessary print job and click  (Delete)

The selected print jobs will be deleted.

Description of Print Dialog

- **Quality & Media**
- **Color Options**
- **Advanced Paper Settings**
- **Page Processing**

Quality & Media

This dialog allows you to create a basic print setup in accordance with the paper type. Unless special printing is required, normal printing can be performed just by setting the items in this dialog.



Media Type

Select the type of media to be used.

You must select the type of media actually loaded in the printer. This selection enables the printer to carry out printing properly for the material of the media used.

»»» Note

- After updating media information of the printer, start up the Canon IJ Printer Utility2 and update media information.

Paper Source

Select the source from which paper is supplied.

Manual Feed

Paper is supplied from the manual feed tray in the back.

Top Feed

Paper is fed from the top feed.

Print Quality

Select the one that is closest to the original document type and the purpose.

When one of the radio buttons is selected, the appropriate quality will be set automatically.

High

Gives priority to print quality over printing speed.

Standard

Prints with average speed and quality.

Fast

Gives priority to printing speed over print quality.

Custom

Select this radio button to specify a quality.

Quality

When you select **Custom** in **Print Quality**, you can use the slider bar to adjust the print quality level.

Black and White Photo Print

Set black and white photo printing. Black and white photo printing refers to the function of converting your document to grayscale data in the printer to print it in monochrome.

When you check the check box, both monochrome and color documents will be printed in monochrome.
When printing a color document, be sure to uncheck the check box.

Rendering Intent

Specify the method of matching to use when selecting **Canon Color Matching** in **Color Matching**.

Perceptual (Photo)

Reproduces colors of general photos naturally and features smooth gradation. In addition, selecting this setting allows you to adjust colors easily using an application software.

No Color Correction

Performs printing without color matching.

»» Note

- When printing on a double postcard, select Postcard Double for Paper Size, and then print again.
- If you print on paper other than hagaki, load the paper according to usage instructions, and then click **OK**.

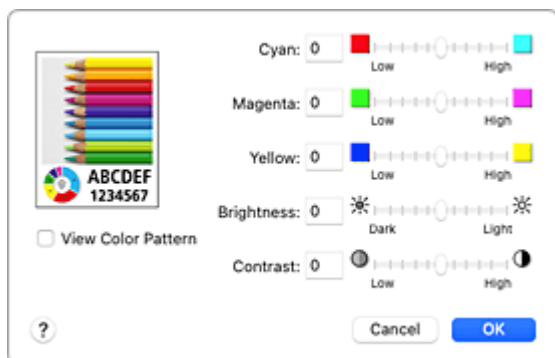
Related Topics

- ➡ [Switching the Paper Source to Match the Purpose](#)
- ➡ [Setting the Print Quality Level \(Custom\)](#)
- ➡ [Printing a Color Document in Monochrome](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver](#)

Color Options

This dialog allows you to adjust the print color as you like. If the color of the printed image is not as expected, adjust the properties in the dialog and retry printing.

The adjustments made here do not affect the colors of the original print data unlike applications dedicated to image processing. Use this dialog just to make fine adjustments.



Preview

Shows the effect of color adjustment.

As you adjust each item, the effects are reflected in the color and brightness.

View Color Pattern

Displays a pattern for checking color changes produced by color adjustment.

When you want to display the sample image with a color pattern, check this check box.

Note

- When the **Black and White Photo Print** check box is checked in the **Quality & Media**, the sample graphic is displayed in monochrome.

Color balance (Cyan, Magenta, Yellow)

If necessary, adjust the strength of each color. To strengthen a color, drag the slider to the right. To weaken a color, drag the slider to the left.

You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50.

Adjusting the color balance will result in variations in the balance among the volumes of the individual color inks and hence in the hues of the document as a whole.

Use the printer driver only when adjusting the color balance slightly. To change the color balance significantly, use the application software.

Tone

Sets the color adjustment for monochrome printing.

You can select **Cool Tone**, **Black and White**, **Warm Tone** or **Custom**.

You can also enter **X** and **Y** values while checking the color tone, click the adjustment area with the mouse, or adjust the tone by dragging the slider.

Cool Tone

This item adjusts color tones to cool shades of gray (cool black). When you select **Cool Tone**, a value of -30 is entered for **X**, and a value of 0 for **Y**.

Black and White

This item adjusts color tones to neutral shades of gray. When you select **Black and White**, a value of 0 is entered for **X**, and a value of 0 for **Y**.

Warm Tone

This item adjusts color tones to warm shades of gray (warm black). When you select **Warm Tone**, a value of 30 is entered for **X**, and a value of 0 for **Y**.

Custom

You can adjust the color tones while checking the colors in the adjustment area. To adjust the color tones, either enter values directly or click the up/down arrows. You can also adjust the color tones by clicking or dragging the adjustment area with the mouse. If you select another color tone and then select **Custom** again, the values that were preset in **Custom** are restored.

X, Y (Monochromatic adjustment value)

If necessary, you can adjust monochromatic colors manually. To adjust the color tones, either enter values directly or click the up/down arrows. You can also adjust the color tones by clicking or dragging the adjustment area with the mouse. When you enter values, set values in the range of -100 to 100 for **X**, and -50 to 50 for **Y**. The selected value will be shown in the preview on the left side.

»»» Important

- **Tone** and **X, Y (Monochromatic adjustment value)** are displayed when **Black and White Photo Print** check box is selected for **Quality & Media**.
- Depending on the settings in **Media Type** under **Quality & Media**, you may be unable to use these settings.

Brightness

Adjusts the brightness of your print. You cannot change the levels of pure white and black. However, the brightness of the colors between white and black can be changed. Colors become brighter as you drag the slider toward the right and darker as you drag the slider toward the left. You can also directly enter brightness values that are linked to the slider bar. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50.

Contrast

The Contrast function changes the differences between light and dark in images during printing. To make the differences between the light and dark portions of images greater and more distinct, increase the contrast. On the other hand, to make the differences between the light and dark portions of images smaller and less distinct, reduce the contrast.

You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50.

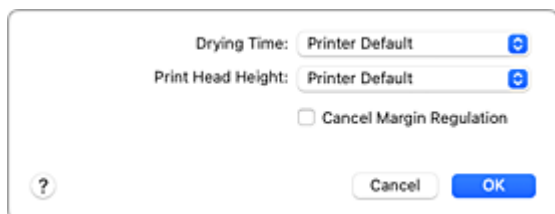
Related Topics

- ➡ [Specifying Color Correction](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Tone](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Color Balance](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Brightness](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Contrast](#)

Advanced Paper Settings

Use this dialog box to set detailed print settings that match the media type loaded on the printer.

If the paper becomes stained during printing or if the quality of the print results is less than expected, using these settings may improve the print results.



Drying Time

Allows you to set how long the printer rests before printing of the next page starts.

If the next page is ejected before the print surface dries completely and the paper becomes stained, set a longer ink drying wait time.

Print Head Height

Allows you to widen the gap between the print head and the paper to reduce paper abrasion when printing high density pages. To reduce paper abrasion, select **Avoid Paper Abrasion**.

Cancel Margin Regulation

Cancels the safety margin regulation when you set **Media Type** to **Matte Photo Paper**, **Premium Fine Art Rough**, or **Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte A** from the **Quality & Media** menu displayed from **Printer Options** of the print dialog.

When you check this item, the safety margin regulation is canceled, printing in a wider print area and borderless full-page printing become possible, and printing can be performed for all paper sizes.

When the safety margin regulation is canceled, the paper may become smudged or the print quality may drop depending on the paper size used and the environment.

If that happens, we recommend that you print on a paper size that has large margins.

Page Processing

Use this dialog to adjust how much of the document extends outside the paper when full-page borderless printing is used and to specify the stapling side and stapling margin when multiple sheets of paper are being stapled together.



Borderless Extension

Adjusts how much of the document extends outside the paper by using the **Borderless Extension** slider bar.

Drag to slider bar to the right to increase the extension amount, and to the left to decrease the extension amount.

Margin

Sets the margin width for stapling multiple sheets of paper together. Values from 0 mm to 30 mm (0 in. to 1.2 in.) can be entered.

Stapling Side

Sets the side of the paper to be stapled.

Long-side stapling (Left) / Long-side stapling (Right)

Select this when stapling the long side of the paper.

Select either left or right.

Short-side stapling (Top) / Short-side stapling (Bottom)

Select this when stapling the short side of the paper.

Select either top or bottom.

Related Topics

- ➡ [Perform Borderless Printing](#)
- ➡ [Setting the Stapling Margin](#)

Updating the Printer Driver

- **Installing the Printer Driver**
- **Obtaining the Latest Printer Driver**
- **Delete the Unnecessary Canon IJ Printer from the Printer List**
- **Before Installing the Printer Driver**

Installing the Printer Driver

You can access our web site through the Internet and download the latest printer driver for your model.

The procedure for installing the downloaded printer driver is as follows:

1. Mount the disk

Double-click the disk image file you have downloaded.

The file is unpacked, and then the disk is mounted.

2. Start the installer

Double-click "PrinterDriver_XXX_YYY.pkg" (where "XXX" is your model name, and "YYY" is version) contained in the disk.

3. Start the installation

Install the printer driver according to the messages on the screen.

When the Software License Agreement is displayed, check the contents, and click **Continue**. If you do not agree to the terms of the Software License Agreement, you cannot install this software.

4. Selecting the install destination

If necessary, select where you want to install the printer driver, and then click **Continue**.

5. Executing the installation

Click **Install**.

When the authentication screen is displayed, enter the name and password of the administrator, and then click **Install Software**.

6. Complete the installation

When the completion message appears, click **Close**.

The printer driver is installed successfully.

»» Important

- If the Installer does not operate properly, select **Quit Installer** from the **Installer** menu of the Finder to quit the Installer. Then start the Installer again.
- You can download the printer driver for free, but you are responsible for paying any connection fees to the Internet.

Related Topics

- ➡ [Obtaining the Latest Printer Driver](#)
- ➡ [Delete the Unnecessary Canon IJ Printer from the Printer List](#)
- ➡ [Before Installing the Printer Driver](#)

Obtaining the Latest Printer Driver

By updating the printer driver to the latest version of the printer driver, unresolved problems may be solved.

You can access our website and download the latest printer driver for your model.

Important

- You can download the printer driver for free, but any Internet access charges incurred are your responsibility.

Related Topics

- ➡ [Before Installing the Printer Driver](#)
- ➡ [Installing the Printer Driver](#)

Delete the Unnecessary Canon IJ Printer from the Printer List

A Canon IJ Printer that you no longer use can be deleted from the printer list.

Before deleting the Canon IJ Printer, disconnect the cable that connects the printer to the computer.

The procedure to delete the unnecessary Canon IJ Printer from the printer list is as follows:

You cannot delete the Canon IJ Printer unless you are logged on as a user with administrative rights.

1. Open **System Settings**, and select **Printers & Scanners**

2. Delete the Canon IJ Printer from the printer list

From the printer list, select the Canon IJ Printer to be deleted, and then click **Remove Printer....**

Click **Remove Printer** when the confirmation message appears.

Before Installing the Printer Driver

This section describes the items that you should check before installing the printer driver. You should also refer to this section if the printer driver cannot be installed.

Checking the Personal Computer Settings

- Terminate all running applications.
- Log on as a user who has the administrator account. The installer will prompt you to enter the name and password of the administrative user. When multiple users are using macOS, log on with the account of the administrator who registered first.

»» Important

- When you upgrade macOS, all printer drivers that were installed will be deleted. If you plan to continue using this printer, re-install the latest printer driver.

Related Topics

- ➡ [Obtaining the Latest Printer Driver](#)
- ➡ [Installing the Printer Driver](#)

Printing from Printer

- **Printing Templates Such as Lined or Graph Paper**

Printing Templates Such as Lined or Graph Paper

You can print a standard form such as pattern paper, graph paper, staff paper, a checklist, or a schedule form.

1. [Check that printer is turned on.](#)



2. Select **Template print** on the HOME screen, then press the **OK** button.

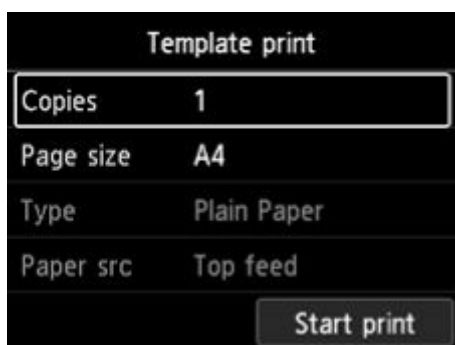
➔ [LCD and Operation Panel](#)

3. Use the ▲▼ buttons to select template you want to print and press the **OK** button.

When a message appears, check it and press the **OK**.

4. Use the ◀▶ buttons to select the form you want to print and press the **OK** button.

5. If necessary, change the settings using the ▲▼ buttons and press the **OK** button.



- **Copies**

Use the ▲▼ buttons to specify the number of copies and press the **OK** button.

- **Page size**

Use the ▲▼ buttons to select the page size and press the **OK** button.

▶▶▶ **Note**

- Depending on the form, some setting of page size cannot be specified. If it is selected,  and **Error details** are displayed on the printer's LCD. In this case, select  on the upper left on the printer's LCD to check the message and change the setting.

- **Type**

Use the ▲▼ buttons to select the media type and press the **OK** button.

- **Paper src**

When printing using **Template print**, **Top feed** is the only paper feed position available.

6. Load paper.

➡ [Loading Paper in the Top Feed](#)

7. Select **Start print.**

The printer starts printing.

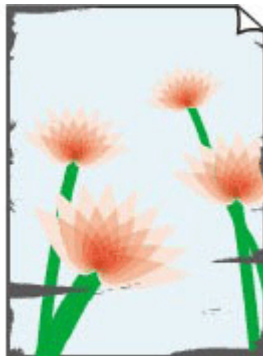
Frequently Asked Questions

Print Quality Problems



Uneven, Streaks, Faint

- ➔ [Uneven Colors](#)
- ➔ [White Streaks](#)
- ➔ [Black Streaks](#)
- ➔ [Streaked Colors](#)
- ➔ [Blurry or Fuzzy](#)



Smudged

- ➔ [Paper Is Smudged/Printed Surface Is Scratched](#)
- ➔ [Back of Paper Is Smudged](#)



Inaccurate colors

- ➡ [Inaccurate or Bleeding Colors](#)



Lines

- ➡ [Lines Are Misaligned/Distorted](#)
- ➡ [Lines Incomplete or Missing \(Windows\)](#)

Others

- ➡ [Ink Blots/Paper Curl](#)
 - ➡ [Ink Does Not Come Out](#)
-

Search by Category



Error

- ➡ [List of Support Codes for Printer Errors](#)
- ➡ [When Error Occurred](#)
- ➡ [Message Is Displayed](#)
- ➡ [Printer Does Not Print](#)
- ➡ ["1000" is displayed](#)
- ➡ Cannot Use Previous App



Network

- ➡ Network Connection Setup Guide
- ➡ [Network Communication Problems](#)
- ➡ [Connecting with Wireless Direct](#)
- ➡ [Connecting to a Printer](#)
- ➡ [Solve Network Troubles with The Printer's Diagnostic Functions](#)
- ➡ [Cannot Find Printer on Network \(Windows/macOS\)](#)
- ➡ Check the SSID and Encryption Key of the Wireless Router Connected to Your Computer or Smartphone



Printing

- ➡ [Loading Paper](#)
- ➡ [Ink Does Not Come Out](#)
- ➡ [What to Do When Paper Is Jammed](#)
- ➡ [Printer Does Not Print](#)
- ➡ Cannot Print Using AirPrint



Security / Other

- ➡ Searching Printer by IP Address or Host Name During Setup
- ➡ [Failed to MP Drivers \(Printer Driver\) Installation \(Windows\)](#)
- ➡ [Updating MP Drivers \(Printer Driver\) in Network Environment \(Windows\)](#)
- ➡ [Replacing Ink Tanks](#)
- ➡ [Printer Does Not Turn On](#)

Questions not Listed Above

Error

- ➡ ["1300" is displayed](#)
- ➡ [Disable notifications for "2114" error](#)

Network

- ➡ [Cannot Proceed Beyond Printer Connection Screen](#)

- ➡ [Change to Offline \(Windows\)/Cannot Communicate \(Windows\)](#)
- ➡ [Printing Network Setting Information](#)
- ➡ [Switching Printer's Connection to Network or Devices](#)
- ➡ [Network Key \(Password\) Unknown](#)
- ➡ Cannot Remember Printer's Administrator Password
- ➡ [Printer Cannot Be Used After Replacing Wireless Router or Changed Router Settings](#)
- ➡ Message Appears on Computer During Setup
- ➡ [Checking Network Information of Printer](#)
- ➡ [Restoring Printer's LAN Settings to Defaults](#)
- ➡ [USB Connection Problems](#)
- ➡ Updating Printer Firmware
- ➡ Manual connect
- ➡ Network Solution 1-2-3

Printing

- ➡ Printing Stops
- ➡ [Printer Does Not Pick Up or Feed the Paper/"No Paper" Error](#)
- ➡ [Cannot Print on the Disc Label](#)
- ➡ Paper Does Not Feed from Paper Source Specified in Printer Driver (Windows)
- ➡ [Cannot Print from Smartphone/Tablet](#)

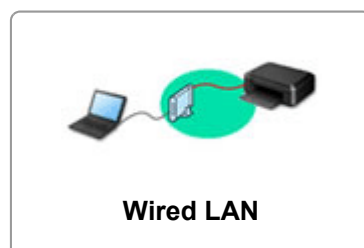
Security / Other

- ➡ [Printer Does Not Turn On](#)
- ➡ [Maintenance](#)
- ➡ [Printer Turns Off Unexpectedly or Repeatedly](#)
- ➡ [Wrong Language Appears in Operation Panel](#)

Operation Problems

Network Settings and Common Problems

Here are frequently asked questions on network. Select a connection method you are using, or you want to use.



Wi-Fi

Cannot Find Printer

- ➔ [Cannot Find Printer on Network](#) (Windows/macOS)
- ➔ [Cannot Proceed Beyond Printer Connection Screen \(Cannot Find Printer Connected via USB\)](#)
- ➔ Searching Printer by IP Address or Host Name During Setup
- ➔ [Detect Same Printer Name](#)
- ➔ [Switching Printer's Connection to Network or Devices](#)

Cannot Print or Connect

- ➔ [Solve Network Troubles with The Printer's Diagnostic Functions](#)
- ➔ [Printer Cannot Be Used After Replacing Wireless Router or Changed Router Settings](#)
- ➔ Cannot Connect Smartphone/Tablet to Wireless Router
- ➔ WPS (Router Button) Connection
- ➔ [Switching Printer's Connection to Network or Devices](#)
- ➔ [Cannot Find Printer on Network](#) (Windows/macOS)

LAN Setting Tips/Changing LAN Settings

- ➔ [Network Key \(Password\) Unknown](#)
- ➔ Cannot Remember Printer's Administrator Password
- ➔ [Checking Network Information of Printer](#)
- ➔ [Restoring Printer's LAN Settings to Defaults](#)
- ➔ Checking Wireless Router SSID/Key
- ➔ Checking Wireless Router Network Name (SSID) for Smartphone/Tablet
- ➔ Privacy Separator/SSID Separator/Network Separation Function
- ➔ [Default Network Settings](#)
- ➔ [Switching Printer's Connection to Network or Devices](#)
- ➔ [Printing Network Settings](#)
- ➔ Checking Status Code

Printing from Smartphone/Tablet

- ➔ Cannot Connect Smartphone/Tablet to Wireless Router
- ➔ Checking Wireless Router Network Name (SSID) for Smartphone/Tablet
- ➔ [Cannot Print from Smartphone/Tablet](#)

Problems while Using Printer

- ➔ Message Appears on Computer During Setup
- ➔ [Cannot Find Printer on Network](#) (Windows/macOS)

Wireless Direct

Cannot Print or Connect

- ➔ [Solve Network Troubles with The Printer's Diagnostic Functions](#)
- ➔ [Cannot Find Printer on Network](#) (Windows/macOS)

LAN Setting Tips/Changing LAN Settings

- ➔ [Network Key \(Password\) Unknown](#)
- ➔ Cannot Remember Printer's Administrator Password
- ➔ [Checking Network Information of Printer](#)
- ➔ [Restoring Printer's LAN Settings to Defaults](#)
- ➔ Checking Wireless Router Network Name (SSID) for Smartphone/Tablet
- ➔ Privacy Separator/SSID Separator/Network Separation Function
- ➔ [Default Network Settings](#)
- ➔ [Switching Printer's Connection to Network or Devices](#)
- ➔ [Printing Network Settings](#)
- ➔ Checking Status Code

Printing from Smartphone/Tablet

- ➔ [Cannot Print from Smartphone/Tablet](#)

Problems while Using Printer

- ➔ Message Appears on Computer During Setup
- ➔ [Cannot Find Printer on Network](#) (Windows/macOS)

Wired LAN

Cannot Find Printer

- ➔ Searching Printer by IP Address or Host Name During Setup
- ➔ [Cannot Find Printer on Network](#) (Windows/macOS)
- ➔ [Detect Same Printer Name](#)

Cannot Print or Connect

- ➔ [Solve Network Troubles with The Printer's Diagnostic Functions](#)
- ➔ [Cannot Find Printer on Network](#) (Windows/macOS)

LAN Setting Tips/Changing LAN Settings

- ➔ Cannot Remember Printer's Administrator Password
- ➔ [Checking Network Information of Printer](#)
- ➔ [Restoring Printer's LAN Settings to Defaults](#)
- ➔ [Default Network Settings](#)
- ➔ [Switching Printer's Connection to Network or Devices](#)
- ➔ [Printing Network Settings](#)
- ➔ Checking Status Code

Problems while Using Printer

- ➡ Message Appears on Computer During Setup
- ➡ [Cannot Find Printer on Network](#) (Windows/macOS)

Network Communication Problems

- **Cannot Find Printer on Network (Windows/macOS)**
- **Wireless Router Problems**
- **Printer Settings/Smartphone/Tablet Troubles for Network**

Cannot Find Printer on Network (Windows/macOS)

- **Cannot Find Printer on Network**
- **Cannot Proceed Beyond Printer Connection Screen (Cannot Find Printer Connected via USB)**
- **Searching Printer by IP Address or Host Name During Setup**



Cannot Find Printer on Network



Important

- Make sure the following four items first.
 - If the security settings on the wireless router are enabled, to disable the settings may solve the problem.
 - ➡ Privacy Separator/SSID Separator/Network Separation Function
 - If the printer does not support 5 GHz, enable 2.4 GHz on the wireless router.
 - To disable Band Steering function* of wireless router may solve the problem.
 - If the same SSID is assigned for 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz, to assign different SSID may solve the problem.
- * Band Steering function: Band Steering monitors a Wi-Fi network and automatically assigns devices to their optimal frequency band within 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz frequency bands depending on the situation.

In the following cases, set up the printer again.

- When you buy a new computer or wireless router
- When you change the settings on your wireless router
- When the connection method (Wi-Fi / USB) of the printer is changed

For more on the setup procedure;

➡ Set Up

Important

- When you forget the administrator password of the printer, contact your nearest Canon service center.

In Other Cases Than Above:

If the printer suddenly stops working, even though you have not changed the settings of the device or network to which it is connected, or if you cannot find the printer during the setup process, check and solve the problem, using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant. After the condition improves, redo the setup of the printer.

Wi-Fi Connection Assistant is a powerful solution tool for network problems.

Step 1 [Check Basic Items for Network.](#)

Step 2 [Solve Problems, Using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.](#)

Step 3 [If the Solution Tool Does Not Solve the Problem.](#)

Step 1 : Check Basic Items for Network.

Check 1 Check power status.

Check your printer and the network device (wireless router, etc.) are turned on.

If you are in the process of setting up, interrupt it and check if the wireless router (modem) is turned on and then check if the printer is turned on.

1. Check if network device such as router is turned on.

If network devices are not turned on, turn on the power. If the network devices are on, turn them off and on again.

It may take a while for the network device to become ready for use once they are turned on.

Proceed once the network device such as router is ready for use.

2. Check if printer is turned on.

If printer is not turned on, turn on the power. If the printer is on, turn it off and on again.

Proceed once you complete checking the power status above.

Check 2 Check PC network connection.

If your computer and network devices (wireless router, etc.) are fully configured, your computer is ready to connect to the network.

1. Check the settings of the network device (wireless router, etc.).

Connect to the Internet and see if you can browse any web page. If you cannot view web pages on your computer, check wireless router network connection settings, such as IP address filtering, MAC address filtering, and DHCP function.

To check the network name (SSID) of the wireless router the printer is connected to, print the network settings.

➡ [Printing Network Settings](#)

▶▶▶ Note

- Depending on the wireless router, note that different network name (SSID) is assigned for a bandwidth (2.4 GHz or 5 GHz) or its usage (for PC or game machine), using alphanumeric characters at the end of network name.
- For more on checking the settings of the wireless router, refer to the instruction manual supplied with the wireless router or contact the manufacturer.

If you use an encryption key, specify it for the network name (SSID) you are using. For details, see [Setting an Encryption Key](#).

2. Check PC network connection.

For the procedures, refer to the instruction manual supplied with the computer, or contact the manufacturer.

Once you complete setting up the wireless router and your computer, configure the settings on your computer in order to view web pages, using the information of the wireless router.

Proceed once you complete checking the network connection above.

Check 3 Check printer's network settings.

➡ For Wi-Fi

➡ For Wired LAN

For Wi-Fi

Make sure that  icon appears on the printer's operation panel.

If  icon is displayed.

 icon indicates that the wireless router and the printer are not connected. Check the setting of printer. Reconsider the location of the wireless router and the printer in the next check.

If  or  icon is displayed.

The printer is not set to use Wi-Fi.

Select **LAN settings** on HOME screen > **Wi-Fi** > **Settings** > in this order, and select **Enable** for **Enable/disable Wi-Fi**.

For Wired LAN

1. Check the power and LAN cable.

When the printer cannot be found on the setup screen, using LAN connection setup, make sure that all the network devices are connected to the router and the hub via LAN cables and that all the devices are turned on.

- **If LAN cable is not connected:**

Connect the router, hub, computer and printer via LAN cables.

Check that printer is turned on.

➡ [Turning the Printer On and Off](#)

Make sure the printer, the router and the hub are turned on.

- **If LAN cable is connected, and printer and network device are off:**

Turn on printer and network device.

- **If LAN cable is connected, and printer and network device are on:**

If the power is already turned on, cycle the power.

»»» Note

- It may take a while to become ready for use once they are turned on. Wait until all devices are ready before proceeding.

2. Check printer's Wired LAN settings.

Make sure that  icon appears on the printer's operation panel.

- **If icon is not displayed:**

The printer is not set to use wired communication. Enable Wired LAN from the printer settings.

Select **LAN settings** on HOME screen > **Wired LAN** > **Settings** in this order, and select **Enable** for **Enable/disable Wired LAN**.

Check 4 Check location of wireless router.

Make sure the printer is not placed too far away from the wireless router.

The printer can be up 50 m (164 ft.) from the wireless router indoors if unobstructed. Make sure the printer is close enough to the wireless router to be used.

Place the printer and wireless router where there are no obstacles between them. Wireless communication between different rooms or floors is generally poor. Wireless communication can be impeded by building materials containing metal or concrete. If the printer cannot communicate with the computer over a Wi-Fi due to a wall, place the printer and the computer in the same room.

In addition, if a device like a microwave oven that emits radio waves of the same frequency bandwidth as a wireless router is nearby, it may cause interference. Place the wireless router as far away from interference sources as possible.

Step 2 : Solve Problems, Using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

Diagnose and repair the network connections using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

Download Wi-Fi Connection Assistant from the below page, and install it on your computer.

➡ Checking Printer Connection Status Using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

Refer to below in regard to starting up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

- **For Windows:**

➡ [Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant](#)

- **For macOS:**

➡ [Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant](#)

Step 3 : If the Solution Tool Does Not Solve the Problem.

Check 1 Make sure security software's firewall is off.

If your security software's firewall is on, a message may appear warning you that Canon software is attempting to access the network. If this warning message appears, set security software to always allow access.

If you are using any programs that switch between network environments, check their settings.

Check 2 If printer is connected to AirPort Base Station via LAN, make sure you use alphanumeric characters for network name (SSID). (macOS)

If your network name (SSID) contains characters other than single-byte alphanumeric characters, the connection is not established properly. Change the network name (SSID) to use only single-byte alphanumeric characters.

Check 3 Solve network troubles with the printer's diagnostic functions.

See below.

➡ [Solve Network Troubles with The Printer's Diagnostic Functions](#)

Check 4 Check that **Enable bidirectional support** is selected in **Ports** sheet of **Printer properties** dialog box (Windows).

If not, select it to enable bidirectional support.

Related Topics

➡ [Network Communication Problems](#)

Wireless Router Problems

- **Network Key (Password) Unknown**
- **Checking Wireless Router SSID/Key**
- **Printer Cannot Be Used After Replacing Wireless Router or Changed Router Settings**
- **WPS (Router Button) Connection**
- **Privacy Separator/SSID Separator/Network Separation Function**

Network Key (Password) Unknown

Diagnose and repair the network connections using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

Download Wi-Fi Connection Assistant from the below page, and install it on your computer.

➡ [Checking Printer Connection Status Using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant](#)

Refer to below in regard to starting up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

- **For Windows:**

➡ [Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant](#)

- **For macOS:**

➡ [Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant](#)

If the problem persists after diagnosis and repair with Wi-Fi Connection Assistant, check the following items.

➡ [WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Key Set for Wireless Router Unknown, Cannot Connect](#)

➡ [Setting an Encryption Key](#)



WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Key Set for wireless router Unknown, Cannot Connect



Check the wireless router settings. For more on setting up a wireless router, see the instruction manual provided with the wireless router or contact its manufacturer. Make sure your computer can communicate with the wireless router.



Setting an Encryption Key



Select the encryption containing WPA2.

▶▶▶ Note

- The factory default of wireless router supporting WPA3 may be set to WPA3.

Make sure your computer can communicate with the wireless router using the settings you have selected. For more on setting up a wireless router, see the instruction manual provided with the wireless router or contact its manufacturer.

- **Using WPA2/WPA3**

The authentication method, Wi-Fi password, and dynamic encryption type must be identical among the wireless router, the printer, and your computer.

Enter the Wi-Fi password configured on the wireless router.

AES (more secure encryption than TKIP) is selected as the dynamic encryption method. The printer does not support TKIP. If the wireless router settings are set to "TKIP only", you will not be able to connect to the printer.

For details, see [If WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Details Screen Appears](#).

Note

- This printer supports the following.
 - WPA-PSK (WPA-Personal)
 - WPA2-PSK (WPA2-Personal)
 - WPA3-SAE (WPA3-Personal)
- Some printers support IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise). To configure IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise), you also need to configure the authentication (Radius) server.

Contact the network administrator for more information.

- This web page contains information about several models. Depending on the specifications of the printer you are using, some of the features described (device functions, connection method, operating procedure and etc.) may not apply.

For details about the functions of your printer, see [Specifications](#).

Printer Cannot Be Used After Replacing Wireless Router or Changed Router Settings

When wireless router is replaced or router settings are changed, the network settings of your computer, smartphone/tablet or printer must be reconfigured according to the new wireless router.



Check 1 Check if your computer or smartphone/tablet can be connected to Internet through the new wireless router.

If your computer or smartphone/tablet cannot be connected to Internet, check if the wireless router setup is completed and configure the settings on the computer or smartphone/tablet to connect to the wireless router.

Check 2 Restart printer network.

Refer to Setup Guide to setup.

▶▶▶ Note

- Wi-Fi Connection Assistant allows you to diagnose and repair the network status.

Select the link below to download Wi-Fi Connection Assistant and install it.

- ➡ Checking Printer Connection Status Using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

Refer to below in regard to starting up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

— For Windows:

- ➡ [Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant](#)

— For macOS:

- ➡ [Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant](#)

If this does not solve the problem, see below.

- ➡ [Cannot Communicate with Printer After Enabling MAC/IP Address Filtering or Encryption Key on Wireless Router](#)
- ➡ [With Encryption On, Cannot Communicate with Printer After Changing Encryption Type at Wireless Router](#)
- ➡ Privacy Separator/SSID Separator/Network Separation Function



Cannot Communicate with Printer After Enabling MAC/IP Address Filtering or Encryption Key on Wireless Router



Check 1 Check wireless router setting.

For more on setting up a wireless router, see the instruction manual provided with the wireless router or contact its manufacturer. Make sure your computer can communicate with the wireless router.

Check 2 If filtering MAC addresses or IP addresses at wireless router, check that MAC addresses or IP addresses for computer, network device, and printer are registered.

Check 3 If using WPA/WPA2/WPA3 key or a password, make sure encryption key for computer, network device, and printer matches key set for wireless router.

The length or format of the Wi-Fi password and authentication method must be identical among the wireless router, the printer, and your computer.

For details, see [Setting an Encryption Key](#).

»» Note

- Some printers support IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise). To configure IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise), you also need to configure the authentication (Radius) server.

Contact the network administrator for more information.

- This web page contains information about several models. Depending on the specifications of the printer you are using, some of the features described (device functions, connection method, operating procedure and etc.) may not apply.

For details about the functions of your printer, see [Specifications](#).

Q With Encryption On, Cannot Communicate with Printer After Changing Encryption Type at Wireless Router

A

If the printer cannot communicate with the computer after you change the encryption type for the wireless router, make sure the encryption type and passkey or password for the computer matches that of the wireless router.

➡ [Cannot Communicate with Printer After Enabling MAC/IP Address Filtering or Encryption Key on wireless router](#)

Printer Settings/Smartphone/Tablet Troubles for Network

- **Solve Network Troubles with The Printer's Diagnostic Functions**
- **Checking Network Information of Printer**
- **Checking Status Code**
- **Printing Network Settings**
- **Restoring Printer's LAN Settings to Defaults**
- **Default Network Settings**
- **Connecting with Wireless Direct**

Solve Network Troubles with The Printer's Diagnostic Functions

- If the printer and wireless router are connected or the printer and computer are connected by USB cable but you cannot print:
 - ➡ [Change to Offline \(Windows\)/Cannot Communicate \(Windows\)](#)
- In other cases than above:
 - ➡ [Cannot Find Printer on Network/Cannot Print](#)
 - ➡ [Cannot Connect to Printer through Wireless Direct](#)



Cannot Find Printer on Network/Cannot Print



Printing Out Network Settings Information

Note

-  **Wi-Fi** indicates descriptions related to Wi-Fi.
-  **LAN** indicates descriptions related to wired LAN.

Follow the procedure below to print out the network settings information.

Step 1 Check that printer and wireless router are turned on.

Turn the wireless router back on.

Wait about five minutes and then turn the printer back on.

Step 2 Check your devices (e.g. computer/smartphone/tablet) are connected to Internet.

Make sure that devices and the wireless router are connected to via Wi-Fi or Wired LAN, and that the Internet can be used without problems.

Step 3  **Wi-Fi** Make sure the printer's Wi-Fi setting is enabled and the  or  icon is displayed.

 **LAN** Make sure the printer's Wired LAN setting is enabled and the  icon is displayed.

Step 4  **Wi-Fi** Move the printer and device (computer/smartphone/tablet) closer to the wireless router.

Wireless communication quality deteriorates if the printer or devices are too far from the wireless router. Move the printer and device closer to the wireless router.

 **LAN** Make sure the LAN cable is inserted.

Try reconnecting the LAN cable to the printer and wireless router.

Step 5 Print the network settings.

Print out the network settings information on your printer.

➡ [Printing Network Settings](#)

Note

- For troubleshooting IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise), refer to the following.

➡ [Setting Up IEEE802.1X/EAP \(WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise\)](#)

Checking Printed Network Settings Information:

From the printed network settings information, check the entries in item "2-2".

C-0

 **Wi-Fi**  **LAN** It is connected correctly. If, nevertheless, the printer is not found on the network or printing is not possible, check the following items.

Note

- If codes other than "C-0" are displayed at the same time in the item "2-2" see also the correspondence of the other codes.

Check 1



Check that security software's firewall is off.

A message may appear warning you that Canon software is attempting to access the network. If this warning message appears, set the security software to always allow access.

Quit the security software and make sure that the printer is recognized and ready to use. If so, the cause is the firewall setting. Change the firewall settings so that the printer is recognized and ready to use. For details, contact the manufacturer of the security software.

If you are using any programs that switch between network environments, check their settings.

Check 2



Does network name (SSID) of printer match network name (SSID) setting of wireless router that communicates?

Check the "3-2-6" item in the printed network settings information and the network name (SSID) of the wireless router you want to connect to. If they are not matched, check the SSID and password of the wireless router you want to connect to, and then setup manually.

Check 3



Is privacy separator, SSID separator, or Network separation function enabled on wireless router?

If it is enabled, disable these functions before performing the setup. To check the settings of the wireless router, refer to the instruction manual provided with it or contact its manufacturer.

Check 4



Are MP Drivers (Printer Driver) installed? (Windows)

If you are using Windows and MP Drivers (Printer Driver) are not installed, install it.

➡ Set Up

C-1

 **Wi-Fi** The printer's Wi-Fi setting is disabled. (You can also check if the Wi-Fi icon  or  does not appear on the printer's screen.)

Enable the Wi-Fi setting in the printer's settings screen.

 **LAN** Wired LAN setting is disabled. (The  icon representing the Wired LAN is not displayed on the operation panel.)

Enable the Wired LAN setting from the operation panel.

C-2

 **LAN** Wired LAN setting is disabled. Make sure the printer and wireless router are connected via LAN cable.

If the LAN cable is disconnected, connect it correctly.

If your LAN cable is connected to the WAN port of the wireless router, connect it to the LAN port of the wireless router.

C-3

 **Wi-Fi**  **LAN** No IP address is assigned. (You can also check that the item "3-2-12" in the printed network settings information is blank.)

Check the following items.

Check 1  **Wi-Fi**  **LAN** Is printer set to obtain an IP address automatically, or is wireless router requesting manual addressing?

Refer to the wireless router's manual to enable DHCP (auto-acquisition) settings on the wireless router or to set a valid IP address on the printer.

Check 2  **Wi-Fi**  **LAN** When you set printer's IP address manually, correct IP address may not be set.

Check the network name (SSID) and the password of the wireless router you want to connect to, the IP address applicable range, and then enter the appropriate IP address on the printer side. If you are unsure, set the printer's IP address to automatic (DHCP).

C-5

 **Wi-Fi** Unable to connect to the specified network. Check the following items.

Check 1  **Wi-Fi** Check power status of printer, network devices (e.g. wireless router), and your PC/smartphone/tablet.

This printer can be connected to a wireless router that supports 2.4 GHz, 5 GHz, or both bands. If the wireless router is set up to use the same SSID for 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz, set up that SSID on the printer so that the printer and wireless router can be connected at either 2.4 GHz or 5 GHz.

▶▶▶ Note

- Depending on the wireless router, note that different network name (SSID) is assigned for a bandwidth (2.4 GHz or 5 GHz) or its usage (for PC or game machine), using alphanumeric characters at the end of network name.

Check 2



Password on your wireless router may not match password you entered.

Passwords are case sensitive.

Enter the password correctly.

Check 3



Monitor signal status and move printer and wireless router as necessary.

- Place the printer and wireless router where there are no obstacles between them. Wireless communication between different rooms or floors is generally poor.
- Wireless communication can be impeded by building materials containing metal or concrete. If the printer cannot communicate with the computer over a Wi-Fi due to a wall, place the printer and the computer in the same room.
- After changing the installation location, print out the network settings information again and check the status of the signal. Compare with the value in section "3-2-1" in the printed network settings information to determine the installation location.

Check 4



Check wireless channel number of Wi-Fi you are using on computer.

Make sure that the wireless channel number on the wireless router is included in the wireless channel number you checked. If the wireless channel number set for the wireless router is not included, change the wireless channel number of the wireless router.

Check 5



In case of Wi-Fi connection, check if computer that can be accessed by wireless router is restricted.

The wireless router settings may be limiting the number of devices that can be connected at the same time. Remove or relax the restrictions.

To check the settings of the wireless router, refer to the instruction manual provided with it or contact its manufacturer.

▶▶▶ Note

- To check the MAC address or IP address of your computer, see [Checking Computer IP Address or MAC Address](#).

Check 6



If problem occurs only when wireless router is in energy-saving mode, turn off energy-saving mode of wireless router.

If the problem seems to occur suddenly, it may be resolved by updating the wireless router firmware (e.g. update interval of a key, problems of DHCP update interval, etc.). For details, refer to the wireless router's instruction manual.

Check 7



If printer is connected to AirPort Base Station via LAN, make sure you use alphanumeric characters for network name (SSID). (macOS)

If your network name (SSID) contains characters other than single-byte alphanumeric characters, the connection is not established properly. Change the network (SSID) of the printer to use only single-byte alphanumeric characters.

C-4



No default gateway is set.

When you set the IP address of the printer manually, enter a valid default gateway IP address. If you don't know the default gateway, set the IP address to automatic.

C-7



There may be a problem with the signal.

Check the following items.

Check



Monitor signal status and move printer and wireless router as necessary.

- Place the printer and wireless router where there are no obstacles between them. Wireless communication between different rooms or floors is generally poor.
- Wireless communication can be impeded by building materials containing metal or concrete. If the printer cannot communicate with the computer over a Wi-Fi due to a wall, place the printer and the computer in the same room.
- After changing the installation location, print out the network settings information again and check the status of the signal. Compare with the value in section "3-2-1" in the printed network settings information and place the printer in the location with a higher value.

»» Note

- In some cases, "C-7" and "C-9" are displayed at the same time. In that case, refer to both items.

C-8



Too many clients are connected.

Wireless Direct does not allow more than 5 devices to be connected.

If you want to connect additional devices to the printer, unplug any devices that are not in use before adding them.

C-9



The noise level is high and does not differ from the signal level due to various devices other than the printer.

- If devices (microwave oven, external hard disk drive, and other USB 3.0 devices) that emit radio waves of the same frequency bandwidth as a wireless router is nearby, it may cause interference. Place the printer and the wireless router as far away from interference sources as possible.
- After you change the location of the printer, check the signal quality. Compare the value of "3-2-2" in the network settings information and place the printer in the location with a higher value.

»»» Note

- In some cases, "C-7" and "C-9" are displayed at the same time. In that case, refer to both items.

C-10



No IP address is assigned by the wireless router.

Check the following items.

Check 1



Password on your wireless router may not match password you entered.

Passwords are case sensitive.

Enter the password correctly.

Check 2



Set up printer again and reconnect to Wi-Fi.

Check 3



Check DHCP of wireless router. If DHCP is off, set it on.

For details, refer to the wireless router's instruction manual.

C-11



The network name (SSID) remains the default value (The network name (SSID) has not been set). Check the network name (SSID) of the wireless router.

Verify the network name (SSID) and password of the wireless router you want to connect to, and then set it up manually.

»»» Note

- Wi-Fi Connection Assistant allows you to diagnose and repair the network status.

Select the link below to download Wi-Fi Connection Assistant and install it.

- ➡ Checking Printer Connection Status Using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

Refer to below in regard to starting up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

— For Windows:

- ➡ [Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant](#)

— For macOS:

- ➡ [Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant](#)



Cannot Communicate with Printer while It Is in Wireless Direct



Check the following items

Check 1 Check power status of printer and other devices (e.g. computer/smartphone/tablet).

Turn on the printer or devices.

If the power is already turned on, cycle the power.

Check 2 Check settings of your device (e.g. computer/smartphone/tablet).

Make sure Wi-Fi is enabled on your device.

For details, refer to the device's instruction manual.

Check 3 Print out network settings information.

See "Step 1" to "Step 5" in [Cannot Find Printer on Network/Cannot Printing](#).

In the printed network settings information, check if the item "2-2" is not "C-8". If this is the case, the number of connected printers is too many.

Wireless Direct does not allow more than 5 devices to be connected.

When you want to connect additional devices, disconnect any devices that are not in use before adding them.

Check 4 Check that printer is selected as connection for various devices (e.g. computer/smartphone/tablet).

Select the network name (SSID) for Wireless Direct specified for the printer as the connection destination for devices.

Check the destination on your device.

For details, refer to your device's instruction manual or visit the manufacturer's website.

To check the network name (SSID) for Wireless Direct specified for the printer, display it using the operation panel of the printer or print out the network settings information of the printer.

- Display on the operation panel of the printer.

➡ [LAN settings](#)

- Print the network settings.

➡ [Printing Network Settings](#)

Check 5 Check that Wireless Direct password set for printer is entered correctly.

To check the password specified for the printer, display it using the operation panel of the printer or print out the network settings information.

- Display on the operation panel of the printer.

➡ [LAN settings](#)

- Print the network settings.

➔ [Printing Network Settings](#)

Check 6 Check that printer is not placed too far away from device.

If the distance between the printer and the device is too far, wireless communication becomes poor. Place the printer and the device close to each other.

➤➤➤ **Note**

- Wireless Direct is set to disabled when you connect to and use an EAP router. Also, if you set Wireless Direct to enable in this case, the wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) will be disabled.
- When using IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise), enable **Administrator mode** so that the Wireless Direct settings cannot be changed.

Checking Network Information of Printer

- ➡ [Checking Printer IP Address or MAC Address](#)
- ➡ [Checking Computer IP Address or MAC Address](#)
- ➡ [Checking Communication Between the Computer, the Printer, and the Wireless Router](#)
- ➡ [Checking Network Setting Information](#)

Checking Printer IP Address or MAC Address

A

To check the printer's IP Address or MAC address, print out the network settings information or use the operation panel to display it.

- Display on the operation panel.

➡ [LAN settings](#)

- Print the network settings.

➡ [Printing Network Settings](#)

For Windows, you can check the network setting information on the computer screen.

➡ [Canon Wi-Fi Connection Assistant Screen](#)

Checking Computer IP Address or MAC Address

A

To check the IP Address or MAC address of your computer, follow the instructions below.

- **For Windows:**

1. Select **Command Prompt** from **Start**.

2. Enter "ipconfig/all" and press **Enter**.

The IP address and MAC address of your computer appear. If your computer is not connected to a network, the IP address does not appear.

- **For macOS:**

1. Select **System Settings** from Apple menu, and then click **Network**.

2. Make sure network interface used by computer is selected.

Make sure **Wi-Fi** is **Connected** when connecting via **Wi-Fi** or **Ethernet** is **Connected** for Wired LAN connection and click.

3. Click **Details** to check the IP address.

The IP address of your computer appears. To check the MAC Address, click **Hardware**.

Checking Communication Between the Computer, the Printer, and the wireless router

A

Perform a ping test to check if communication is taking place.

- **For Windows:**

1. Select **Command Prompt** from **Start**.
2. Type "ping XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX" and press **Enter**.

"XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX" is the IP address of the target device.

If communication is taking place, a message like the one shown below appears.

Reply from XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX: bytes=32 time=10ms TTL=255

If **Request timed out** appears, communication is not taking place.

- **For macOS:**

1. Start **Terminal** as shown below.

Select **Computer** from **Go** menu of **Finder**, double-click **Macintosh HD > Applications > Utilities > Terminal**.

2. Type "ping -c3 XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX" and press **Enter**.

"XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX" is the IP address of the target device.

If communication is taking place, a message like the one shown below appears.

64 bytes from XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX: icmp_seq=0 ttl=64 time=3.394 ms

64 bytes from XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=1.786 ms

64 bytes from XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=1.739 ms

--- XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX ping statistics ---

3 packets transmitted, 3 packets received, 0% packet loss

If the following message is displayed, communication is not working properly.

PING XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX (XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX) : 56 data bytes

---XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX ping statistics ---

3 packets transmitted, 0 packets received, 100% packet loss

Checking Network Setting Information

A

To check the printer's network settings information, display it using the operation panel of the printer or print it out.

- Display on the operation panel of the printer.
 - ➡ [LAN settings](#)
- Print the network settings.
 - ➡ [Printing Network Settings](#)



Printing Network Settings



Use the operation panel to print the printer's current network settings.

Important

- The network settings printout contains important information about your network. Handle it with care.

1. Check that printer is turned on.
2. Load three or more sheets of **A4** or **Letter** sized **Plain Paper**.

➡ [Loading Paper](#)

3. Select **LAN settings** on HOME screen.

Note

- If you specify the administrator password, enter the password.

4. Select **Print details**.
5. Check message and select **Yes**.
6. When the confirmation screen for printing passwords appears, select **Yes** or **No**.

The printer starts printing the network setting information.

The following information on the printer's network setting is printed out. (Some setting values are not displayed depending on the printer settings.)

Item Number	Item	Description	Setting
1	Product Information	Product information	-
1-1	Product Name	Product name	XXXXXXXX
1-2	ROM Version	ROM version	XXXXXXXX
1-3	Serial Number	Serial number	XXXXXXXX
1-4	Default Password	Initial administrator password	XXXXXXXX
2	Network Diagnostics	Network diagnostics	-

2-1	Diagnostic Result	Diagnostic result	XXXXXXXX
2-2	Result Codes	Result codes	XXXXXXXX
2-3	Result Code Details	Result code details	See Solve Network Troubles with The Printer's Diagnostic Functions to check details on the diagnostic result and result codes.
3	Wireless LAN	Wireless LAN	Enable/Disable
3-2	Infrastructure	Infrastructure	Enable/Disable
3-2-1	Signal Strength	Signal strength	0 to 100 [%]
3-2-2	Link Quality	Link quality	0 to 100 [%]
3-2-3	Frequency	Frequency	2.4/5 [GHz]
3-2-4	MAC Address	MAC address	XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX
3-2-5	Connection	Connection status	Active/Inactive
3-2-6	SSID	SSID	Wireless LAN network name (SSID)
3-2-7	Channel	Channel	XXX (1 to 13, 36, 40, 44, 48, 52, 56, 60, 64, 100, 104, 108, 112, 116, 120, 124, 128, 132, 136, 140, 149, 153, 157, 161, 165)
3-2-8	Encryption	Encryption method	none/AES
3-2-10	Authentication	Authentication method	none/auto/WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK/WPA3-SAE/WPA-EAP/WPA2-EAP/WPA3-EAP
3-2-11	TCP/IPv4	TCP/IPv4	Enable
3-2-12	IP Address	IP address	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
3-2-13	Subnet Mask	Subnet mask	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
3-2-14	Default Gateway	Default gateway	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
3-2-15	TCP/IPv6	TCP/IPv6	Enable/Disable
3-2-16	Link Local Address	Link local address	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
3-2-17	Link Local Prefix Length	Link local prefix length	XXX
3-2-18	Stateless Address1	Stateless address 1	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
3-2-19	Stateless Prefix Length1	Stateless prefix length 1	XXX
3-2-20	Stateless Address2	Stateless address 2	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX

			XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
3-2-21	Stateless Prefix Length2	Stateless prefix length 2	XXX
3-2-22	Stateless Address3	Stateless address 3	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
3-2-23	Stateless Prefix Length3	Stateless prefix length 3	XXX
3-2-24	Stateless Address4	Stateless address 4	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
3-2-25	Stateless Prefix Length4	Stateless prefix length 4	XXX
3-2-26	Default Gateway1	Default gateway 1	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
3-2-27	Default Gateway2	Default gateway 2	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
3-2-28	Default Gateway3	Default gateway 3	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
3-2-29	Default Gateway4	Default gateway 4	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
3-2-33	IPsec	IPsec setting	Active/Inactive
3-2-34	Security Protocol	Security method	ESP/ESP & AH/AH/Blank (Not selected)
3-2-35	Wireless LAN DRX	Discontinuous reception (wireless LAN)	Enable/Disable
3-3	Wireless Direct/Access Point Mode	Operation mode for Wireless Direct	Enable/Disable
3-3-1	MAC Address	MAC address	XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX
3-3-2	Connection	Connection status	Active/Inactive
3-3-3	SSID	SSID	Wireless Direct network name (SSID)
3-3-4	Password	Password	Wireless Direct password
3-3-5	Channel	Channel	3,6,36,40
3-3-6	Encryption	Encryption method	AES
3-3-7	Authentication	Authentication method	WPA2-PSK
3-3-8	TCP/IPv4	TCP/IPv4	Enable

3-3-9	IP Address	IP address	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
3-3-10	Subnet Mask	Subnet mask	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
3-3-11	Default Gateway	Default gateway	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
3-3-12	TCP/IPv6	TCP/IPv6	Enable/Disable
3-3-13	Link Local Address	Link local address	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
3-3-14	Link Local Prefix Length	Link local prefix length	XXX
3-3-15	IPsec	IPsec setting	Active/Inactive
3-3-16	Security Protocol	Security method	ESP/ESP & AH/AH/Blank (Not selected)
3-3-17	Wireless LAN DRX	Discontinuous reception (wireless direct)	Disable
3-3-18	Frequency	Wireless Direct frequency	2.4/5 [GHz]
4	Wired LAN	Wired LAN	Enable/Disable
4-1	MAC Address	MAC address	XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX
4-2	Connection	Wired LAN status	Active/Inactive
4-3	TCP/IPv4	TCP/IPv4	Enable
4-4	IP Address	IP address	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
4-5	Subnet Mask	Subnet mask	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
4-6	Default Gateway	Default gateway	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
4-7	TCP/IPv6	TCP/IPv6	Enable/Disable
4-8	Link Local Address	Link local address	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
4-9	Link Local Prefix Length	Link local prefix length	XXX
4-10	Stateless Address1	Stateless address 1	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
4-11	Stateless Prefix Length1	Stateless prefix length 1	XXX
4-12	Stateless Address2	Stateless address 2	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX

4-13	Stateless Prefix Length2	Stateless prefix length 2	XXX
4-14	Stateless Address3	Stateless address 3	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
4-15	Stateless Prefix Length3	Stateless prefix length 3	XXX
4-16	Stateless Address4	Stateless address 4	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
4-17	Stateless Prefix Length4	Stateless prefix length 4	XXX
4-18	Default Gateway1	Default gateway 1	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
4-19	Default Gateway2	Default gateway 2	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
4-20	Default Gateway3	Default gateway 3	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
4-21	Default Gateway4	Default gateway 4	XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX XXXX:XXXX:XXXX:XXXX
4-25	IPsec	IPsec setting	Active/Inactive
4-26	Security Protocol	Security method	ESP/ESP & AH/AH/Blank (Not selected)
4-27	Wired LAN DRX	Discontinuous reception (wired LAN)	Enable/Disable
5	Other Settings	Other settings	-
5-1	Printer Name	Printer name	Printer name
5-2	Wireless Direct Dev-Name	Device name for wireless direct	Device name for wireless direct
5-4	WSD Printing	WSD printing setting	Enable/Disable
5-5	WSD Timeout	Timeout	1/5/10/15/20 [min]
5-6	LPD Printing	LPD printing setting	Enable/Disable
5-7	RAW Printing	RAW printing setting	Enable/Disable
5-9	Bonjour	Bonjour setting	Enable/Disable
5-10	Bonjour Service Name	Bonjour service name	Bonjour service name
5-11	LLMNR	LLMNR setting	Enable/Disable

5-12	SNMP	SNMP setting	Enable/Disable
5-14	DNS Server	Obtain DNS server address automatically	Auto/Manual
5-15	Primary Server	Primary server address	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
5-16	Secondary Server	Secondary server address	XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
5-17	Proxy Server	Proxy server setting	Enable/Disable
5-18	Proxy Address	Proxy address	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
5-19	Proxy Port	Proxy port specification	1 to 65535
5-20	Cert. Fingerprt(SHA-1)	Certificate fingerprint(SHA-1)	xxxxxxx xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx xxxxxxx xxxxxxxx
5-21	Cert. Fingerprt(SHA-256)	Certificate fingerprint(SHA-256)	xxxxxxx xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx xxxxxxx xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx xxxxxxxx
7	Web Services	Web services	-
7-1	Unsent Usage Logs	Number of unsent usage logs	0 to 200
7-2	Usage Log Last Sent	Last date when usage log was sent	XXXXXXX
7-3	Web Service Status	Registration status	Not set/Disabled/Registration pending/Registered
7-4	Log Transmission Status	Transmission result	Not activated/Processing/Server error/Connection error/Timeout error/Error/Awaiting server response/Active

("XX" represents alphanumeric characters.)



Restoring Printer's LAN Settings to Defaults



»» Important

- Initialization erases all network settings on the printer, making printing/scanning/faxing operation from a computer over a network impossible. To use the printer over a network again after restoring it to the factory defaults, refer to Setup Guide and redo setup.
- If **LCD, Remote UI, and other tools** is set as the scope for **Administrator password settings**, the administrator password must be entered.

Initialize the network setting using the printer's operation panel.

➡ [Reset settings](#)



Default Network Settings



LAN Connection Defaults

Item	Default
Network name (SSID)	BJNPSETUP
Wi-Fi security	Disable
IP address (IPv4)	Auto setup
IP address (IPv6)	Auto setup
Set printer name*	XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
Enable/disable IPv6	Enable
Enable/disable WSD	Enable
Timeout setting (WSD)	15 min.
Enable/disable Bonjour	Enable
Bonjour service name*	Canon ModelName
LPR protocol settings	Enable
RAW protocol	ON
LLMNR	ON
Wi-Fi DRX settings	Enable
Wired LAN DRX settings	Enable

("XX" represents alphanumeric characters.)

* Default value depends on printer. Depending on the model, use operation panel to check value of the printer.

➡ [LAN settings](#)

Wireless Direct Defaults

Item	Default

Network name (SSID)	DIRECT-abXX-ModelName *1 *2
Password	YYYYYYYYYY *3
Wi-Fi security	WPA2-PSK (AES)
Connection request confirmation	Displayed
2.4GHz/5GHz Switch	2.4GHz

*1 Default value depends on printer. Depending on the model, use operation panel to check value of the printer.

*2 "ab" is specified at random and "XX" represents last two digits of printer's MAC address. (The value is specified when the printer is turned on for the first time.)

*3 The password is specified automatically when the printer is turned on for the first time.



Connecting with Wireless Direct



You can connect devices (e.g. computer, smartphone, or tablet) to the printer by two methods below.

- Wireless connection (connecting devices via a wireless router)
- Direct wireless connection (connecting devices directly without a wireless router)

This section describes Wireless Direct, which allows you to print by connecting the devices to the printer directly.

Important

- You can connect up to 5 devices to the printer at the same time with Wireless Direct.
- Check the usage restrictions and connect the printer to the Wireless Direct.
 - ➡ [Restrictions](#)
- Some printers support IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise). If you enable Wireless Direct while IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise) is enabled, **Enable/disable Wi-Fi** is set to **Disable**.

To connect with IEEE802.1X/EAP again, select **LAN settings** on HOME screen > **Wi-Fi** > **Settings** in this order, and select **Enable** for **Enable/disable Wi-Fi**.

When IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise) is enabled, enable **Administrator mode** so that the Wireless Direct settings cannot be changed.

Changing Printer Setting to Use Wireless Direct

1. Check that printer is turned on.
2. Select **LAN settings** on HOME screen and press **OK** button.
 - ➡ [Setting Items on Operation Panel](#)
3. Select **Wireless Direct** and press **OK** button.
4. Select **Settings** and press **OK** button.
5. Select **Enable/disable Wireless Direct** and press **OK** button.
6. Check displayed message on the operation panel, select **Yes**, and press **OK** button.

After Wireless Direct is enabled, the identifier (SSID) for using the printer with Wireless Direct is displayed.

You can check various settings of Wireless Direct by scrolling the screen.

▶▶▶ Note

- The password is required when connecting a device to the printer. Depending on the device you are using, no password is required.
- When you connect a Wi-Fi Direct compatible device to the printer, select the device name displayed on your device.
- To change the identifier (SSID) and the password, see below.

➡ [Changing Wireless Direct Setting](#)

Connecting a smartphone/tablet/computer to the printer



1. Enable Wi-Fi on your smartphone/tablet/computer.

Enable Wi-Fi in the Settings menu on your smartphone/tablet/computer.

For instructions on enabling the Wi-Fi function, refer to the instruction manual for your smartphone/tablet/computer.

2. Select "DIRECT-XXXX-ModelName" ("X" represents alphanumeric characters) from list displayed on your device.

▶▶▶ Note

- If "DIRECT-XXXX-ModelName" does not appear on the list, Wireless Direct may not be enabled.

See [Enable Wireless Direct for printer](#) to enable Wireless Direct.

3. Enter password.

The device is connected to the printer.

▶▶▶ Note

- To check the password specified for the printer, see below.
 1. Select **LAN settings** on HOME screen and press **OK** button.
 2. Select **Wireless Direct** and press **OK** button.
 3. Select **Show password** and press **OK** button.

- Depending on the device you are using, entering the password is required to connect to the printer via Wi-Fi, so enter the password specified for the printer.
- If your Wireless Direct compatible device is set to prioritize using Wi-Fi Direct, the printer displays a confirmation screen asking if you allow the device to connect to the printer.
Make sure the displayed name is the same as that of your wireless communication device and select **Yes**.

You can print from your smartphone or tablet by installing the App. Download it from App Store and Google Play.

- ➡ For iOS device
- ➡ For Android device

Changing Wireless Direct Setting



Change the settings for the Wireless Direct following the procedure below.

1. Select **LAN settings** on HOME screen and press **OK** button.
2. Select **Wireless Direct** and press **OK** button.

▶▶▶ Note

- To change the Wireless Direct settings, you need to enable Wireless Direct in advance.
See [Enable Wireless Direct for printer](#) to enable Wireless Direct.

3. Select **Settings** and press **OK** button.

- **Change SSID/device name**

Change the identifier (SSID) for Wireless Direct.

The identifier (SSID) is the printer's name displayed on a Wireless Direct compatible device.

Follow the procedure below to change the identifier (SSID).

- To set manually
 1. Press **OK** button to enter the input screen.
 2. Enter the identifier or printer name.
 3. Check the input contents and select **OK** button.
- To set automatically
 1. Select **Auto update**.
 2. Check displayed message and select **Yes**.

- **Change password**

Change the password for Wireless Direct.

- To set manually

1. Select **Change manually**.
2. Press **OK** button to enter the input screen.
3. Enter the new password (10 characters).
4. Check the input contents and select **OK** button.

- To set automatically

1. Select **Auto update**.
2. Check displayed message and select **Yes**.

- **Connection request confirmation**

Change the confirmation screen setting when a Wi-Fi Direct compatible device is connecting to the printer.

If you want to display the screen to inform you a Wi-Fi Direct compatible device is connecting to the printer, select **Yes**.

 Important

- To prevent an unauthorized access, we recommend you should select the setting to display the confirmation screen.

- **2.4GHz/5GHz Switch**

Change the frequency used for Wireless Direct.

When using Wireless Direct (2.4 GHz), there may be a disconnection if there is a Bluetooth speaker nearby. If the printer supports 5 GHz, switching to 5 GHz will reduce the trouble.

 Note

- If you change the Wireless Direct setting of the printer, also change the wireless router setting of the device.
- This web page contains information about several models. Depending on the specifications of the printer you are using, some of the features described (device functions, connection method, operating procedure and etc.) may not apply.

For details about the functions of your printer, see [Specifications](#).

Cannot Print from Smartphone/Tablet

If you cannot print from your smartphone/tablet, it is possible that your smartphone/tablet cannot communicate with the printer.

Check the cause of your problem according to the connection method.

➡ [Cannot Communicate with Printer via Wi-Fi](#)

➡ [Cannot Connect to Printer through Wireless Direct](#)

▶▶▶ Note

- For problems on printing with other connection methods or more on performing settings of each connection method:
 - ➡ Using Cloud Service
 - ➡ Printing from iOS Device (AirPrint)



Cannot Communicate with Printer via Wi-Fi



If your smartphone/tablet cannot communicate with the printer, check the following.

Check 1 Check power status of printer, network devices (e.g. wireless router), and your smartphone/tablet.

- Turn on the printer or devices.
- If the power is already turned on, cycle the power.
- It may be necessary to resolve wireless router problems (e.g. update interval of a key, problems of DHCP update interval, energy saving mode) or to update the wireless router firmware.

For details, contact the manufacturer of your wireless router.

Check 2 Check settings of your smartphone/tablet.

Make sure Wi-Fi is enabled on your device.

For details, refer to your device's instruction manual.

Check 3 Is printer connected to wireless router?

- Check the connection status between the printer and wireless router by the icon on the operation panel.

If the  or  icon is not displayed, Wi-Fi is disabled. Turn on wireless communication on the printer.

- Make sure the network settings of the printer (e.g. network name (SSID) or network key (password), etc.) are identical with those of the wireless router.

To check the settings of the wireless router, refer to the instruction manual provided with it or contact its manufacturer.

To check the current network settings of the printer, print out the network settings information or use the operation panel to display it.

- Display on the operation panel of the printer.

➡ [LAN settings](#)

- Print the network settings.

➡ [Printing Network Settings](#)

➡➡➡ Note

- If you have a computer, Wi-Fi Connection Assistant allows you to diagnose and repair the network status.

Select the link below to download Wi-Fi Connection Assistant and install it.

➡ Checking Printer Connection Status Using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

Refer to below in regard to starting up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

- For Windows:

➡ [Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant](#)

- For macOS:

➡ [Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant](#)

Check 4 Are network settings of your smartphone/tablet identical with those of wireless router?

Make sure the network settings of the printer (e.g. network name (SSID) or network key (password), etc.) are identical with those of the wireless router.

To check the settings of your smartphone/tablet, refer to the instruction manual provided with it.

If the network settings of your smartphone/tablet are not identical with those of the wireless router, change the network settings of it to match with those of the wireless router.

Check 5 Make sure the printer is not placed too far away from the wireless router.

If the distance between the printer and wireless router is too far, wireless communication becomes poor. Place the printer and wireless router close to each other.

Check 6 There may be a problem with the signal. Monitor signal status and move printer and wireless router as necessary.

Place the printer and wireless router where there are no obstacles between them. Wireless communication between different rooms or floors is generally poor. Wireless communication can be impeded by building materials containing metal or concrete. If the printer cannot communicate with the computer over a Wi-Fi due to a wall, place the printer and the computer in the same room.

In addition, if a device like a microwave oven that emits radio waves of the same frequency bandwidth as a wireless router is nearby, it may cause interference. Place the wireless router as far away from interference sources as possible.

Check the signal strength on the operation panel.

➡ [LCD and Operation Panel](#)

»»» Note

- If the web page cannot be printed using an Android device, it may be possible to print it by changing Wireless Direct connection.

➡ [Connecting with Wireless Direct](#)



Cannot Communicate with Printer while It Is in Wireless Direct



If your smartphone/tablet cannot communicate with the printer in the Wireless Direct, check the following.

Check 1 Check power status of printer and device (e.g. smartphone/tablet).

Turn on the printer or devices.

If the power is already turned on, cycle the power.

Check 2 Check if the  icon is displayed on the operation panel of the printer.

If it is not displayed, Wireless Direct is disabled. Please turn on the Wireless Direct.

Check 3 Check settings of your smartphone/tablet.

Make sure Wi-Fi is enabled on your device.

For details, refer to your device's instruction manual.

Check 4 Check that printer is selected as connection for devices (e.g. smartphone/tablet).

Select the network name (SSID) for Wireless Direct specified for the printer as the connection destination for devices.

Check the destination on your device.

For details, refer to your device's instruction manual or visit the manufacturer's website.

To check the network name (SSID) for Wireless Direct specified for the printer, print out the network settings information or use the operation panel to display it.

- Display on the operation panel of the printer.

➡ [LAN settings](#)

- Print the network settings.

➡ [Printing Network Settings](#)

Check 5 Check that Wireless Direct password set for printer is entered correctly.

To check the password specified for the printer, print out the network settings information or use the operation panel to display it.

- Display on the operation panel of the printer.

➡ [LAN settings](#)

- Print the network settings.

➡ [Printing Network Settings](#)

Check 6 Check that printer is not placed too far away from device.

If the distance between the printer and the device is too far, wireless communication becomes poor. Place the printer and the device close to each other.

Check 7 Check that 5 devices are already connected.

Wireless Direct does not allow more than 5 devices to be connected.

➤➤➤ Note

- Some printers support IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise). Note that when IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise) is set to **Enable**, Wireless Direct is set to **Disable**.
- This web page contains information about several models. Depending on the specifications of the printer you are using, some of the features described (device functions, connection method, operating procedure and etc.) may not apply.

For details about the functions of your printer, see [Specifications](#).

Printing Problems

- **Printer Does Not Print**
- **Printer Does Not Pick Up or Feed the Paper/"No Paper" Error**
- **Cannot Print on the Disc Label**
- **Ink Does Not Come Out/Blurry or Fuzzy/Inaccurate or Bleeding Colors/Streaks**
- **Lines Are Misaligned/Distorted**
- **Paper Is Smudged/Printed Surface Is Scratched/Ink Blots/Paper Curl**
- **Change to Offline (Windows)/Cannot Communicate (Windows)**
- **No Ink Level Appears in Canon IJ Status Monitor (Windows)**



Printer Does Not Print



Check 1 Make sure printer is turned on.

If not, make sure the printer is securely plugged in and press **ON** button to turn on.

The **ON** lamp flashes while the printer is initializing. Wait until the **ON** lamp stops flashing and remains lit.

»» Note

- If you are printing large data such as photos or other graphics, printing may take longer to start. The **ON** lamp flashes while the computer is processing data and sending it to the printer. Wait until printing starts.

Check 2 Make sure printer is properly connected to computer.

If you are using a USB cable, make sure it is securely connected to both the printer and the computer. When the USB cable is securely plugged in, check the following:

- If you are using a relay device such as a USB hub, disconnect it, connect the printer directly to the computer, and retry the printing. If printing starts normally, there is a problem with the relay device. Contact the vendor of the relay device.
- There could also be a problem with the USB cable. Replace the USB cable and retry the printing.

If you use the printer with a network connection, make sure the printer is correctly set up for network use.

➡ [Cannot Find Printer on Network](#) (Windows/macOS)

»» Note

- Wi-Fi Connection Assistant allows you to diagnose and repair the network status.

Select the link below to download Wi-Fi Connection Assistant and install it.

➡ [Checking Printer Connection Status Using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant](#)

Refer to below in regard to starting up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

— For Windows:

➡ [Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant](#)

— For macOS:

➡ [Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant](#)

Check 3 Make sure paper settings match information set for top feed or manual feed tray.

If the paper settings do not match the information set for the top feed or manual feed tray, an error message appears on the operation panel. Follow the instructions on the operation panel to solve the problem.

»»» Note

- You can select whether the message which prevents misprinting is displayed.
 - To change the message view setting when printing using the printer's operation panel:
 - ➡ [Paper-related settings](#)
 - To change the message view setting when printing using the Printer Driver:
 - ➡ [Changing the Printer Operation Mode](#) (Windows)
 - ➡ [Changing the Printer Operation Mode](#) (macOS)

Check 4 If printing from a computer, delete unnecessary print jobs.

- **For Windows:**

- ➡ [Deleting the Undesired Print Job](#)

- **For macOS:**

- ➡ [Deleting the Undesired Print Job](#)

Check 5 Make sure that the multi-purpose tray guide is closed.

If the multi-purpose tray guide is opened, close it.

Check 6 Is the manual feed tray in the paper feed position?

If the multi-purpose tray guide is in the paper jam clearing position, return the tray to the paper feed position.

Check 7 Is your printer's Printer Driver selected when printing?

The printer will not print properly if you are using a Printer Driver for a different printer.

- **For Windows:**

Make sure "Canon XXX series" (where "XXX" is the model name) is selected in the **Print** dialog box.

»»» Note

- If multiple printers are registered to your computer, set your printer as **Let Windows manage my default printer** so that it is selected by default.
 - ➡ Default Printer Keeps Changing (Windows)

- **For macOS:**

Make sure your printer's name is selected in **Printer** in the Print dialog.

»»» Note

- If multiple printers are registered to your computer, select **Set as Default Printer** from **System Settings > Printers & Scanners** for a printer to make the one selected by default.

Check 8 Does the page size setting match the size of paper loaded in the printer?

- **For Windows:**

Check the displayed message to clear the error. Then, check **Page Size** setting in **Page Setup** sheet of the Printer Driver and load paper that is the same size as the setting and try printing again.

Set the printer not to detect the width of the paper using the Printer Driver.

To set the printer not to detect the width of the paper, open the Printer Driver setup window, and in **Custom Settings** under **Maintenance** sheet, select **Disables paper width detection when printing from computer** check box, and then click **OK**.

To open the Printer Driver setup window, see [Opening Printer Driver's Setup Screen](#).

Clear **Disables paper width detection when printing from computer** check box again once printing is complete, and then click **OK**.

- **For macOS:**

Check the displayed message to clear the error. Then, check **Page Size** setting in **Print** dialog and load paper that is the same size as the setting and try printing again.

Set the printer not to detect the width of the paper using the Canon IJ Printer Utility2.

To set the printer not to detect the width of the paper, open the Canon IJ Printer Utility2, select **Custom Settings** in the pop-up menu, select **Disable paper width detection when printing from computer** check box, and then click **Apply**.

To open the Canon IJ Printer Utility2, see [Opening the Canon IJ Printer Utility2](#).

Clear **Disable paper width detection when printing from computer** check box again once printing is complete, and then click **Apply**.

Check 9 Are media type and paper size specified properly in the Printer Driver?

When the media type is specified to **Photo Paper Pro Premium Matte A**, **Premium Fine Art Rough**, or **Matte Photo Paper** in the Printer Driver, specify a paper size from the following size that has wide margins.

- **A4 (Margin 25)**
- **Letter (Margin 25)**
- **A3 (Margin 25)**
- **A3+ (Margin 25)**
- **11"x17" (Margin 25)**
- **L 89x127mm**
- **4"x6" 10x15cm**
- **210x594mm (Margin 25)**

Important

- By canceling the safety margin regulation with the following method, you can print with normal paper size.

- **For Windows:**

Click **Print Options** on **Page Setup** sheet of the Printer Driver. Then select **Cancel the safety margin regulation for paper size** check box in the dialog that appears.

— **For macOS:**

Select **Cancel Margin Regulation** check box in **Advanced Paper Settings** in the Print dialog.

If you print with normal paper size, conditions such as paper abrasion may cause paper stains or deterioration of print quality depending on the environment. We recommend that you print with a paper size that has wide margins.

Check 10 Reconfigure the printer port settings. (Windows)

• **For connecting printer to computer using USB cable:**

Delete the printer registered to your computer to be recognized again.

◦ **For Windows 11:**

1. Check that printer is turned on.
2. Open Set Printers & scanners and click the icon of the printer that needs to fix the printer port settings.
3. Click **Remove** and delete the printer.
4. Unplug the USB cable from the printer.
5. Reconnect the USB cable.

The Printer Driver rebuilding starts and a new printer icon is added.

◦ **For Windows 10:**

1. Check that printer is turned on.
2. Open Set Printers & scanners and click the icon of the printer that needs to fix the printer port settings.
3. Click **Remove device** and delete the printer.
4. Unplug the USB cable from the printer.
5. Reconnect the USB cable.

The Printer Driver rebuilding starts and a new printer icon is added.

◦ **For Windows 8 / Windows 8.1:**

1. Check that printer is turned on.
2. Select **Devices and Printers** in the Control Panel and right-click the icon of the printer that needs to fix the printer port settings.
3. Select **Remove device** and delete the printer.
4. Unplug the USB cable from the printer.
5. Reconnect the USB cable.

The Printer Driver rebuilding starts and a new printer icon is added.

If the printer icon is not added after about 5 minutes USB cable is reconnected, Printer Driver is not installed correctly. Redo setup.

• **For connecting printer to the network:**

Wi-Fi Connection Assistant allows you to diagnose and repair the network status.

Select the link below to download Wi-Fi Connection Assistant and install it.

➡ [Checking Printer Connection Status Using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant](#)

Refer to below in regard to starting up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

➡ [Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant](#)

Check 11 Are you trying to print a large data file? (Windows)

If you are trying to print a large data file, it takes a long time to start printing.

If the printer does not start printing after a certain period of time, select **On** for **Prevention of Print Data Loss** on the **Print Options** dialog box.

For details, refer to [Page Setup Tab Description](#).

Important

- Selecting **On** for **Prevention of Print Data Loss** may reduce print quality.
- After printing is completed, select **Off** for **Prevention of Print Data Loss**.

Check 12 WSD Printer Driver is enabled, you may not be able to print.

Set **WSD settings** to **Disable** or reinstall MP Drivers (Printer Driver).

For Wi-Fi

Select **LAN settings** on HOME screen > **Wi-Fi** > **Settings** > **Advanced** > **WSD settings** in this order, and select **Disable** for **Enable/disable WSD**.

For Wired LAN

Select **LAN settings** on HOME screen > **Wired LAN** > **Settings** > **Advanced** > **WSD settings** in this order, and select **Disable** for **Enable/disable WSD**.

To install MP Drivers (Printer Driver)

➡ [Set Up](#)

Check 13 If printing from your computer, restart the computer.

Restart the computer and try printing again.

Important

- For Windows:
To restart your computer, choose **Restart** instead of **Shut down**.



Printer Does Not Pick Up or Feed the Paper/"No Paper" Error



Check 1 Check the printer is placed on the right spot.

Place the printer on a flat table or similar platform.

Check 2 Is paper loaded?

➔ [Loading Paper](#)

Check 3 When loading paper, consider the following.

- When loading two or more sheets of paper, align the edges of the sheets before loading the paper.
- When loading two or more sheets of paper, make sure the paper stack does not exceed the paper load limit.

However, paper may not feed correctly at the maximum capacity, depending on the type of paper or environmental conditions (very high or low temperature and humidity). In such cases, reduce the amount of paper you load at a time to less than half of the paper load limit.

- Always load the paper in portrait orientation, regardless of the printing orientation.

In the manual feed tray:

When you load the paper, load one sheet at a time. When you print continuously, set the next paper after the last one is finished printing.

Check 4 Is paper too thick or curled?

➔ [Unsupported Media Types](#)

Check 5 When loading envelopes or Hagaki, consider the following.

- When printing on envelopes, see [Loading Envelopes in the Top Feed](#), and prepare the envelopes before printing.

Once you have prepared the envelopes, load them in portrait orientation. If the envelopes are placed in landscape orientation, they will not feed properly.

Check 6 Check paper source setting.

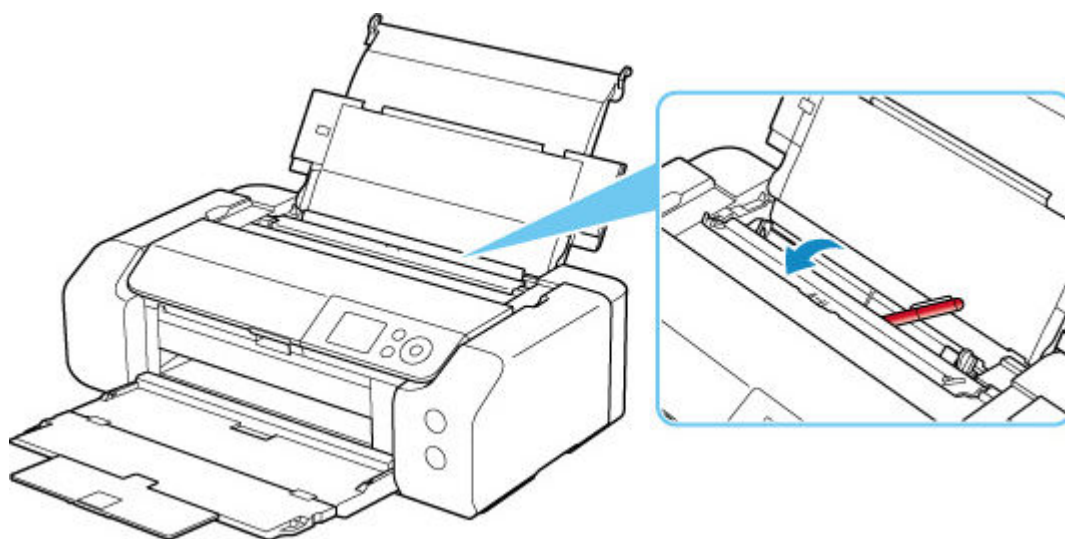
➔ [Switching the Paper Source to Match the Purpose](#)

Check 7 Make sure paper weight is suitable for use with printer.

➔ [Media Types You Can Use](#)

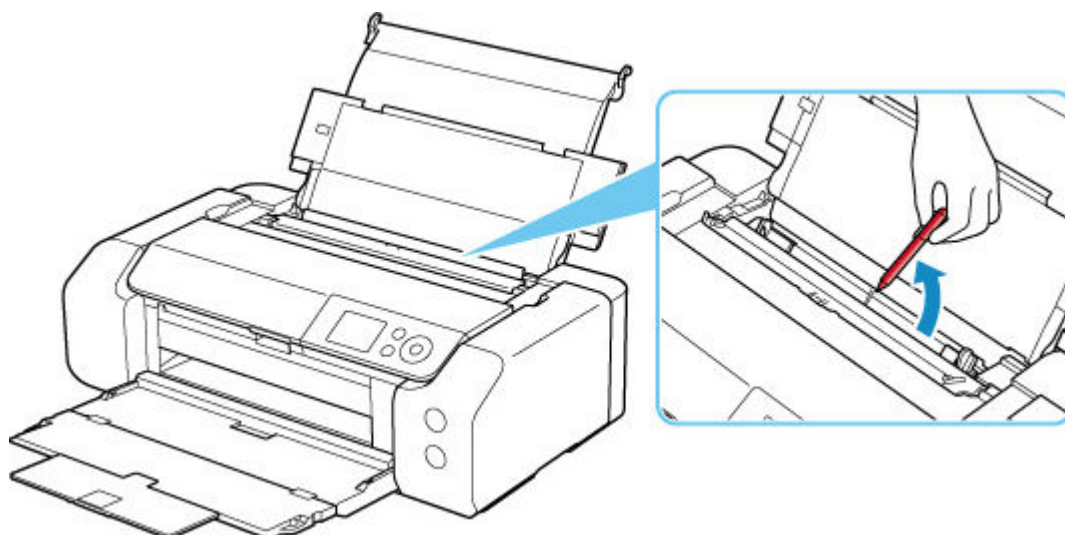
Check 8

Make sure that there are not any foreign objects in the top feed or manual feed tray.



If the paper is jammed, see [List of Support Code for Error \(Paper Jams\)](#) to remove it.

If there are any foreign objects in the top feed or manual feed tray, be sure to turn off the printer, unplug it from the power supply, then remove the foreign object.

**Note**

- If the feed slot cover is opened, close it slowly.

Check 9

Make sure that the multi-purpose tray guide is closed completely.

Paper does not feed properly if it is even slightly open.

➡ [Placing a Printable Disc](#)

Check 10

Clean paper feed roller.

➡ [Cleaning Paper Feed Rollers](#)

Note

- Cleaning the paper feed roller abrades it, so do this only when necessary.

If the measures above do not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

Cannot Print on the Disc Label

- ➔ [Disc Label Printing Does Not Start](#)
- ➔ [Multi-Purpose Tray Does Not Feed Properly](#)
- ➔ [Multi-Purpose Tray Jammed](#)



Disc Label Printing Does Not Start



Check 1 Is multi-purpose tray placed properly?

Place the multi-purpose tray properly again and press **OK** button.

Use the multi-purpose tray supplied with this printer.

For more on placing the multi-purpose tray, see [Placing a Printable Disc](#).

Check 2 Is printable disc placed on multi-purpose tray?

Place the printable disc on the multi-purpose tray properly and press **OK** button.

Use the multi-purpose tray supplied with this printer.

For more on placing the multi-purpose tray, see [Placing a Printable Disc](#).

Check 3 Has time elapsed since you placed the multi-purpose tray?

If a certain period of time has elapsed since you placed the multi-purpose tray, it may be ejected.

Follow the instructions on the operation panel and try the operation again.



Multi-Purpose Tray Does Not Feed Properly



Check 1 Is multi-purpose tray placed properly?

Place the multi-purpose tray properly again and press **OK** button.

Use the multi-purpose tray supplied with this printer.

For more on placing the multi-purpose tray, see [Placing a Printable Disc](#).

Check 2 Unrecognizable printable disc may be placed.

We recommend using printable discs specially processed to be printed on by an inkjet printer.

Multi-Purpose Tray Jammed

A

Pull out the multi-purpose tray gently.

If the multi-purpose tray cannot be pulled out, cycle the power switch. The multi-purpose tray will automatically be ejected.

When the multi-purpose tray is pulled out, place it again and retry printing. For more on placing the multi-purpose tray, see [Placing a Printable Disc](#).

If the multi-purpose tray is still jammed, check if there is a problem with the printable disc.

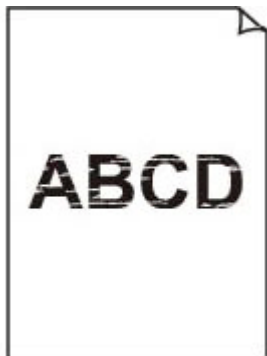
➡ [Multi-Purpose Tray Does Not Feed Properly](#)



Ink Does Not Come Out/Blurry or Fuzzy/Inaccurate or Bleeding Colors/Streaks



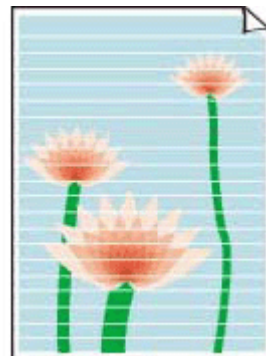
Ink Does Not Come Out



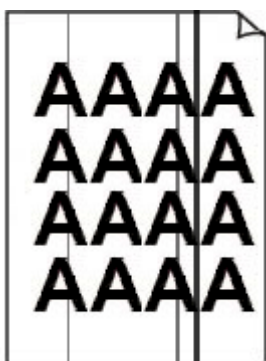
Blurry or Fuzzy



Inaccurate or Bleeding
Colors



White Streaks



Black Streaks



►► Note

- If printouts are blank, black does not print, is faint, or has a blue or red tint, refer to this web page.

Check 1 Do page size and media type settings match size and type of loaded paper?

If these settings do not match, it is not possible to obtain the proper result.

If you are printing a photograph or an illustration, an incorrect paper type setting may reduce the quality of the printout color.

Also, if you print with an incorrect paper type setting, the printed surface may be scratched.

In borderless printing, uneven coloring may occur depending on the combination of the paper type setting and the loaded paper.

The method for checking the paper and print quality settings differs depending on your printer.

- **Printing from your computer**

Check the settings using the Printer Driver.

➡ [Basic Printing Setup](#)

- **Printing from your smartphone/tablet using**



Check the settings on the App.

➡ Print Photos from Your Smartphone

Check 2 Make sure appropriate print quality is selected.

Select a print quality suited to the paper and to what you are printing. If you notice blurs or uneven colors, increase the print quality setting and retry the printing.

Check 3 Check paper and print quality settings.

➡ [Print Quality Problems](#)

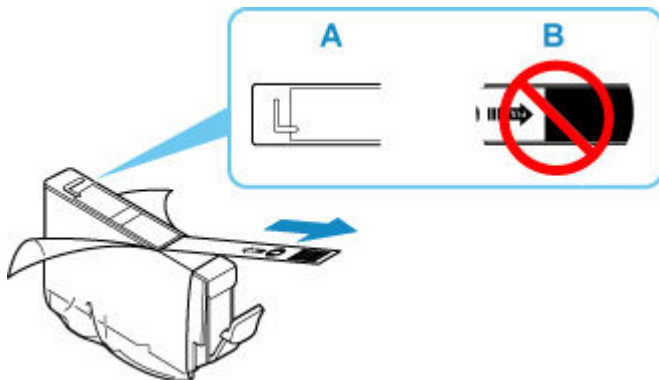
Check 4 Check status of ink tanks. Replace ink tank if ink has run out.

➡ [Replacing Ink Tanks](#)

Check 5 Are the orange tape and plastic wrap still on the ink tank?

Make sure the orange tape is peeled off to expose the L-vent area, as shown below (A).

If the orange tape remains on the ink tank (B), peel it off.



Check 6 Are the print head nozzles clogged?

Print the nozzle check pattern to determine whether the ink ejects properly from the print head nozzles.

Step 1 Print a nozzle check pattern.

After printing the nozzle check pattern, examine the pattern.

- From the printer

➡ [Checking for Nozzle Clogging](#)

If the pattern is not printed correctly, check if the ink tank for the problem color is empty.

If the ink tank is not empty, go to the next step.

Step 2 Clean the print head.

After cleaning the print head, print the nozzle check pattern and check the result.

- From the printer

➡ [Cleaning the Print Head](#)

If it still does not improve, go to the next step.

Step 3 Clean the print head again.

After cleaning the print head again, print the nozzle check pattern and check the result.

If it still does not improve, go to the next step.

Step 4 Clean the print head deeply.

After cleaning the print head deeply, print the nozzle check pattern and check the result.

- From the printer

➡ [Deep Print Head Cleaning](#)

If it does not improve, turn off the printer, wait for more than 24 hours without unplugging the power supply, and go to the next step.

Step 5 Clean the print head deeply again.

After cleaning the print head deeply again, print the nozzle check pattern and check the result.

If it still does not improve, go to the next step.

Step 6 Request a repair.

If problem is not resolved after performing print head deep cleaning twice, the print head may be damaged. Contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

For details on printing the nozzle check pattern, print head cleaning, and print head deep cleaning, see [Adjustments for Better Print Quality](#).

Check 7 When using paper with one printable surface, check the correct printable side of the paper.

Printing on the wrong side of such paper may cause unclear prints or prints with reduced quality.

When you load paper on the top feed, load paper with the printable side facing up.

Refer to the instruction manual supplied with the paper for detailed information on the printable side.



Lines Are Misaligned/Distorted



▶▶▶ Note

- For the case of misaligned or distortion, refer to this web page.

Check 1 Do page size and media type settings match size and type of loaded paper?

If these settings do not match, it is not possible to obtain the proper result.

If you are printing a photograph or an illustration, an incorrect paper type setting may reduce the quality of the printout color.

Also, if you print with an incorrect paper type setting, the printed surface may be scratched.

In borderless printing, uneven coloring may occur depending on the combination of the paper type setting and the loaded paper.

The method for checking the paper and print quality settings differs depending on your printer.

• Printing from your computer

Check the settings using the Printer Driver.

➡ [Basic Printing Setup](#)

• Printing from your smartphone/tablet using



Check the settings on the App.

➡ Print Photos from Your Smartphone

Check 2 Make sure appropriate print quality is selected.

Select a print quality suited to the paper and to what you are printing. If you notice blurs or uneven colors, increase the print quality setting and retry the printing.

Check 3 Check paper and print quality settings.

➡ [Print Quality Problems](#)

Check 4 Perform print head alignment.

If printed lines are misaligned/distorted or print results are otherwise unsatisfactory, adjust the print head position.

➡ [Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Align Colors](#)

➤➤➤ **Note**

- If the problem is not resolved after performing the print head alignment, perform print head alignment manually.

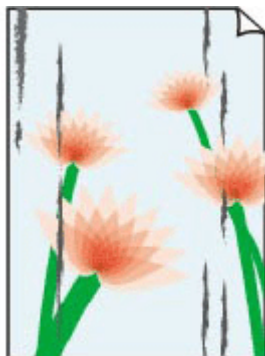
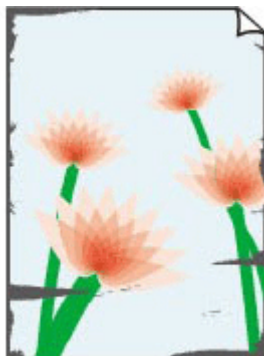
➡ [Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Align Colors](#)

Check 5 Increase print quality and try printing again.

Increasing the print quality using operation panel of the printer or from computer may improve the print result.



Paper Is Smudged/Printed Surface Is Scratched/Ink Blots/Paper Curl



Check 1 Do page size and media type settings match size and type of loaded paper?

If these settings do not match, it is not possible to obtain the proper result.

If you are printing a photograph or an illustration, an incorrect paper type setting may reduce the quality of the printout color.

Also, if you print with an incorrect paper type setting, the printed surface may be scratched.

In borderless printing, uneven coloring may occur depending on the combination of the paper type setting and the loaded paper.

The method for checking the paper and print quality settings differs depending on your printer.

• Printing from your computer

Check the settings using the Printer Driver.

➡ [Basic Printing Setup](#)

• Printing from your smartphone/tablet using



Check the settings on the App.

➡ Print Photos from Your Smartphone

Check 2 Make sure appropriate print quality is selected.

Select a print quality suited to the paper and to what you are printing. If you notice blurs or uneven colors, increase the print quality setting and retry the printing.

Check 3 Check paper and print quality settings.

➔ [Print Quality Problems](#)

Check 4 Check paper type.

Make sure you are using the right paper for what you are printing.

➔ [Media Types You Can Use](#)

For borderless printing, use a paper suitable for borderless printing.

If the paper you are using is not suitable for borderless printing, the print quality may be reduced at the top and bottom edges of the paper.

➔ [Print Area](#)

Check 5 Correct curl before loading paper.

When using **Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss**, even if the sheet is curled, load one sheet at a time as it is. Rolling this paper in the opposite direction to flatten it may crack the paper surface and reduce the print quality.

We recommend putting unused paper back into the package and storing it flat.

- **Plain Paper:**

Turn the paper over and reload it to print on the other side.

- **Other Paper such as Envelope or Hagaki:**

If the paper corners curl more than 0.1 in. / 3 mm (A) in height, the paper may smudge or may not feed properly. Follow the instructions below to correct the paper curl.



1. Roll up paper in opposite direction to paper curl as shown below.

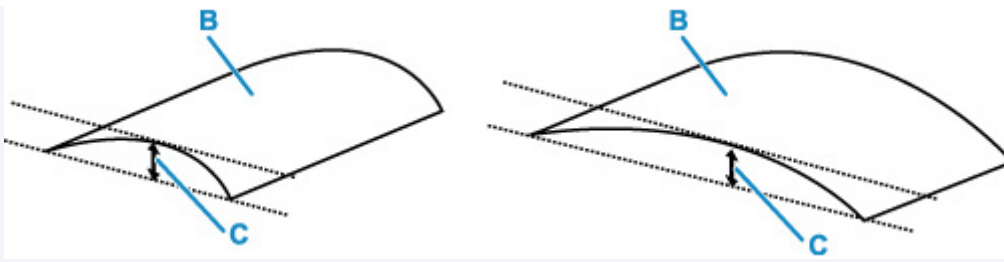


2. Check that paper is now flat.

We recommend printing curl-corrected paper one sheet at a time.

➤➤➤ **Note**

- Depending on paper type, the paper may smudge or may not feed properly even if it is not curled inward. Follow the instructions below to curl the paper outward up to 0.1 in. / 3 mm (C) in height before printing. This may improve the print result.



(B) Print side

We recommend feeding paper that has been curled outward one sheet at a time.

Check 6 Set printer to prevent paper abrasion.

Adjusting the setting to prevent paper abrasion will widen the clearance between the print head and the paper. If you notice abrasion even with the media type set correctly to match the paper, set the printer to prevent paper abrasion using the operation panel or the computer.

This may reduce the print speed.

* Once you have finished printing, undo this setting. Otherwise, it will apply to subsequent print jobs.

Select **Various settings** on HOME screen, and set **Printer settings > Print settings > Prevent paper abrasion > ON**.

➔ [Print settings](#)

Check 7 If brightness is set low, increase brightness setting and try printing again.

If you are printing with a low brightness setting on **Plain Paper**, the paper may absorb too much ink and become wavy, causing paper abrasion.

- Printing from your computer (Windows)

Check the brightness setting in the Printer Driver.

➔ [Adjusting Brightness](#)

Check 8 Do not print outside recommended printing area.

If you print outside the recommended printing area of your paper, ink may stain the lower edge of the paper.

Resize the document using application software.

➔ [Printing Area](#)

Check 9 Is paper feed roller dirty?

Clean paper feed roller.

➔ [Cleaning Paper Feed Rollers](#)

▶▶▶ Note

- Cleaning the paper feed roller abrades it, so do this only when necessary.

Check 10 Is inside of printer dirty?

During 2-sided printing, ink may stain the inside of the printer, smudging the printout.

Perform bottom plate cleaning to clean inside of printer.

➡ [Performing Bottom Plate Cleaning](#)

»» Note

- To prevent staining inside the printer, be sure to set the correct paper size.



Lines Incomplete or Missing (Windows)

	Tokyo	London
Jan.	12,000	10,500
Feb.	11,500	10,800
Mar.	13,800	12,800
Apr.	12,000	10,500
May.	11,500	10,800
June	13,800	12,800



Check 1 Do page size and media type settings match size and type of loaded paper?

If these settings do not match, it is not possible to obtain the proper result.

If you are printing a photograph or an illustration, an incorrect paper type setting may reduce the quality of the printout color.

Also, if you print with an incorrect paper type setting, the printed surface may be scratched.

In borderless printing, uneven coloring may occur depending on the combination of the paper type setting and the loaded paper.

The method for checking the paper and print quality settings differs depending on your printer.

• Printing from your computer

Check the settings using the Printer Driver.

➡ [Basic Printing Setup](#)

• Printing from your smartphone/tablet using



Check the settings on the App.

➡ Print Photos from Your Smartphone

Check 2 Make sure appropriate print quality is selected.

Select a print quality suited to the paper and to what you are printing. If you notice blurs or uneven colors, increase the print quality setting and retry the printing.

Check 3 Are you using Page Layout Printing or Binding Margin function?

When the Page Layout Printing or Binding margin function is in use, thin lines may not be printed. Try thickening the lines in the document.

Check 4 Are you trying to print a large data file? (Windows)

If you are trying to print a large data file, printing may not be performed properly due to missing print data.

Select **On** for **Prevention of Print Data Loss** on the **Print Options** dialog box of the Printer Driver.

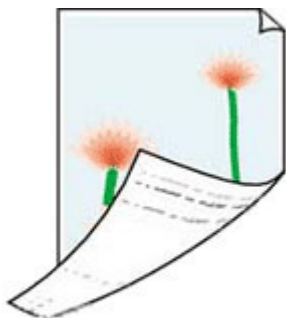
For details, refer to [Page Setup Tab Description](#).

»»» Important

- Selecting **On** for **Prevention of Print Data Loss** may reduce print quality.
- After printing is completed, select **Off** for **Prevention of Print Data Loss**.



Back of Paper Is Smudged



Check 1 Do page size and media type settings match size and type of loaded paper?

If these settings do not match, it is not possible to obtain the proper result.

If you are printing a photograph or an illustration, an incorrect paper type setting may reduce the quality of the printout color.

Also, if you print with an incorrect paper type setting, the printed surface may be scratched.

In borderless printing, uneven coloring may occur depending on the combination of the paper type setting and the loaded paper.

The method for checking the paper and print quality settings differs depending on your printer.

• Printing from your computer

Check the settings using the Printer Driver.

➡ [Basic Printing Setup](#)

• Printing from your smartphone/tablet using



Check the settings on the App.

➡ Print Photos from Your Smartphone

Check 2 Make sure appropriate print quality is selected.

Select a print quality suited to the paper and to what you are printing. If you notice blurs or uneven colors, increase the print quality setting and retry the printing.

Check 3 Check paper and print quality settings.

➡ [Print Quality Problems](#)

Check 4 Perform bottom plate cleaning to clean inside of printer.

➔ [Performing Bottom Plate Cleaning](#)

»» Note

- During 2-sided printing, or too much printing, ink may stain the inside of the printer.



Uneven or Streaked Colors



Check 1 Do page size and media type settings match size and type of loaded paper?

If these settings do not match, it is not possible to obtain the proper result.

If you are printing a photograph or an illustration, an incorrect paper type setting may reduce the quality of the printout color.

Also, if you print with an incorrect paper type setting, the printed surface may be scratched.

In borderless printing, uneven coloring may occur depending on the combination of the paper type setting and the loaded paper.

The method for checking the paper and print quality settings differs depending on your printer.

- **Printing from your computer**

Check the settings using the Printer Driver.

➡ [Basic Printing Setup](#)

- **Printing from your smartphone/tablet using**



Check the settings on the App.

➡ [Print Photos from Your Smartphone](#)

Check 2 Make sure appropriate print quality is selected.

Select a print quality suited to the paper and to what you are printing. If you notice blurs or uneven colors, increase the print quality setting and retry the printing.

Check 3 Increase print quality and try printing again.

Increasing the print quality using operation panel of the printer or from computer may improve the print result.

Check 4 Are the print head nozzles clogged?

Print the nozzle check pattern to determine whether the ink ejects properly from the print head nozzles.

Step 1 Print a nozzle check pattern.

After printing the nozzle check pattern, examine the pattern.

- From the printer

➡ [Checking for Nozzle Clogging](#)

If the pattern is not printed correctly, check if the ink tank for the problem color is empty.

If the ink tank is not empty, go to the next step.

Step 2 Clean the print head.

After cleaning the print head, print the nozzle check pattern and check the result.

- From the printer

➡ [Cleaning the Print Head](#)

If it still does not improve, go to the next step.

Step 3 Clean the print head again.

After cleaning the print head again, print the nozzle check pattern and check the result.

If it still does not improve, go to the next step.

Step 4 Clean the print head deeply.

After cleaning the print head deeply, print the nozzle check pattern and check the result.

- From the printer

➡ [Deep Print Head Cleaning](#)

If it does not improve, turn off the printer, wait for more than 24 hours without unplugging the power supply, and go to the next step.

Step 5 Clean the print head deeply again.

After cleaning the print head deeply again, print the nozzle check pattern and check the result.

If it still does not improve, go to the next step.

Step 6 Request a repair.

If problem is not resolved after performing print head deep cleaning twice, the print head may be damaged. Contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

For details on printing the nozzle check pattern, print head cleaning, and print head deep cleaning, see [Adjustments for Better Print Quality](#).

Check 5 Perform print head alignment.

➡ [Automatic Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Align Colors](#)

▶▶▶ Note

- If the problem is not resolved after performing the print head alignment, perform print head alignment manually.

➡ [Manual Adjustment to Straighten Lines and Align Colors](#)



Change to Offline (Windows)/Cannot Communicate (Windows)



If the printer cannot communicate with the computer, an error message "Offline" may be displayed when printing. To bring the printer back online, try the following.

1. Check the connection (USB/Wi-Fi/Wired LAN).

For USB connection:

Make sure that the USB-connected printer is recognized by the computer.

For Wi-Fi/Wired LAN connections:

Make sure that  or  icon appears on the printer's operation panel.

2. Turn off printer and then turn it on again.

Confirm that the offline mode has been disabled. If the printer is still offline, proceed to the next step.

3. Check the name of the MP Drivers (Printer Driver).

Check the names of the printer and MP Drivers (Printer Driver) match. From Windows 10, the management method of the printer that is normally used has changed. Set the MP Drivers (Printer Driver) of the printer you are using as **default**.

➡ Default Printer Keeps Changing (Windows)

Confirm that the offline mode has been disabled. If the printer is still offline, proceed to the next step.

4. Make sure that printer is not set to **Use Printer Offline** mode.

For Windows 11:

1. Open Set Printers & scanners.
2. Click the name of printer you want to configure.
3. Click **Print settings**.

Print settings window opens.

4. Click **Maintenance** sheet.

5. Click **View Printer Status**.

The Canon IJ Status Monitor window is displayed.

6. Click **Display Print Queue of the Canon IJ Status Monitor window.**

The Print Queue window is displayed.

7. Click **Printer menu in the window displayed.**

Make sure **Use Printer Offline** is not selected.

If it is selected, click **Use Printer Offline** to deselect it.

Confirm that the offline mode has been disabled. If the printer is still offline, proceed to the next step.

For Windows 10:

1. Open Set Printers & scanners.

2. Click the name of printer you want to configure, and select **Open queue.**

The Print Queue window is displayed.

3. Click **Printer menu in the window displayed.**

Make sure **Use Printer Offline** is not selected.

If it is selected, click **Use Printer Offline** to deselect it.

Confirm that the offline mode has been disabled. If the printer is still offline, proceed to the next step.

5. For Wi-Fi/Wired LAN connections, use Wi-Fi Connection Assistant to change settings.

Diagnose and repair the network connections using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

Download Wi-Fi Connection Assistant from the below page, and install it on your computer.

➡ [Checking Printer Connection Status Using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant](#)

Refer to below in regard to starting up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

➡ [Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant](#)

Confirm that the offline mode has been disabled. If the printer is still offline, proceed to the next step.

6. Uninstall MP Drivers (Printer Driver) and reinstall MP Drivers (Printer Driver).

If your MP Drivers (Printer Driver) version is old or not installed correctly, you may not be able to print.

Confirm that the offline mode has been disabled. If the printer is still offline, proceed to the next step.

7. Restart computer.

The computer may be unstable for some reason. Restart the computer and try to print.

Important

- To restart your computer, choose **Restart** instead of **Shut down**.

Mechanical Problems

- **Printer Does Not Turn On**
- **Printer Turns Off Unexpectedly or Repeatedly**
- **USB Connection Problems**
- **Switching Printer's Connection to Network or Devices**



Printer Does Not Turn On



Check 1 Press **ON** button.

➔ [Turning the Printer On and Off](#)

Check 2 Make sure power cord is securely connected to printer, and then turn on again.

Check 3 Unplug printer, leave it for at least 5 minutes, and then plug it back in and turn on again.

If this does not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.



Printer Turns Off Unexpectedly or Repeatedly



Check If printer is set to turn off automatically after a certain time, disable this setting.

If you have set the printer to turn off automatically after a specified time, the power will shut off by itself once that time has elapsed.

Note

- If this setting is changed, power consumption may increase.

1. Check that printer is turned on.
2. Select **Various settings** on HOME screen.
3. Select **Printer settings**.
4. Select **Energy saving settings**.
5. Select **Auto power off**.
6. Select **Never**.

The setting to shut off the power automatically is disabled.

Note

- You can use the scheduling function of the Remote UI to turn the printer on or off at a specified time.



USB Connection Problems



If the printer connected to the computer via USB is not recognized, check the following items.

➔ [USB Connection Not Recognized](#)

The following problems may occur even though the USB connection is recognized.

- Printing is slow.
- Hi-Speed USB connection does not work.
- A message such as "**This device can perform faster**" appears (Windows).

If the above is the case, check the following.

➔ [USB Connection Does Not Work Properly](#)

➤➤➤ Note

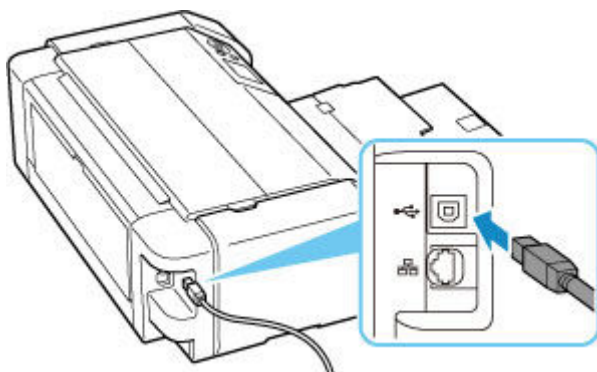
- If your system environment does not support Hi-Speed USB, the printer operates at the slower speed of Full-Speed or Low-Speed. In this case, the printer works properly but printing speed may slow down due to the communication speed.

USB Connection Not Recognized

Check 1 Make sure printer is turned on.

Check 2 Unplug the USB cable from the printer and the computer, and then connect it again.

As the illustration below, the USB port is at the back of the printer.



➤➤➤ Important

- Check the orientation of the "Type-B" connector and connect to the printer. For details, refer to the instruction manual supplied with the USB cable.

Check 3 Check that **Enable bidirectional support** is selected in **Ports** sheet of **Printer properties** dialog box (Windows).

If not, select it to enable bidirectional support.

➡ [Opening Printer Driver's Setup Screen](#)

Check 4 Initialize the printer settings.

Select **Various settings** on HOME screen > **Printer settings** > **Reset settings** > **Reset all**.

➡ [Reset settings](#)

After initializing the printer settings, redo setup.

Refer to Setup Guide and redo setup.

USB Connection Does Not Work Properly

Check Follow the items below to confirm that your system environment supports Hi-Speed USB connection.

- The types of USB cables that can be used differ depending on your printer. Check the shape of the USB port of the printer.

➡ What Is USB Cable?

- Does the USB port on your computer support Hi-Speed USB connection?
- Does the USB cable or the USB hub support Hi-Speed USB connection?

Be sure to use a certified Hi-Speed USB cable. We recommend that the USB cable be no longer than 10 feet / 3 meters or so.

- Is the Hi-Speed USB driver working properly on your computer?

Make sure the latest Hi-Speed USB driver is working properly and install the latest version of the Hi-Speed USB driver for your computer, if necessary.

Important

- For more information, contact the manufacturer of your computer, USB cable, or USB hub.

Switching Printer's Connection to Network or Devices

Check the following items when connecting a newly added computer to the LAN environment to the printer, changing the connection method from USB to LAN, or changing the wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) connection method.

1. Connects to Another Computer via LAN/Changes from USB to LAN Connection

2. Switching LAN Connection Method

3. Reconfiguration Method of Wi-Fi Connection

1. Connects to Another Computer via LAN/ Changes from USB to LAN Connection



To connect an additional computer to the printer via LAN, or to change from USB to LAN connection, refer to Setup Guide to setup.

2. Switching LAN Connection Method



If you want to switch the connection method (Wired LAN or Wi-Fi) when the printer is used with a LAN connection, check the following item.

For Windows:

- Refer to Setup Guide to setup.
- Enable Wi-Fi or Wired LAN on the printer's operation panel, and then configure the settings in the **Network Settings** screen of Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

For details on the configuration, see the following.

- ➡ [Performing/Changing Wi-Fi Settings](#)
- ➡ [Performing/Changing Wired LAN Connection \(Ethernet Cable\) Settings](#)

For macOS:

Refer to Setup Guide to setup.

2. Switching LAN Connection Method



If you want to switch to USB connection when the printer is used with a LAN connection, check the following item.

For Windows:

Refer to Setup Guide to setup.

For macOS:

Refer to Setup Guide to setup.

3. Reconfiguration Method of Wi-Fi Connection



- **If you want to switch to Wireless Direct when using the printer with Wi-Fi connection:**

Wireless Direct connection is available. Wireless Direct and Wi-Fi connection can be used together. But if you use IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise), they can be not used together.

➡ [Connecting with Wireless Direct](#)

- **Switching to a Wi-Fi connection when using the printer Wireless Direct:**

If you connect the printer to your computer or smartphone via a wireless router for the first time to print, or if you want to change the connection frequency between the printer and the wireless router, perform the setup.

For Windows:

Refer to Changing the Connection Mode.

For macOS:

Refer to Setup Guide and redo setup.



Wrong Language Appears in Operation Panel



Follow the instructions below to select your language.

1. Press **HOME** button and wait a little.



2. Select  on HOME screen and press **OK** button.

3. Select top setting item and press **OK** button.

4. Select sixth setting item from top and press **OK** button.

Note

- If you specify the administrator password, enter the password.

5. Select a language that you want to use and press **OK** button.

Installation and Download Problems

- **Failed to MP Drivers (Printer Driver) Installation (Windows)**
- **Cannot Proceed Beyond Printer Connection Screen (Cannot Find Printer Connected via USB)**
- **Updating MP Drivers (Printer Driver) in Network Environment (Windows)**
- **Disable Function to Send Usage Information of Printer**



Failed to MP Drivers (Printer Driver) Installation (Windows)



If the MP Drivers (Printer Driver) were not installed correctly, make sure that all **Windows Update** have been applied. If all **Windows Update** have not been applied, apply all **Windows Update**.

After confirming **Windows Update**, perform the following operations to install the MP Drivers (Printer Driver).

1. Open screen to uninstall MP Drivers (Printer Driver).

For Windows 11:

Open Installed apps.

For Windows 10:

Open Apps & features.

For Windows 8.1 / Windows 7:

Select **Control Panel > Programs and Features**.

2. Check if there is "Canon XXX series Driver" or "Canon XXX series Printer Driver" you want to install in list.

"XXX" is the printer's model name.

3. If you find MP Drivers (Printer Driver) for printer you want to install, uninstall it.

If not found, proceed to the next step.

4. Restart computer.

After restarting, install the latest MP Drivers (Printer Driver).

»» Important

- For Windows:

To restart your computer, choose **Restart** instead of **Shut down**.

»» Note

- This web page contains information about several models. Depending on the specifications of the printer you are using, some of the features described (device functions, connection method, operating procedure and etc.) may not apply.

For details about the functions of your printer, see [Specifications](#).



Cannot Proceed Beyond Printer Connection Screen (Cannot Find Printer Connected via USB)



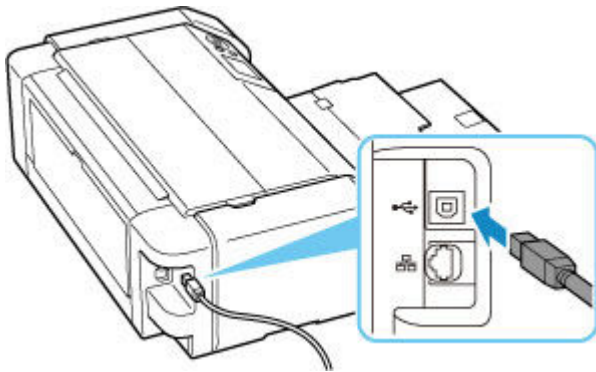
Note

- For the case of connecting with a USB cable, refer to this web page.

If you cannot proceed beyond the **Printer Connection** screen, check the following.

Check 1 Make sure USB cable is securely plugged in to printer and computer.

Connect the printer and the computer using a USB cable as the illustration below. The USB port is located at the back of the printer.



Important

- Check the orientation and angle of the "Type-B" connector when connecting to the printer. For details, refer to the instruction manual supplied with the USB cable.

Check 2 Follow procedure below to connect printer and computer again.

1. Unplug USB cable from printer and computer and connect it again.
2. Make sure no printer operation is in progress and turn off.
3. Turn on printer.

Check 3 Follow the steps below to install MP Drivers (Printer Driver) again.

1. Download the latest MP Drivers (Printer Driver).
2. Turn off printer.

3. Restart computer.

After restarting, install the latest MP Drivers (Printer Driver) downloaded in step 1.

Important

- When installing the MP Drivers (Printer Driver), make sure you select the correct printer name.
- For Windows:

To restart your computer, choose **Restart** instead of **Shut down**.



Updating MP Drivers (Printer Driver) in Network Environment (Windows)



Download the latest MP Drivers (Printer Driver) in advance.

Download the latest MP Drivers (Printer Driver) for your model on the download page of the Canon website.

After the download is completed, overwrite and install the new version of the MP Drivers (Printer Driver) according to the specified installation procedure.

Note

- The network settings on the printer are not affected, so the printer can be used on the network without redoing settings.
- This web page contains information about several models. Depending on the specifications of the printer you are using, some of the features described (device functions, connection method, operating procedure and etc.) may not apply.

For details about the functions of your printer, see [Specifications](#).

Errors and Messages

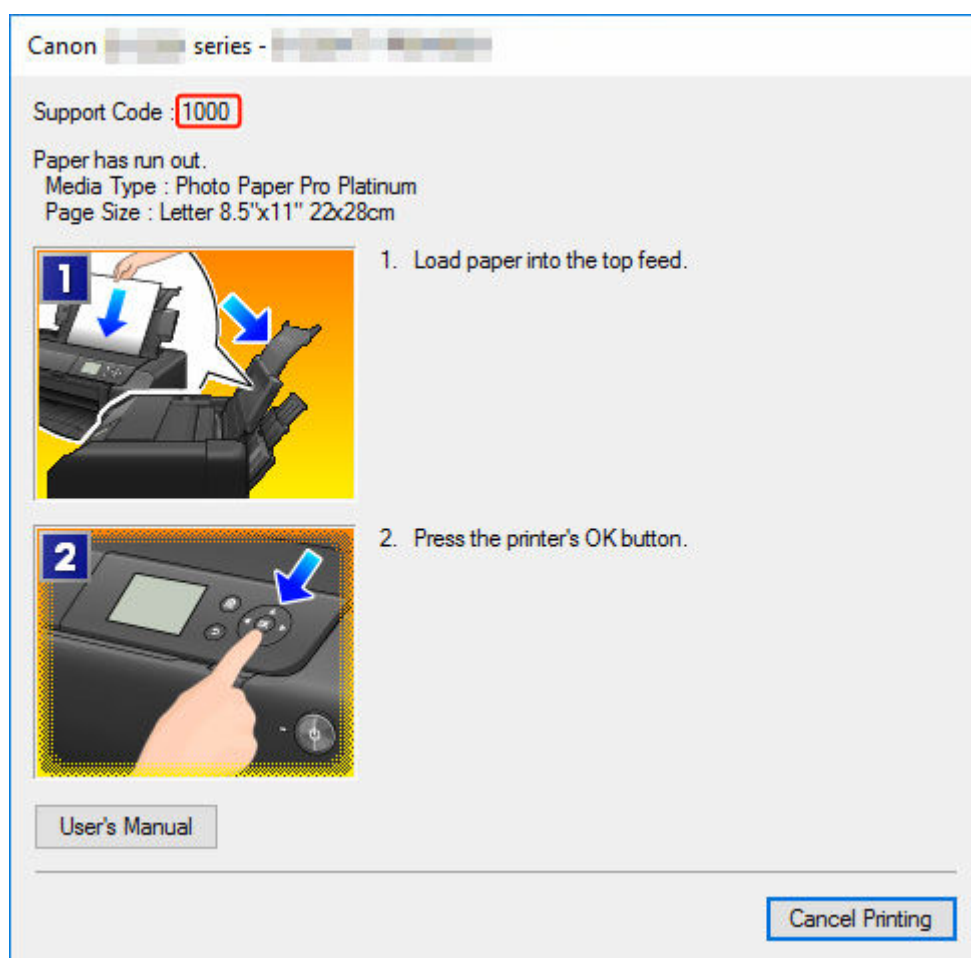
- When Error Occurred
- Message Is Displayed

When Error Occurred

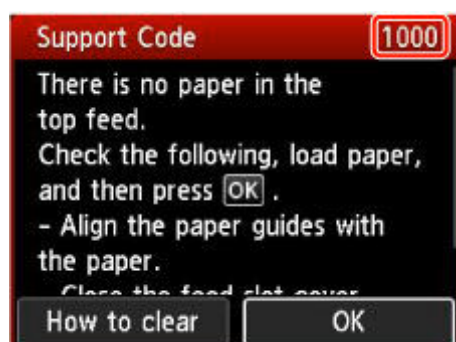
If an error occurs in printing, for example, if the paper runs out or jams, a troubleshooting message appears automatically. For some errors, a support code (error number) is also displayed.

Take the appropriate action described in the message.

When a Support Code and a Message are displayed on the Computer Screen (Windows):



When a Support Code and a Message are displayed on the Printer's LCD:



For details on how to resolve errors with Support Codes, see [List of Support Codes for Printer Errors](#).

For details on how to resolve errors without Support Codes, see [Message Is Displayed](#).

Message Is Displayed

This section describes some of the messages that may appear.

»»» Note

- A support code (error number) is displayed for some errors. For details on errors that have support code, see [List of Support Codes for Printer Errors](#).

If a message appears on the printer's LCD, see below.

➡ [Message Appears on the Printer's LCD](#)

If a message appears on the computer, see below.

➡ [Error Regarding Power Cord Being Unplugged Is Displayed \(Windows\)](#)

➡ [Writing Error/Output Error/Communication Error \(Windows\)](#)

➡ [Other Error Messages \(Windows\)](#)

Message Appears on the Printer's LCD

Check the message and take appropriate action.

- **Power was not turned off correctly the last time. Press the  button when turning power off.**

The printer may have been unplugged while the power was still on.

Press the printer's **OK** button to cancel the error.

»»» Note

- See [Turning the Printer On and Off](#) for the correct way to turn the power off.

- **Cannot connect to the server. Please wait a while and try again.**

The printer cannot connect to the server due to a communication error.

Press the printer's **OK** button to cancel the error and try again after a while.

Error Regarding Power Cord Being Unplugged Is Displayed (Windows)

The printer may have been unplugged while it was on.

Check the error message that appears on the computer and click **OK**.

The printer starts printing.

Refer to [Turning the Printer On and Off](#) for the correct way to turn the power off.

Writing Error/Output Error/Communication Error (Windows)

Check 1 If the **ON** lamp is off, make sure printer is plugged in and turn on.

The **ON** lamp flashes while the printer is initializing. Wait until the **ON** lamp stops flashing and remains lit.

Check 2 Make sure printer is properly connected to computer.

If you are using a USB cable, make sure it is securely connected to both the printer and the computer. When the USB cable is securely plugged in, check the following:

- If you are using a relay device such as a USB hub, disconnect it, connect the printer directly to the computer, and retry the printing. If printing starts normally, there is a problem with the relay device. Contact the vendor of the relay device.
- There could also be a problem with the USB cable. Replace the USB cable and retry the printing.

If you use the printer over a LAN, make sure the printer is correctly set up for network use.

Check 3 Make sure printer driver is installed correctly.

Refer to [Updating the Driver](#) to uninstall unnecessary drivers and install the latest drivers.

Check 4 When printer is connected to your computer with a USB cable, check device status from your computer.

Follow the procedure below to check the device status.

1. Select **Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Device Manager**.

»»» Note

- If the **User Account Control** screen appears, select **Yes**.

2. Open **USB Printing Support Properties**.

Double-click **Universal Serial Bus controllers** and **USB Printing Support**.

»»» Note

- If **USB Printing Support Properties** screen does not appear, make sure the printer is correctly connected to the computer.

➡ Check 2 [Make sure printer is properly connected to computer.](#)

3. Click **General** tab and check for a device problem.

If a device error is shown, see Windows Help to resolve it.

Other Error Messages (Windows)

Check If an error message appears outside printer status monitor, check the following:

- **"Could not spool successfully due to insufficient disk space"**

Delete any unnecessary files to increase the amount of free space on the disk.

- **"Could not spool successfully due to insufficient memory"**

Close other applications to increase the available memory.

If you still cannot print, restart your computer and retry the printing.

- **"Printer driver could not be found"**

Refer to [Updating the Driver](#) to uninstall unnecessary drivers and install the latest drivers.

- **"Could not print Application name - File name"**

Try printing again once the current job is complete.

Connecting to a Printer

Cable Connection



Wireless Connection



Cable Connection

USB cable Connection



LAN cable Connection

Wireless Connection



Wi-Fi

Connection via Wireless Router



Connecting with Wireless Direct

Switching Printer's Connection to Network or Devices



Enable Printing from PC/Smartphone/Tablet



When Wireless Router Is Changed



Checking Printer Connection Status Using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant



Troubleshooting

➔ [Network Settings and Common Problems](#)

➔ Network Solution 1-2-3

Network Connection Tips

➔ [Network Connection Tips \(Windows/macOS\)](#)

➔ [Handling Printer Configuration Using the Web Browser](#)

➔ Countermeasures against Unauthorized Access



Connecting The Printer And a Computer
Via Wi-Fi



iOS: Connecting The Printer And a
Smartphone Via Wi-Fi



Android: Connecting The Printer And a
Smartphone Via Wi-Fi

Notice/Restriction

- Restrictions on network settings:
 - ➔ [Restrictions](#)
- Notices when printing using web service:
 - ➔ Notice for Web Service Printing

➤➤➤ Note

- This web page contains information about several models. Depending on the specifications of the printer you are using, some of the features described (device functions, connection method, operating procedure and etc.) may not apply.

For details about the functions of your printer, see [Specifications](#).

Restrictions

When connecting another device while a device (such as a computer) is already connected to the printer, connect it using the same connection method as the connected device.

If you connect using a different connection method, the connection to the device in use will be disabled.

However, you can use a Wi-Fi connection and Wireless Direct at the same time. (Except when IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise) is enabled.)

For restrictions, see the following.

Connect via wireless router

- You cannot use the printer over Wi-Fi and wired connections at the same time.
- Make sure your device and the wireless router are connected. For details on checking these settings, see the manual supplied with the wireless router or contact its manufacturer.

As for a device already connected to the printer without using a wireless router, reconnect it via a wireless router.

- Configuration, router functions, setup procedures and security settings of wireless routers vary depending on the system environment. For details, see the manual for your wireless router or contact its manufacturer.
- Depending on your country or region, this printer does not support wireless networking standards using the 5 GHz band.
- The printer does not support WEP, WPA-PSK (TKIP) and WPA2-PSK (TKIP). The security protocol such as WPA2-PSK (AES) or WPA3-SAE (AES) is recommended to be set to wireless router for security reasons.

The connection between your device and the wireless router will be temporarily disabled while the setting is changed. Do not proceed to the next screen of this guide until setup is complete.

- When connecting to Wi-Fi outdoors, do not connect to a 5 GHz network (SSID).

The 5 GHz band available for use with the printer includes the channels that are allowed for indoor use only, depending on your country or region.

For details on the 5 GHz network (SSID) of your wireless router, see the manual supplied with the wireless router, or contact its manufacturer.

- For office use, especially when connecting with IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise), consult your network administrator.
- Note that if you connect to a network with no security protection, your personal information could be disclosed to a third party.

Wireless Direct

►► Important

- If a device is connected to the Internet via a wireless router, and you then connect it to a printer in Wireless Direct mode, the existing connection between the device and wireless router will be disabled. In that case, the connection of the device may switch to a mobile data connection automatically depending on your device. When you connect to the Internet using a mobile data connection, charges may apply depending on your contract.

- When you connect a device and the printer using Wireless Direct, the connection information will be saved to Wi-Fi settings. The device may be connected to the printer automatically even after disconnecting it or connecting it to another wireless router.
- To prevent automatic connection to the printer in Wireless Direct mode, change the connection mode after using the printer, or set not to connect automatically in the Wi-Fi settings of the device.

For details on changing the settings of your device, see the manual supplied with the device or contact its manufacturer.

- If you connect a device and the printer using Wireless Direct, Internet connection may become unavailable depending on your environment. In that case, web services for the printer cannot be used.
- In Wireless Direct mode, you can connect up to five devices at the same time. If you try to connect a sixth device while five devices are already connected, an error will appear.
If an error appears, disconnect a device that does not use the printer, and then redo the settings.
- Wireless Direct connects a device (such as a computer) to the printer at 2.4 GHz.
To connect at 5 GHz, enable Wireless Direct, and then set the frequency band to 5 GHz.
Depending on your country or region, this printer does not support Wireless Direct using the 5 GHz band.
- Devices connected to the printer using Wireless Direct cannot communicate with each other.
- Firmware updates for the printer are not available while using Wireless Direct.
- When a device has been connected to the printer without using a wireless router and you want to set it up again using the same connection method, disconnect it first. Disable the connection between the device and printer in the Wi-Fi setting screen.

Connection Using a Wired Network

- You cannot use the printer over Wi-Fi and wired connections at the same time.
- When using a router, connect the printer and computer to the LAN side (same network segment).

Detect Same Printer Name

When the printer is detected during setup, plural printers with the same name may appear on the results screen.

Select a printer with checking the printer settings against those on detection result screen.

- **For Windows:**

Check the printer's MAC address or serial to select the correct printer from the results.

- **For macOS:**

The printer names appear with the MAC address added at the end or as the printer name specified by Bonjour.

Check identifiers such as the MAC address, the printer name specified by Bonjour, and the printer's serial number to select the printer from among those that appear.

▶▶▶ Note

- Serial number may not appear on result screen.

To check the printer's MAC address and the serial number, print out the network settings information.

➡ [Printing Network Settings](#)

▶▶▶ Note

- You can check the serial number by displaying on the operation panel of the printer.
 - ➡ [Printer information](#)
- This web page contains information about several models. Depending on the specifications of the printer you are using, some of the features described (device functions, connection method, operating procedure and etc.) may not apply.

For details about the functions of your printer, see [Specifications](#).

Switching Printer's Connection to Network or Devices

Check the following items when connecting a newly added computer to the LAN environment to the printer, changing the connection method from USB to LAN, or changing the wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) connection method.

1. Connects to Another Computer via LAN/Changes from USB to LAN Connection

2. Switching LAN Connection Method

3. Reconfiguration Method of Wi-Fi Connection

1. Connects to Another Computer via LAN/ Changes from USB to LAN Connection



To connect an additional computer to the printer via LAN, or to change from USB to LAN connection, refer to Setup Guide to setup.

2. Switching LAN Connection Method



If you want to switch the connection method (Wired LAN or Wi-Fi) when the printer is used with a LAN connection, check the following item.

For Windows:

- Refer to Setup Guide to setup.
- Enable Wi-Fi or Wired LAN on the printer's operation panel, and then configure the settings in the **Network Settings** screen of Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

For details on the configuration, see the following.

- ➡ [Performing/Changing Wi-Fi Settings](#)
- ➡ [Performing/Changing Wired LAN Connection \(Ethernet Cable\) Settings](#)

For macOS:

Refer to Setup Guide to setup.

2. Switching LAN Connection Method



If you want to switch to USB connection when the printer is used with a LAN connection, check the following item.

For Windows:

Refer to Setup Guide to setup.

For macOS:

Refer to Setup Guide to setup.

3. Reconfiguration Method of Wi-Fi Connection



- **If you want to switch to Wireless Direct when using the printer with Wi-Fi connection:**

Wireless Direct connection is available. Wireless Direct and Wi-Fi connection can be used together. But if you use IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise), they can be not used together.

➡ [Connecting with Wireless Direct](#)

- **Switching to a Wi-Fi connection when using the printer Wireless Direct:**

If you connect the printer to your computer or smartphone via a wireless router for the first time to print, or if you want to change the connection frequency between the printer and the wireless router, perform the setup.

For Windows:

Refer to Changing the Connection Mode.

For macOS:

Refer to Setup Guide and redo setup.

Network Connection Tips (Windows/macOS)

- **Detect Same Printer Name**
- **Switching Printer's Connection to Network or Devices**
- **Setting Up IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise)**

Setting Up IEEE802.1X/EAP (WPA/WPA2/WPA3 Enterprise)

Overview

If you are using a switch/access point (authenticator) with IEEE802.1X/EAP, you can connect this printer to a Wired LAN or Wi-Fi.

▶▶▶ Note

- The information on this page is intended for network administrators.
Ask your network administrator to set it up.

Setup Flow

1. Prepare the equipment.

Prepare the following equipment.

- IEEE802.1X/EAP compliant switch/access point (Authenticator)
- Authentication (Radius) server

2. Configure settings for the authentication (Radius) server and authenticator.

Set up the authentication (Radius) server and authenticator in advance.

▶▶▶ Note

- For the settings of the authentication (Radius) server and IEEE802.1X/EAP switch/access point (Authenticator), refer to the respective instruction manuals.

3. Configure Remote UI.

Remote UI is used to configure printer security settings.

See below for an overview of Remote UI.

➡ [Configuration Changes / Display Printer Status Using Web Browser](#)

This web page will guide you through the configuration using Wireless Direct.

Refer to the following to connect via Wireless Direct.

➡ [Connecting with Wireless Direct](#)

▶▶▶ Important

- When setting using the Wired LAN or infrastructure (wireless connection), configure the network settings so that you can temporarily connect to the network in the respective mode.
- There is **IEEE802.1X/EAP settings** in the security item of the Remote UI menu.

4. On Remote UI, select **Security > IEEE802.1X/EAP settings**.

5. Select **Authentication**.

- **Login name (up to 96 characters)**

The login name to connect to the authentication server.

Important

- If you select **Verify Authentication Server Name**, you must set the authentication server name.
- If you select **Verify authentication server certificates**, you must register the certificate authority (CA) certificate in advance.

6. Select **Authentication**.

Select **PEAP**, **EAP-TTLS** or **EAP-TLS**.

7. Set **Authentication**.

Set the data required for **PEAP**, **EAP-TTLS** or **EAP-TLS** authentication.

You must have a certificate authority (CA) certificate registered to verify certificates sent from the authentication server (server certificates).

- **PEAP:**

Set the user name and password that will be used for client authentication.

Normally, select **Verify authentication server certificates**.

- **EAP-TLS:**

You must have a client authentication certificate registered.

Normally, select **Verify authentication server certificates**.

- **EAP-TTLS:**

Select **MSCHAPv2** or **PAP** as the authentication protocol.

Set the user name and password that will be used for client authentication.

8. Save your settings.

Select **OK** to save the IEEE802.1X/EAP settings.

9. Register the certificate authority (CA) certificate.

Select **CA certificate** > **Upload CA certificate** and upload (register) the CA certificate (X.509 DER format).

A maximum of five certificates can be registered.

10. Register key and certificate.

When EAP-TLS is selected:

Select **Key and certificate settings** > **Upload key and certificate** and upload (register) the client certificate (PKCS #12).

»» Note

- If you choose **PEAP** or **EAP-TTLS**, you do not need to do this.

11. Set up **Weak encryption restriction**.

Select **Restrict**.

12. Set up **Weak certificate restriction**.

Select **Restrict**.

13. Select **Enable/disable IEEE802.1X/EAP** to enable IEEE802.1X/EAP.

Select **OK** and save the settings to enable IEEE802.1X/EAP.

»» Note

- You can enable or disable IEEE802.1X/EAP on the operation panel.
Note that the advanced IEEE802.1X/EAP settings are not available on the operation panel.

14. Connect to IEEE802.1X/EAP switch (Authenticator) or IEEE802.1X/EAP access point.

When IEEE802.1X/EAP is enabled, it is possible to search for SSID of IEEE802.1X/EAP access points in Wi-Fi Advanced setup on the operation panel.

Select the SSID of the IEEE802.1X/EAP access point to connect.

For a Wired LAN, connect the LAN cable to the IEEE802.1X/EAP switch.

If You Cannot Connect

If you are unable to connect to the IEEE802.1X/EAP switch (Authenticator) or access point, please redo the settings from step 3 above.

»» Important

- Wireless Direct is disabled when you connect to an IEEE802.1X/EAP access point. When using the Remote UI, enable Wireless Direct from the operation panel settings and connect again using Wireless Direct.

»» Note

- Select **LAN settings** on HOME screen and select **Wi-Fi** > **Settings** > **Advanced** > **IEEE802.1X settings** > **Last authentication result** to help troubleshoot.
 - If you specify the administrator password, enter the password.
- 1. **Check that the wireless router is turned on.** is displayed when the switch/access point may not be turned on.

2. If the error cannot be identified, such as multiple problems occurring, **An unexpected error has occurred.** is displayed.
3. If a connection processing problem or encryption-authentication mismatch is detected, **Failed to connect to the wireless router.** is displayed.
4. If you see a message other than the above, follow the instructions.

Wi-Fi Connection Assistant (Windows)

- **Wi-Fi Connection Assistant**
- **Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant**
- **Diagnosing and Repairing Network Settings**
- **Performing/Changing Network Settings**
- **List of Models Which Does Not Support Diagnosis and Repair Function**
- **List of Models Which Does Not Support IPv6 Configuration via USB Connection**

»» Important

- Some functions may not be available depending on your model and software version.

Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

Wi-Fi Connection Assistant allows you to diagnose or repair the network status, and to perform printer settings on network.

Use Wi-Fi Connection Assistant for:

- Searching printers on network and performing initial network setup for detected printers
- Performing initial network setup by connecting the printer and computer using a USB cable (Not available for some models)
- Changing printer network settings
- Diagnosing the settings of the printer and those of computer on which Wi-Fi Connection Assistant is installed if anything is wrong with connection. In addition, Wi-Fi Connection Assistant repairs the status of the printer and computer (Not available for some models).

»» Important

- Depending on the printer you are using, an administrator password is already specified for the printer at the time of purchase. When you change the network settings, authentication by the administrator password is required.

For details:

➡ Administrator Password

- To use the printer over LAN, make sure you have the equipment necessary for the connection type, such as a wireless router or a LAN cable.
- When you install Wi-Fi Connection Assistant, disable block function of firewall.
- Do not change network settings using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant while printing is in progress.

Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

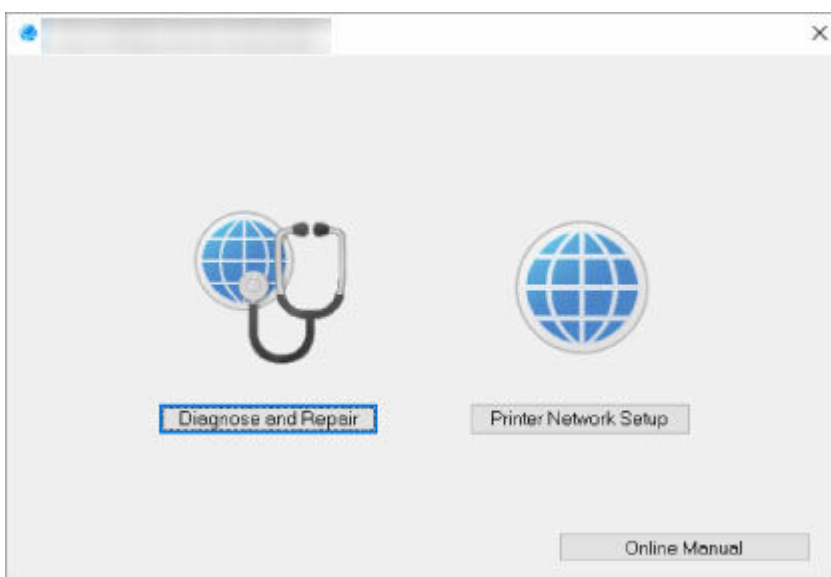
Start up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant as shown below.

In Windows 11, from  (Start button) on the taskbar, select **All apps > Canon Utilities > Wi-Fi Connection Assistant**.

»» Note

- In Windows 10, select **Start > (All apps >) > Canon Utilities > Wi-Fi Connection Assistant**.
- In Windows 7, click **Start** and select **All Programs, Canon Utilities, Wi-Fi Connection Assistant**, and then **Wi-Fi Connection Assistant**.

When you start up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant, a message appears. Check the message and select **Yes**. The screen below appears.



Select **Diagnose and Repair** or **Printer Network Setup** on the displayed screen.

- If you select **Diagnose and Repair**:
 - ➡ [Diagnosing and Repairing Network Settings](#)
- If you select **Printer Network Setup**:
 - ➡ [Performing/Changing Network Settings](#)

Diagnosing and Repairing Network Settings

Wi-Fi Connection Assistant diagnoses and repairs computer settings or connection between the computer and printer when a problem (e.g. cannot print from a printer on the network) occurs.

►► Important

- Some models do not support diagnosis and repair function.

For details:

➡ [List of Models Which Does Not Support Diagnosis and Repair Function](#)

Follow the procedure below.

1. [Start up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.](#)
2. Check the displayed message and select **Yes**.
3. Select **Diagnose and Repair** on the displayed screen.

Perform operations following the instructions on the screen.

►► Note

- This function checks the following items:
 - whether the computer is connected to the router
 - whether a web page on the Internet can be viewed
 - whether the printer can be detected on the network
 - whether the signal strength or communication level is sufficient (when using Wi-Fi)
 - whether the printer port setting matches with the network setting

Performing/Changing Network Settings

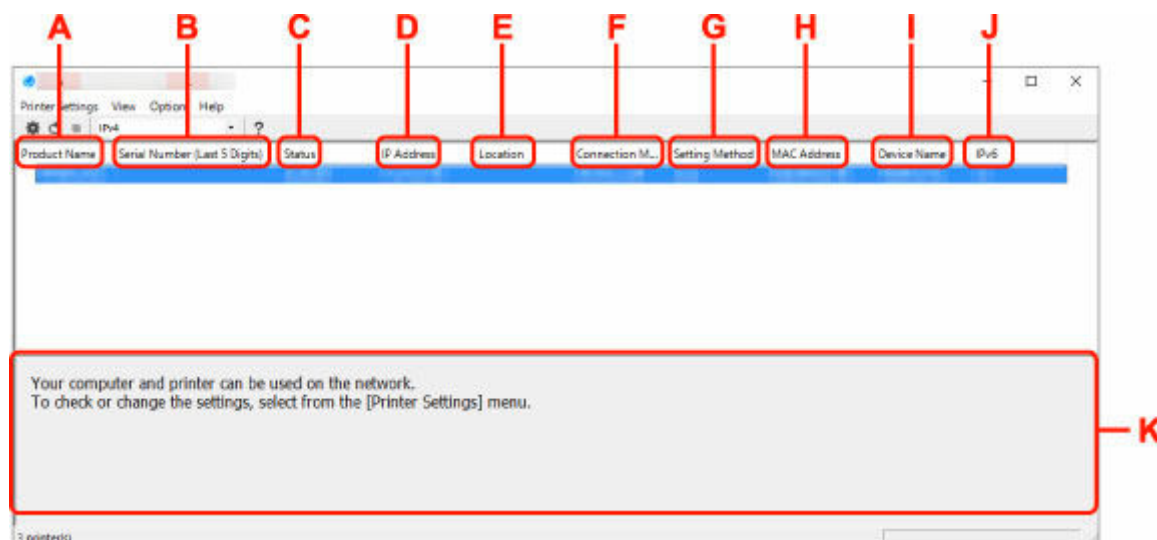
- **Canon Wi-Fi Connection Assistant Screen**
- **Performing Network Settings**

Canon Wi-Fi Connection Assistant Screen

- ➡ [Items on Canon Wi-Fi Connection Assistant Screen](#)
- ➡ [Menus on Canon Wi-Fi Connection Assistant Screen](#)
- ➡ [Items on Canon Wi-Fi Connection Assistant Screen Toolbar](#)

Items on Canon Wi-Fi Connection Assistant Screen

The screen below appears when you start up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant and select **Printer Network Setup**. Detected printers are listed on the screen and the items below are shown.



A: Product Name

Displays the product name of detected printer. The icon below appears on the left if the printer cannot be used.

 : Appears when the printer requires setup or has not been configured.

 : Appears when the IP address is duplicated to another printer.

 : Appears when you cannot communicate with the printer.

➤➤➤ Note

- If a printer you want to use is not detected, try to set the criteria for printer search.
 - ➡ [Setting Criteria for Printer Search/Searching Specific Printer](#)
- Right-clicking a printer displays setting items or items to confirm.

B: Serial Number (Last 5 Digits)

Displays the last five digits of printer's serial number.

C: Status

Displays the printer status as shown below.

- **Available**
Indicates the printer is available.
- **Setup Completed**

Appears after performing network setup and clicking **Set** to close the window.

- **Requires Setup**

Indicates the printer is required to perform Wi-Fi setup.

➡ [Performing/Changing Wi-Fi Settings](#)

- **Not Set**

Indicates the printer cannot be used on network, or IPv6 is disabled. Specify an IP address or enable IPv6 on **Network Settings...**

➡ [Performing/Changing Wi-Fi Settings](#)

- **IP Address Overlap**

Indicates the IP address is duplicated to another printer.

- **Unknown**

Indicates the printer recognized as **Available** in the past cannot be used currently.

➡➡➡ **Note**

- If **USB** is selected from the pulldown menu on the toolbar, nothing is displayed.

D: IP Address

Displays the printer IP address. Nothing is displayed if the printer status is **Requires Setup**.

➡➡➡ **Note**

- If **USB** is selected from the pulldown menu on the toolbar, "-" is displayed.

E: Location

Displays the printer location if it is registered. Nothing is displayed if the printer status is **Requires Setup**.

➡➡➡ **Note**

- If **USB** is selected from the pulldown menu on the toolbar, nothing is displayed.

➡ [Assigning Printer Information](#)

F: Connection Method

Displays printer connection method (wired LAN, Wi-Fi, or USB).

➡➡➡ **Note**

- If **USB** is selected from the pulldown menu on the toolbar, **USB** is displayed.
- If the printer supports both of the LAN connection methods, the printer is recognized as two printers and they are displayed separately. (The same numbers are displayed on **Serial Number (Last 5 Digits)**.)
- If the printer does not support wired LAN, wired LAN is not displayed.
- If you are using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant on the computer which does not support Wi-Fi, Wi-Fi is not displayed.

G: Setting Method

Displays printer setting method.

- **Auto**

Appears if the printer is used by IP address specified automatically.

- **Manual**

Appears if the printer is used by IP address specified manually.

»»» Note

- If **USB** is selected from the pulldown menu on the toolbar, "-" is displayed.

H: MAC Address

Displays the MAC address of the detected printer.

»»» Note

- If **USB** is selected from the pulldown menu on the toolbar, "-" is displayed.

I: Device Name

Displays the printer device name if it is registered.

»»» Note

- If **USB** is selected from the pulldown menu on the toolbar, nothing is displayed.
- The printer with **Requires Setup** displayed on **Status** is not displayed.

➡ [Assigning Printer Information](#)

J: IPv6

On appears when an IPv6 address is assigned for the printer.

»»» Note

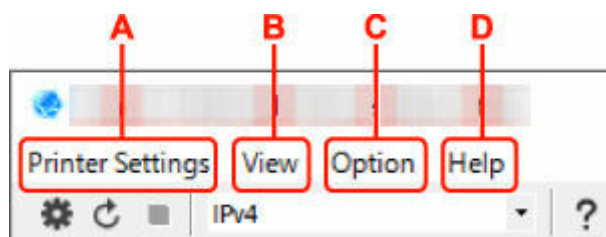
- If **USB** is selected from the pulldown menu on the toolbar, "-" is displayed.

K: Displays the printer status and operation guides.

Selecting a printer from the printer list displays its current status and what to do next.

Menus on Canon Wi-Fi Connection Assistant Screen

This section describes menus on **Canon Wi-Fi Connection Assistant** screen.



A: Printer Settings menu

➡ Printer Settings Menu

B: View menu

➡ View Menu

C: Option menu

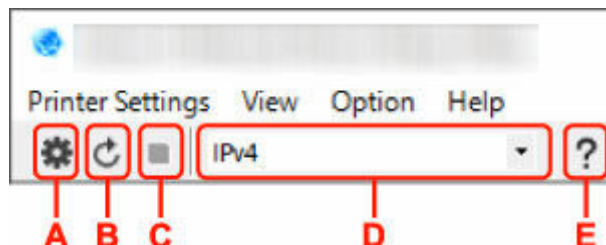
➡ Option Menu

D: Help menu

- ➔ Help Menu

Items on Canon Wi-Fi Connection Assistant Screen Toolbar

This section describes items on **Canon Wi-Fi Connection Assistant** Screen toolbar.



A: Perform wired or Wi-Fi setup.

➤➤➤ Note

- This item has the same function as **Network Settings...** in the **Printer Settings** menu.

B: Redetects printers.

➤➤➤ Note

- This item has the same function as **Update** in the **View** menu.

C: Stops detecting printers.

➤➤➤ Note

- This item has the same function as **Cancel** in the **View** menu.

D: Switches the printer list. (IPv4, IPv6, or USB printers)

➤➤➤ Note

- This item has the same function as **Switch View** in the **View** menu.
- You can also display the USB connected printer list. (Not available for some models.) In this case, select **USB**.

E: Displays this guide.

➤➤➤ Note

- This item has the same function as **Online Manual** in the **Help** menu.

Performing Network Settings

- **Performing/Changing Wired LAN Connection (Ethernet Cable) Settings**
(Supported models only)
- **Performing/Changing Wi-Fi Settings**
- **Assigning Printer Information**

Important

- Some functions may not be available depending on your model and software version.

Performing/Changing Wired LAN Connection (Ethernet Cable) Settings (Supported models only)

Follow the procedure below to perform/change wired LAN settings.

»» Important

- These settings are not available if your printer does not have a wired LAN connection.

»» Note

- For some models, you can perform network setup for a USB connected printer using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant. Select **USB** on **Switch View** under the **View** menu to display printers for which you can perform setup.

1. [Start up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.](#)

2. Check the displayed message and select **Yes**.

3. Select **Printer Network Setup** on the displayed screen.

Detected printers are listed.

4. Select printer to perform/change settings from printer list.

Select the printer with **Wired LAN** displayed on **Connection Method** and **Available** displayed on **Status** to perform settings.

You can perform settings for a printer with **Available** not displayed on **Status** via USB connection.

To perform setup for a USB connected printer, select **USB** from the pulldown menu on the toolbar and select the printer to perform/change settings.

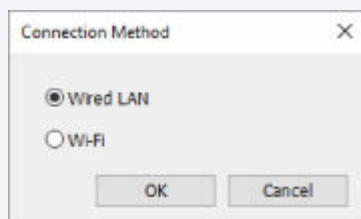
5. Select **Network Settings...** on **Printer Settings** menu.

The **Confirm Printer Password** screen appears.

For more on the password, refer to Administrator Password.

»» Note

- Clicking the  icon allows you to perform/change settings.
- If you select a USB connected printer on step 4, the screen below appears after the **Confirm Printer Password** screen appears



Select **Wired LAN** and click **OK**.

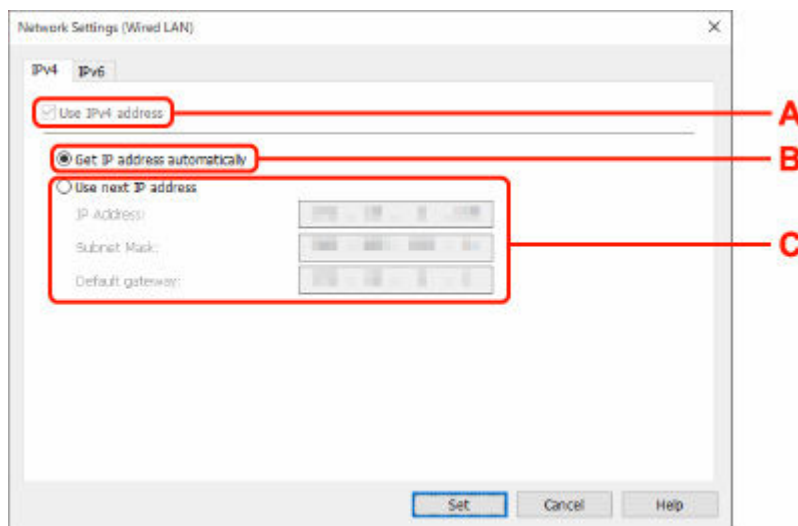
6. Enter password and click **OK.**

The **Network Settings** screen appears.

7. Perform/change settings.

You can switch the screen between IPv4 and IPv6. Click the tab to switch the protocol.

- IPv4 settings



A: Use IPv4 address

Always selected. (displayed in a gray out state)

B: Get IP address automatically

Select this option to use an IP address automatically assigned by a DHCP server. DHCP server functionality must be enabled on your router.

C: Use next IP address

Select this option if no DHCP server functionality is available in your setup where you use the printer, or you want to use a fixed IP address.

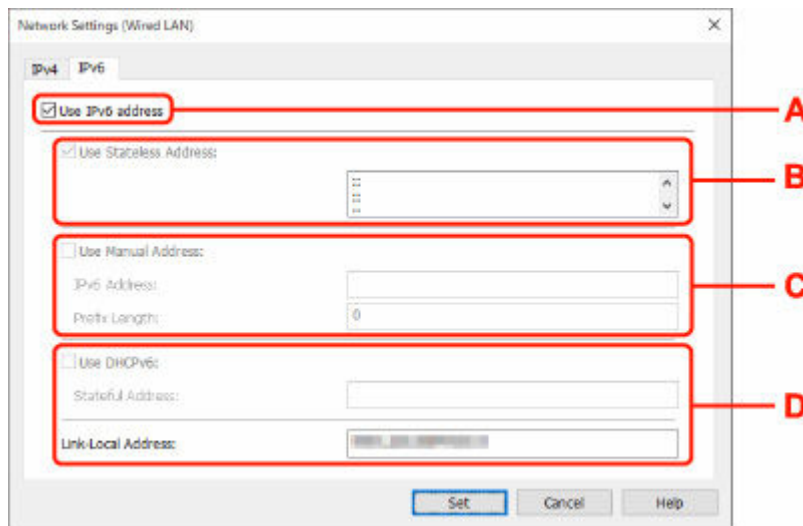
Enter the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway.

- IPv6 settings

Note

- If you select a USB connected printer on step 4, you cannot perform IPv6 settings depending on the printer you are using.

For details, see [List of Models Which Does Not Support IPv6 Configuration via USB Connection](#).



A: Use IPv6 address

Select when you use the printer with IPv6 environment.

B: Use Stateless Address:

Select when you use an IP address assigned automatically. Use a router compatible with IPv6.

»» Note

- This setting item is not available depending on the printer you are using.

C: Use Manual Address:

Select this option if no DHCP server functionality is available in your setup where you use the printer, or you want to use a fixed IP address.

Enter the IP address and IP address prefix length.

»» Note

- This setting item is not available depending on the printer you are using.

D: Use DHCPv6:

Select when you obtain an IP address using DHCPv6.

»» Note

- This setting item is not available depending on the printer you are using.

8. Click Set.

Performing/Changing Wi-Fi Settings

Follow the procedure below to perform/change Wi-Fi settings.

»» Important

- Enable Easy wireless connect (Cableless setup) before performing printer setup. (Not required if you change the IP address.) For details, search for "NR049" on your printer's online manual and see the page shown.
- If you plan to use a printer over Wi-Fi, make sure you perform security settings for the Wi-Fi network.

»» Note

- For some models, you can perform network setup for a USB connected printer using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant. Select **USB** on **Switch View** under the **View** menu to display printers.

1. [Start up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.](#)

2. Check the displayed message and select **Yes**.

3. Select **Printer Network Setup** on the displayed screen.

Detected printers are listed.

4. Select printer to perform/change settings from printer list.

Select the printer with **Wi-Fi** displayed on **Connection Method** and **Available** or **Requires Setup** displayed on **Status** to perform settings.

You can perform settings for a printer with **Available** or **Requires Setup** not displayed on **Status** via USB connection.

To perform setup for a USB connected printer, select **USB** from the pulldown menu on the toolbar and select the printer to perform/change settings.

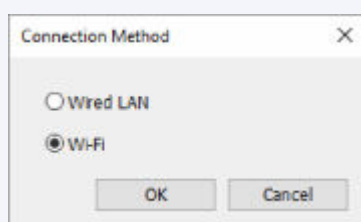
5. Select **Network Settings...** on **Printer Settings** menu.

The **Confirm Printer Password** screen appears.

For more on the password, refer to Administrator Password.

»» Note

- Clicking the  icon allows you to perform/change settings.
- If you select a USB connected printer on step 4 and the selected printer is compatible with wired LAN, the screen below appears after the **Confirm Printer Password** screen appears



Select **Wi-Fi** and click **OK**.

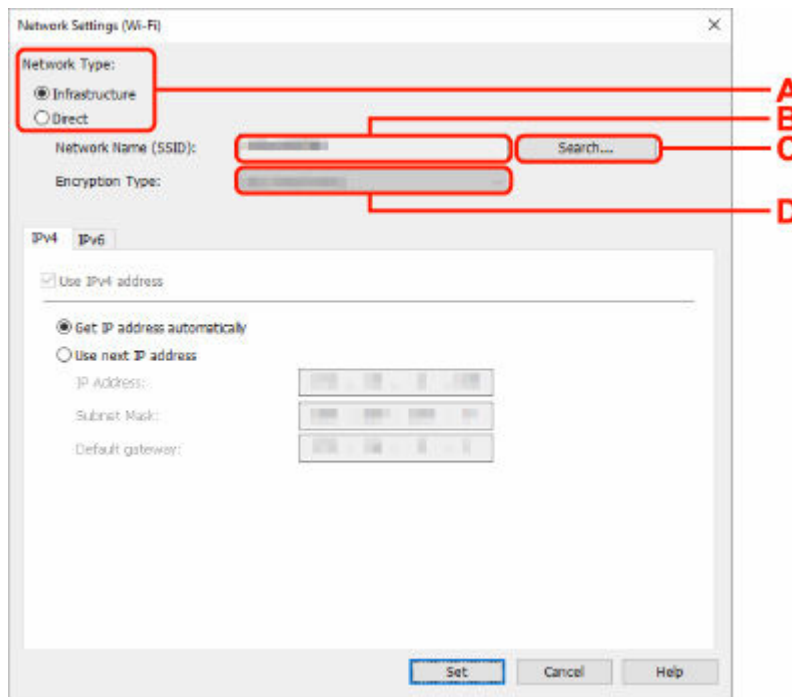
6. Enter password and click OK.

The **Network Settings** screen appears.

7. Perform/change settings.

You can switch the screen between IPv4 and IPv6. Click the tab to switch the protocol.

- IPv4/IPv6 settings



A: Network Type:

Select the Wi-Fi mode.

- **Infrastructure**

Connects the printer to the Wi-Fi with a wireless router.

- **Direct**

Connects the printer to wireless communication devices (smartphone or tablet) without a wireless router.

»» Note

- If Wi-Fi is enabled on the computer and if you select a USB connected printer on step 4, you can select **Direct** depending on the printer you are using.
- If **Direct** is selected, all items are displayed in a gray out status and you cannot perform any settings.

In addition, you cannot connect to Internet from your computer depending on your operating environment.

B: Network Name (SSID):

The network name (SSID) of the Wi-Fi currently used is displayed.

The network name (SSID) for Wireless Direct appears while in Wireless Direct.

C: Search...

The **Detected Wireless Routers** screen is displayed to select a wireless router to connect to. For a wireless router already connected to the computer, **Available** is displayed on **Communication Status**.

If you select a wireless router with **Not Connected** on **Communication Status** from the list, clicking **Set** displays the WPA/WPA2 or WEP setting screen for a wireless router.

- ➡ If WEP Details Screen Appears
- ➡ If WPA/WPA2 Details Screen Appears

D: Encryption Type:

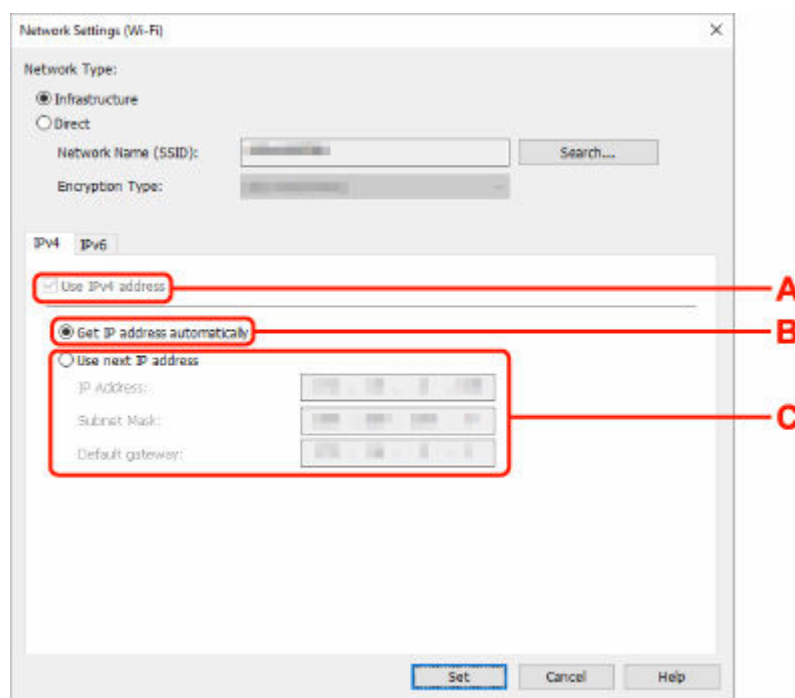
Displays the encryption method used over the Wi-Fi.

- IPv4 settings

➤➤➤ Note

- The setting items below are available only when **Infrastructure** is selected for **Network Type**.

If **Direct** is selected, all items are displayed in a gray out status and you cannot perform any settings.



A: Use IPv4 address

Always selected. (displayed in a gray out state)

B: Get IP address automatically

Select this option to use an IP address automatically assigned by a DHCP server. DHCP server functionality must be enabled on your wireless router.

C: Use next IP address

Select this option if no DHCP server functionality is available in your setup where you use the printer, or you want to use a fixed IP address.

Enter the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway.

- IPv6 settings

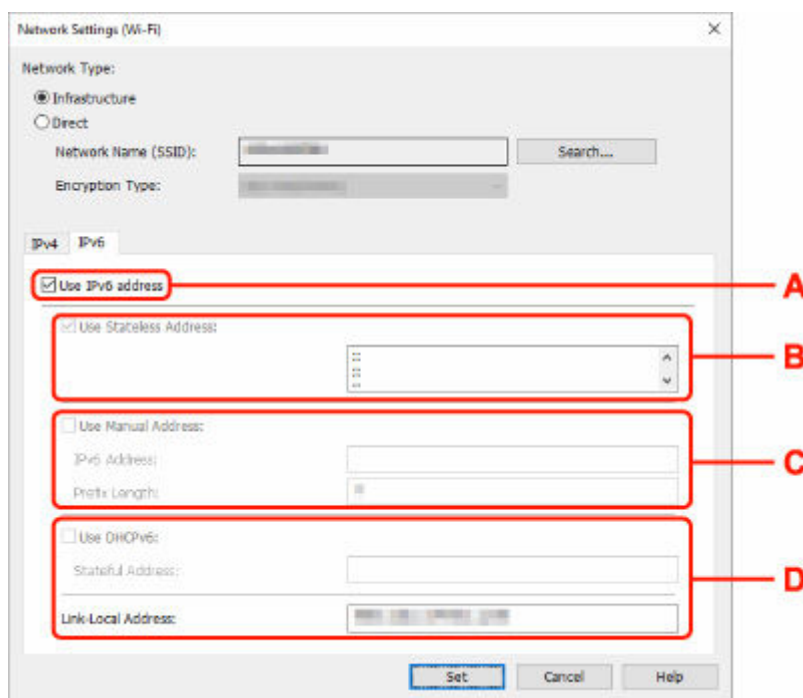
►►► Note

- If you select a USB connected printer on step 4, you cannot perform IPv6 settings depending on the printer you are using.

For details, see [List of Models Which Does Not Support IPv6 Configuration via USB Connection](#).

- The setting items below are available only when **Infrastructure** is selected for **Network Type**.

If **Direct** is selected, all items are displayed in a gray out status and you cannot perform any settings.



A: Use IPv6 address

Select when you use the printer with IPv6 environment.

B: Use Stateless Address:

Select when you use an IP address assigned automatically. Use a router compatible with IPv6.

►►► Note

- This setting item is not available depending on the printer you are using.

C: Use Manual Address:

Select this option if no DHCP server functionality is available in your setup where you use the printer, or you want to use a fixed IP address.

Enter the IP address and IP address prefix length.

►►► Note

- This setting item is not available depending on the printer you are using.

D: Use DHCPv6:

Select when you obtain an IP address using DHCPv6.

 Note

- This setting item is not available depending on the printer you are using.

8. Click Set.

Assigning Printer Information

Follow the procedure below to assign/change printer location name or device name.

The names appear on **Device Name:** and **Location:** on the **Canon Wi-Fi Connection Assistant** screen.

»» Note

- If **USB** is selected from the pulldown menu on the toolbar, this setting item is not available.

1. [Start up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.](#)

2. Check the displayed message and select **Yes**.

3. Select **Printer Network Setup** on the displayed screen.

Detected printers are listed.

4. Select printer to assign location name and device name.

Select the printer with **Available** displayed on **Status**.

5. Select **Detailed Printer Settings...** on **Printer Settings** menu.

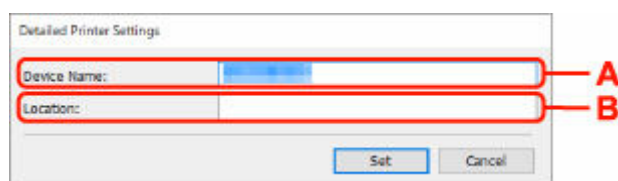
The **Confirm Printer Password** screen appears.

For more on the password, refer to Administrator Password.

6. Enter password and click **OK**.

The **Detailed Printer Settings** screen appears.

7. Perform/change settings.



The setting items below are available.

A: Device Name:

Assigns the device name.

B: Location:

Assigns the location name.

8. Click **Set**.

List of Models Which Does Not Support Diagnosis and Repair Function

The following models does not support "Diagnose and Repair" function of Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

- G4000 series
- PRO-500 series
- PRO-1000 series
- MB2100 series
- MB2700 series
- MB5100 series
- MB5400 series
- iB4100 series
- PRO-520
- PRO-540
- PRO-540S
- PRO-560
- PRO-560S
- PRO-2000
- PRO-4000
- PRO-4000S
- PRO-6000
- PRO-6000S
- TS9000 series
- TS8000 series
- TS6000 series
- TS5000 series
- MG3000 series
- E470 series

List of Models Which Does Not Support IPv6 Configuration via USB Connection

For the following models, you can perform settings only for IPv4 using Wi-Fi Connection Assistant. (You cannot perform settings for IPv6.)

- iB4100 series
- MG3000 series
- E470 series
- G4000 series
- TS5000 series
- TS6000 series
- TS8000 series
- TS9000 series
- TR8500 series
- TR7500 series
- TS9100 series
- TS8100 series
- TS6100 series
- TS5100 series
- TS3100 series
- E3100 series
- TS300 series
- E300 series
- TR8580 series
- TS9180 series
- TS8180 series
- TS6180 series
- TR8530 series
- TR7530 series
- TS8130 series
- TS6130 series
- XK70 series
- XK50 series
- G4010 series
- G3010 series
- TR4500 series
- E4200 series
- TS6200 series
- TS6280 series
- TS6230 series
- TS8200 series
- XK80 series
- TS8280 series
- TS8230 series
- TS9500 series
- TS9580 series

- TR9530 series
- TS3300 series
- E3300 series

Wi-Fi Connection Assistant (macOS)

- **Wi-Fi Connection Assistant**
- **Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant**
- **Diagnosing and Repairing Network Settings**
- **List of Models Which Does Not Support Diagnosis and Repair Function**

➤➤➤ Important

- Some functions may not be available depending on your model and software version.

Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

If anything is wrong with connection, Wi-Fi Connection Assistant diagnoses the settings of the printer and those of computer on which it is installed. In addition, Wi-Fi Connection Assistant restores the status of the printer and computer.

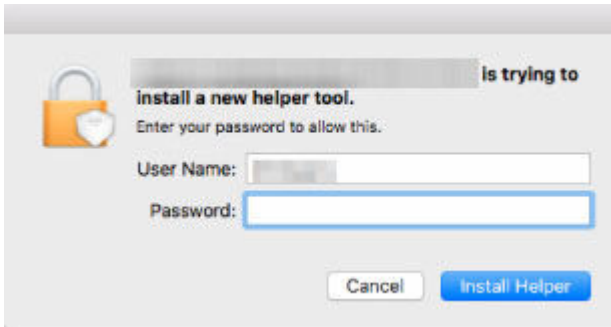
»» Important

- To use the printer over LAN, make sure you have the equipment necessary for the connection type, such as a wireless router or a LAN cable.
- When you install Wi-Fi Connection Assistant, disable block function of firewall.

Starting Up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant

Start up **Launchpad**, select **Canon Utilities**, and then select Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

When you start up Wi-Fi Connection Assistant, the screen below appears.



Enter the password specified for your computer and select **Install Helper**. Wi-Fi Connection Assistant starts diagnosis and repair of network.

➡ [Diagnosing and Repairing Network Settings](#)

Diagnosing and Repairing Network Settings

Wi-Fi Connection Assistant diagnoses and repairs computer settings or connection between the computer and printer when a problem (e.g. cannot print from a printer on the network) occurs.

►► Important

- Some models do not support diagnosis and repair function.

For details:

➡ [List of Models Which Does Not Support Diagnosis and Repair Function](#)

Wi-Fi Connection Assistant starts checking the computer settings when it starts up. Perform operations following the instructions on the screen.

►► Note

- This function checks the following items:
 - whether the computer is connected to the router
 - whether the printer can be detected on the network
 - whether the signal strength or communication level is sufficient (when using Wi-Fi)
 - whether the printer port setting matches with the network setting

List of Models Which Does Not Support Diagnosis and Repair Function

The following models does not support "Diagnose and Repair" function of Wi-Fi Connection Assistant.

- G4000 series
- PRO-500 series
- PRO-1000 series
- MB2100 series
- MB2700 series
- MB5100 series
- MB5400 series
- iB4000 series
- PRO-520
- PRO-540
- PRO-560
- PRO-540S
- PRO-560S
- PRO-2000
- PRO-4000
- PRO-6000
- PRO-4000S
- PRO-6000S
- TS9000 series
- TS8000 series
- TS6000 series
- TS5000 series
- MG3000 series
- E470 series

List of Support Codes for Printer Errors

Support codes are displayed on the printer's LCD and your computer screen when errors occur.

A "support code" is an error number, and is displayed along with an error message.

When an error occurs, check the support code and take the appropriate action in response.

Support Code Appears on Printer's LCD and Computer Screen

• 1000 to 1ZZZ

1000	1001	1002	1006	1013	1062	1200	1250	1261	1300	1308	1401
1403	1405	1408	1409	140A	140C	1410	1411	1412	1413	1414	1415
1416	1417	1600	1660	1684	1688	1689	168C	1700	1701	1730	1830
1850	1851	1855	1856	1857	1890						

• 2000 to 2ZZZ

2103	2114	2115	2123	2124	2500	2503

• 3000 to 3ZZZ

3000	3306	3310	3311	3312	3313	3314	3315	3316	3317	3318	3319
3413	3440	3441	3442	3443	3444	3445	3446	3447			

• 4000 to 4ZZZ

4103	4104	4109	4111	495A

• 5000 to 5ZZZ

5100	5200	520C	520E	5400	5700	5B00	5B01	5B22	5C02

• 6000 to 6ZZZ

6000	6001	6004	6500	6502	6700	6701	6800	6801	6830	6831	6832
6833	6900	6901	6902	6910	6920	6921	6930	6931	6932	6933	6940
6941	6942	6943	6944	6945	6946	6A80	6A81	6D01			

- **7000 to 7ZZZ**

7600 7700 7800 7802

- **8000 to 8ZZZ**

8200 8300

- **A000 to ZZZZ**

B400 [C000](#)

For paper jam support codes, see also [List of Support Codes for Printer Errors \(Paper Jams\)](#).

List of Support Codes for Printer Errors (Paper Jams)

If paper jams, remove it following the appropriate procedure as shown below.

- If you can see the jammed paper at the paper output slot / top feed / manual feed tray:
 - ➡ [1300](#)
- If the paper tears and you cannot remove it from the paper output slot / top feed / manual feed tray or if the paper is jammed inside the printer:
 - ➡ [Paper Is Jammed inside Printer](#)
- If the small size paper is jammed:
 - ➡ Small Size Paper Is Jammed inside Printer
- Cases other than above:
 - ➡ Other Cases

Cause

Paper is jammed in the paper output slot / top feed / manual feed tray.

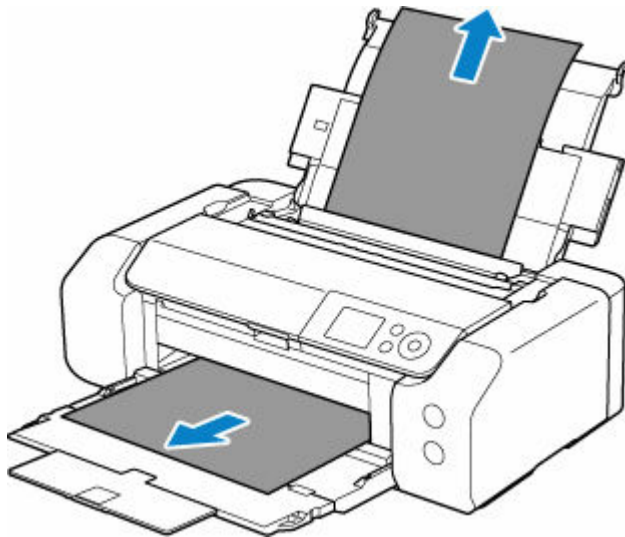
What to Do

Remove the jammed paper according to the paper source.

If the paper loaded in the top feed is jammed:

1. Slowly pull out paper, either from paper output slot or from top feed, whichever is easier.

Hold the paper with both hands, and pull it out slowly so as not to tear it.



Note

- If you cannot pull out the paper, turn the printer back on without pulling forcibly. The paper may be ejected automatically.
- If paper becomes jammed during printing and you need to turn off the printer to remove it, press the printer's **Stop** button to stop the printing before you turn off the printer.
- If the paper tears and you cannot remove the jammed paper from the paper output slot or the top feed, remove the paper from inside the printer.

➡ [Paper Is Jammed inside Printer](#)

2. Reload paper and press the printer's **OK** button.

The printer resumes printing. Reprint the page you were printing if it was not printed properly due to the paper jam.

If you turned off the printer in step 1, the print data that was sent to the printer is erased. Redo the printing.

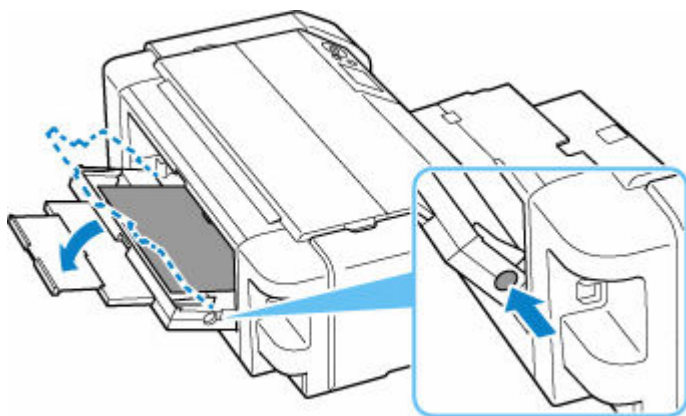
►► Note

- When reloading the paper, make sure you are using suitable paper and loading it correctly. Also, make sure that the paper in the top feed is not resting against a wall or any other obstacle. If the paper is touching a wall, this may prevent the paper from being fed into the printer correctly.
- We recommend using paper sizes other than A5 to print documents with photos or graphics. A5 paper may curl and jam as it leaves the printer.

If the measures above do not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

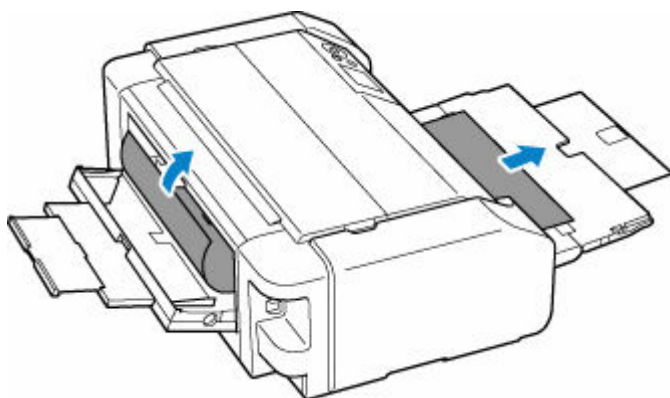
If the paper loaded in the manual feed tray is jammed:

1. Press **Paper Jam Clearing** button and set manual feed tray to paper jam clearing position.



2. Slowly pull out paper, either from paper output slot or from manual feed tray, whichever is easier.

Hold the paper with both hands, and pull it out slowly so as not to tear it.



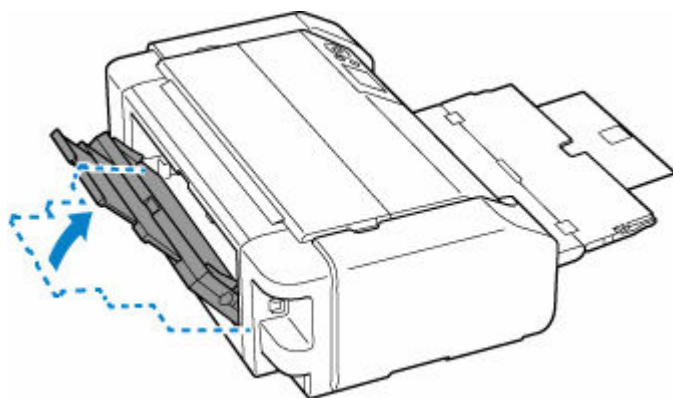
►► Note

- If you cannot pull out the paper, turn the printer back on without pulling forcibly. The paper may be ejected automatically.

- If paper becomes jammed during printing and you need to turn off the printer to remove it, press the printer's **Stop** button to stop the printing before you turn off the printer.
- If the paper tears and you cannot remove the jammed paper from the paper output slot or the manual feed tray, remove the paper from inside the printer.

➡ [Paper Is Jammed inside Printer](#)

3. Return manual feed tray to original position.



4. Reload paper and press the printer's **OK** button.

The printer resumes printing. Reprint the page you were printing if it was not printed properly due to the paper jam.

If you turned off the printer in step 2, the print data that was sent to the printer is erased. Redo the printing.

▶▶▶ Note

- When reloading the paper, make sure you are using suitable paper and loading it correctly. Also, make sure that the paper in the top feed is not resting against a wall or any other obstacle. If the paper is touching a wall, this may prevent the paper from being fed into the printer correctly.

If the measures above do not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

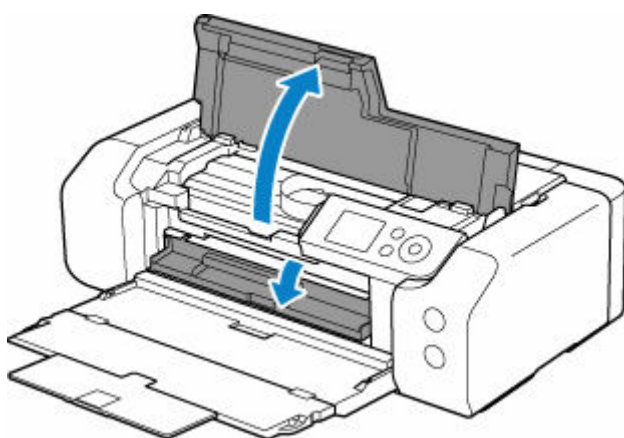
Paper Is Jammed inside Printer

If the jammed paper tears and you cannot remove the paper from the paper output slot / top feed / manual feed tray, or if the jammed paper remains inside the printer, remove the paper following the instructions below.

»» Note

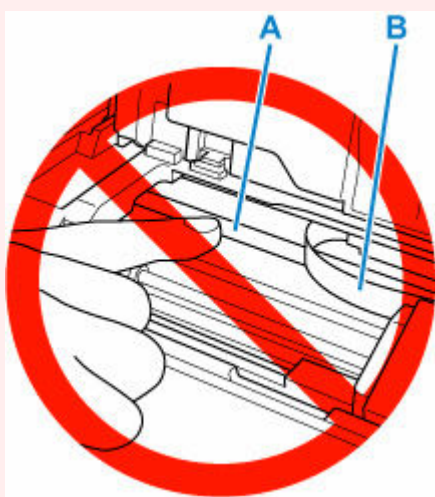
- If paper becomes jammed during printing and you need to turn off the printer to remove it, press the printer's **Stop** button to stop the printing before you turn off the printer.

1. Turn off the printer and unplug it.
2. Open top cover and multi-purpose tray guide.



»» Important

- Do not touch clear film (A) or white belt (B).

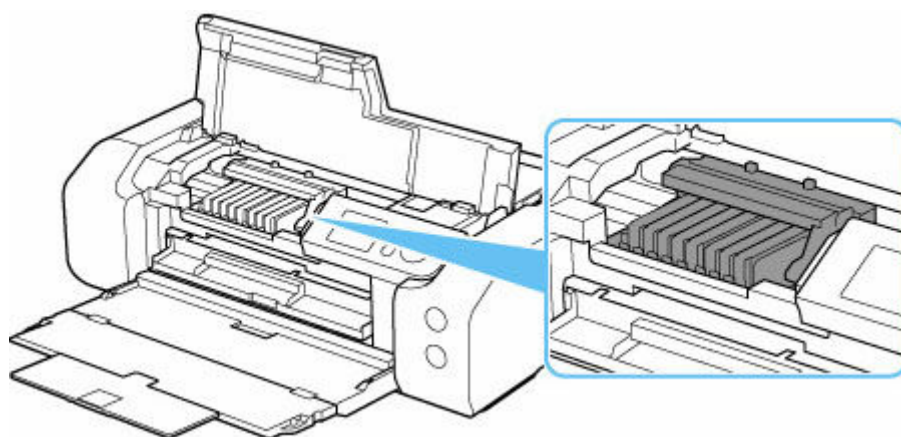


If you soil or scratch this part by touching it with paper or your hand, it could damage the printer.

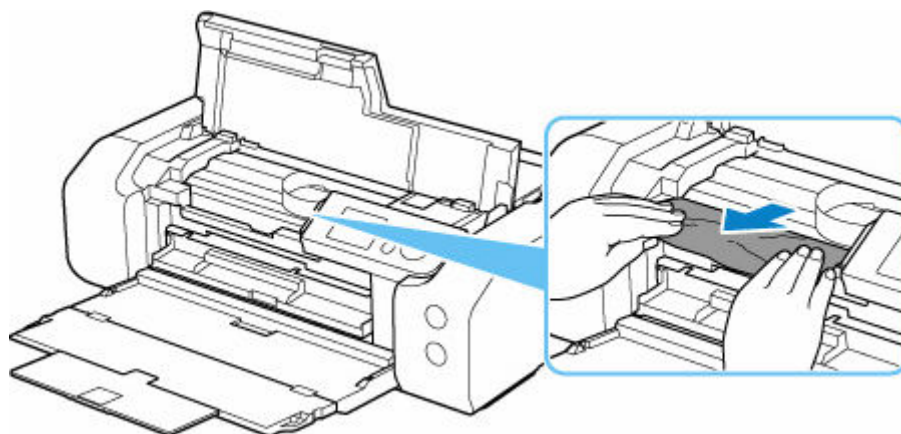
3. Check if jammed paper is under print head holder.

If the jammed paper is under the print head holder, move the print head holder to the far right or left, whichever makes it easier to remove the paper.

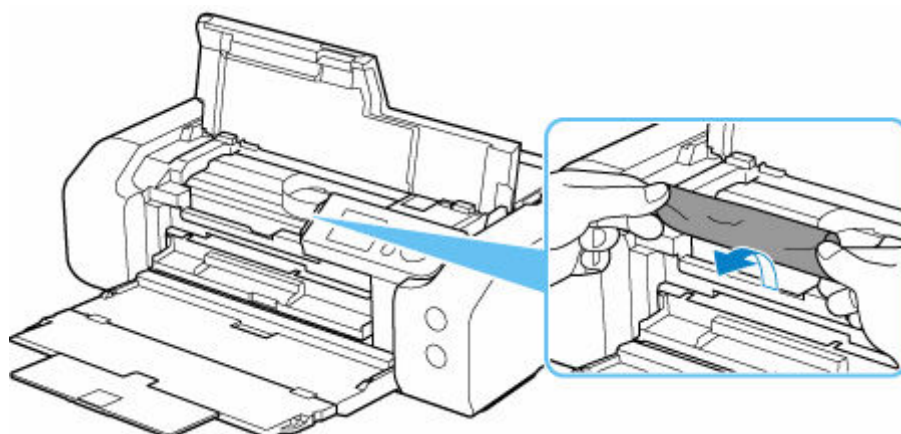
When moving the print head holder, hold the top of the print head holder and slide it slowly to the far right or left.



- 4.** Hold jammed paper firmly in both hands.

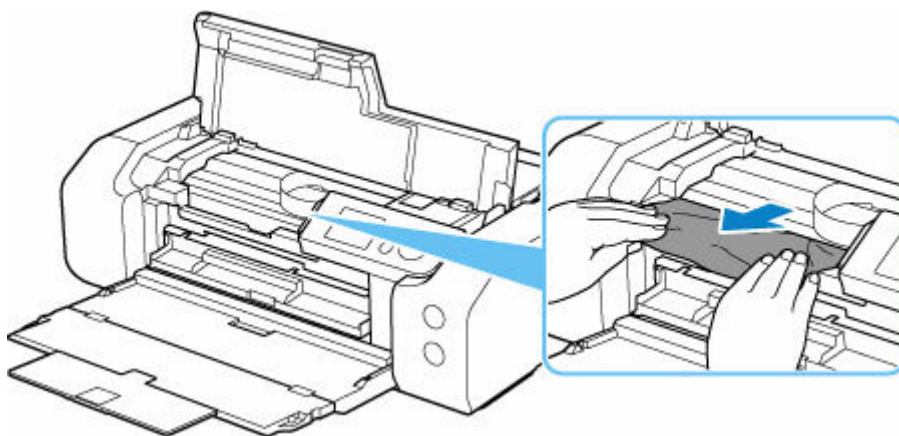


If the paper is rolled up, pull out it.



- 5.** Slowly pull out paper, so as not to tear it.

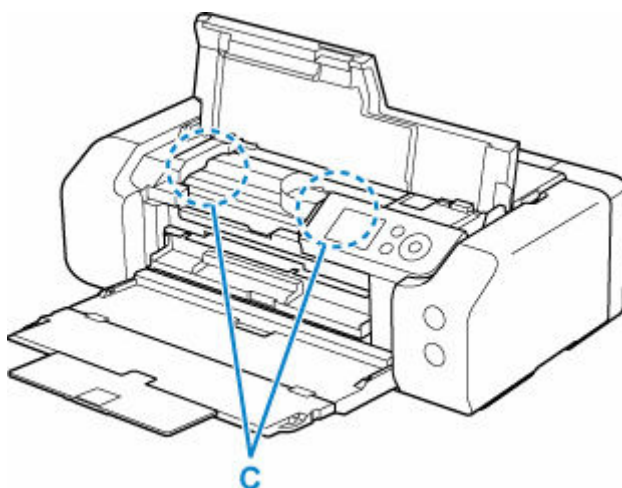
Pull out the paper at an angle of about 45 degrees.



6. Make sure all jammed paper is removed.

If the paper tears when you pull out it, a bit of paper may remain in the printer. Check the following and remove any remaining paper.

- Any paper left under the print head holder?
- Any small bits of paper left in the printer?
- Any paper left in the left and right empty spaces (C) in the printer?



7. Close top cover.

All jobs in the print queue are canceled. Redo the printing.

►►► Note

- When reloading the paper, make sure you are using suitable paper and loading it correctly.

If a paper jam message appears on the printer's LCD or on your computer screen when you resume printing after removing all the jammed paper, there may be some paper still inside the printer. Check the printer again for any remaining bits of paper.

If the measures above do not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

Cause

Possible causes include the following.

- There is no paper in the top feed.
- Paper is not loaded in the top feed properly.

What to Do

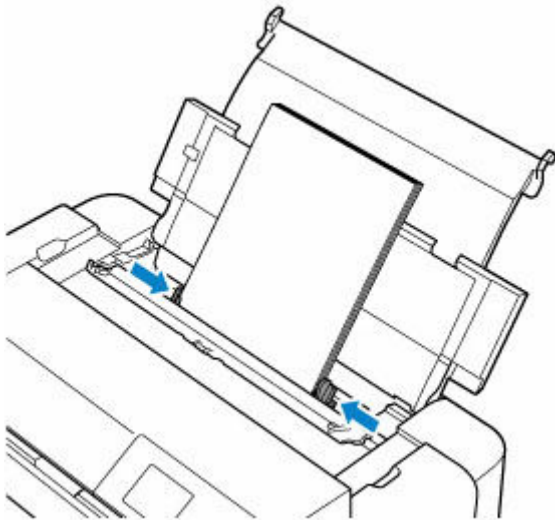
Take the corresponding actions below.

- Load paper in the top feed.

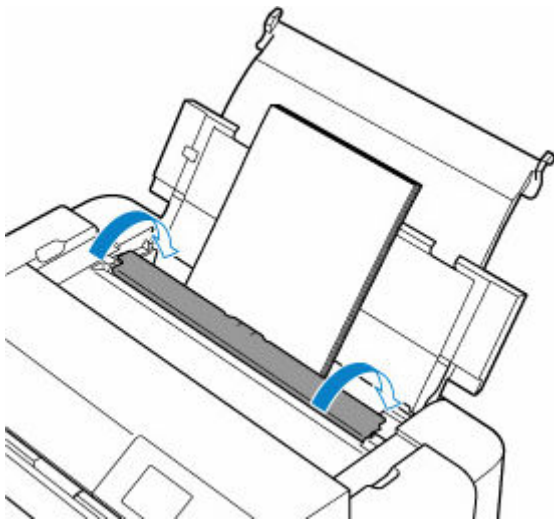
➔ [Loading Paper in the Top Feed](#)

➤➤➤ Note

- The loadable paper differs depending on the paper source. For details on the paper that can be loaded in the top feed, refer to [Loading Paper in the Top Feed](#).
 - Load one sheet of A4 / Letter size plain paper in the top feed before aligning the print head during the first printer setup.
- Align the paper guides of the top feed with both edges of the paper.



- Close the feed slot cover.



After carrying out the above measures, press the printer's **OK** button.

»» Note

- To cancel printing, press the printer's **Stop** button.

Cause

Multi-purpose tray compatible media is not set on multi-purpose tray, or the media position is misaligned.

What to Do

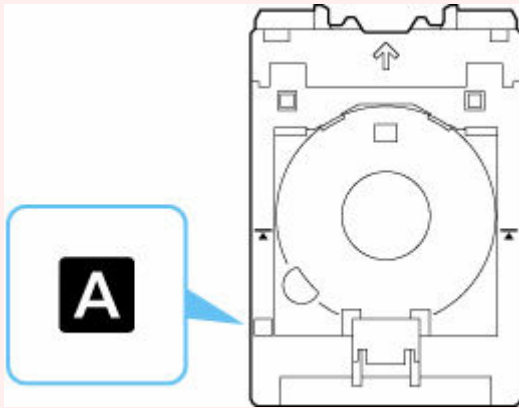
Remove the multi-purpose tray, place the multi-purpose tray compatible media properly, and then attach the multi-purpose tray to the printer.

➔ [Placing Multi-purpose Tray](#)

Then press the printer's **OK** button to cancel the error.

Important

- When you print on multi-purpose tray compatible media, use the supplied multi-purpose tray (the one with the "A" mark).



Note

- To cancel printing, press the printer's **Stop** button.

1200

Cause

Top cover is open.

What to Do

Close the top cover and wait for a while.

Do not forget to close it, such as after replacing ink tanks.

1250

Cause

Paper output tray is closed.

What to Do

Open the paper output tray.

Cause

Print head may not be installed properly or may be damaged.

What to Do

Take the corresponding actions below.

- Install the print head.
- If the print head is already installed, remove and reinstall it.

Then close the top cover.

- Turn off the printer and turn it back on.

If the measures above do not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

Cause

Ink may have run out.

What to Do

Replacing the ink tank is recommended.

If printing is in progress and you want to continue printing, press the printer's **OK** button with the ink tank installed.

Then printing can continue.

Replacing the ink tank is recommended after the printing.

Cause

The ink tank cannot be recognized.

What to Do

Printing cannot be performed because the ink tank is not installed or is not compatible with this printer.

Check the ink tank.

If you want to cancel printing, press the printer's **Stop** button.

Cause

The ink has run out.

What to Do

Replace the ink tank and close the top cover.

If you want to continue printing in this condition, you need to disable the function for detecting the remaining ink level. Press and hold the printer's **Stop** button for at least 5 seconds, and then release it.

With this operation, disabling the function for detecting the remaining ink level is memorized. Please be advised that Canon shall not be liable for any malfunction or trouble caused by using a non-genuine Canon ink tank or by using non-genuine Canon ink.

▶▶ Note

- If the function for detecting the remaining ink level is disabled, the ink tank is displayed in white on the Estimated ink levels screen on the LCD.

Cause

Printer detected ink out condition.

What to Do

Replace the ink tank and close the top cover.

An ink tank that was once empty is installed.

If you want to continue printing, you need to disable the function for detecting the remaining ink level. To disable this function, press and hold the printer's **Stop** button for at least 5 seconds, and then release it.

With this operation, disabling the function for detecting the remaining ink level is memorized. Please be advised that Canon shall not be liable for any malfunction or trouble caused by using a non-genuine Canon ink tank or by using non-genuine Canon ink.

▶▶▶ Note

- If the function for detecting the remaining ink level is disabled, the ink tank is displayed in white on the Estimated ink levels screen on the LCD.

Cause

Ink absorber is almost full.

What to Do

Press the printer's **OK** button to continue printing. Contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

▶▶▶ Note

- In the case of warnings or errors caused by remaining ink levels, the printer cannot print.

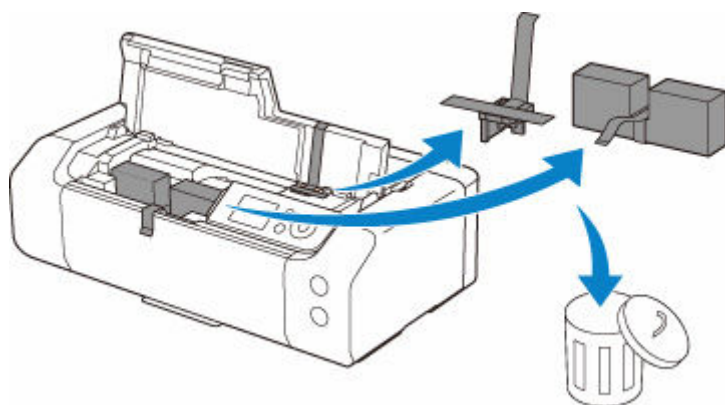
Cause

Protective materials for shipping may still be attached.

What to Do

Open the top cover and make sure that the protective materials for securing the print head holder have been removed.

If the protective materials are still there, remove them and close the top cover.



In the case of the first printer setup, select your printer name on the page, and follow the instructions.

Cause

Paper settings specified when printing do not match the paper information for the top feed registered in the printer.

▶▶▶ Note

- For the appropriate combination of the paper settings specified in the printer driver and the paper information registered in the printer, refer to the following.
 - ➔ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Media Type\)](#) (Windows)
 - ➔ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Media Type\)](#) (macOS)
 - ➔ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Paper Size\)](#) (Windows)
 - ➔ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Paper Size\)](#) (macOS)
- For how to register paper information in the printer, refer to the following.
 - ➔ [Register Paper Information](#)

For example, if the paper settings specified when printing differ from the paper information for the top feed registered in the printer, the following message is displayed on the printer's LCD.

- Paper settings specified on the printer driver when printing:

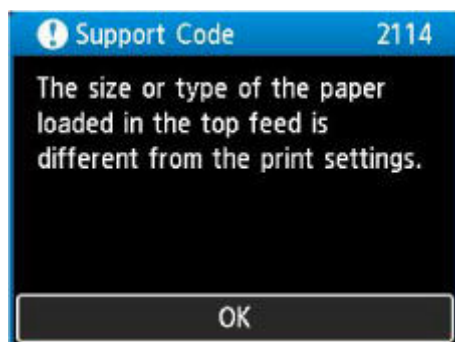
Paper size: **A5**

Paper type: **Plain paper**

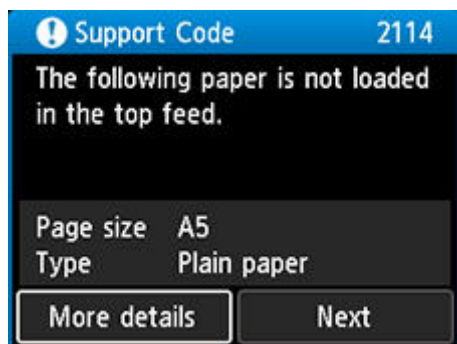
- Paper information for the top feed registered in the printer:

Paper size: **A4**

Paper type: **Plain paper**

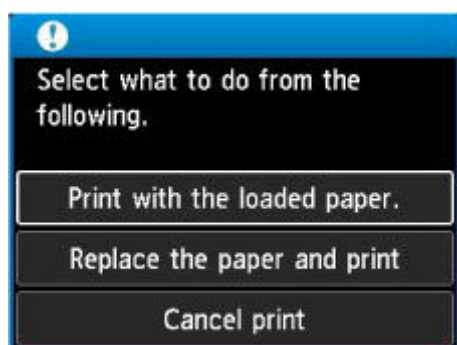


When you press the printer's **OK** button, the paper settings specified when printing are displayed on the LCD.



What to Do

Select **Next** using the ◀▶ buttons and press the printer's **OK** button to display the screen below.



Select the appropriate action using the ▲▼ buttons and press the printer's **OK** button.

▶▶▶ Note

- Depending on settings, some of the options below may not appear.

Print with the loaded paper.

Select this option to print on the loaded paper with the paper settings specified when printing.

For example, when the paper size specified at printing is A5 and the paper information for the top feed is registered as A4, select this option to print on A4 paper loaded in the top feed with the A5 setting.

Replace the paper and print

Select this option to print after changing the paper in the top feed.

For example, when the paper size specified at printing is A5 and the paper information for the top feed is registered as A4, select this option to print after replacing the paper in the top feed with A5 paper.

After changing the paper and closing the feed slot cover, the paper information registration screen for the top feed appears. Register the paper information in the printer according to the loaded paper.

▶▶▶ Note

- If you do not know the paper size and paper type to be loaded in the top feed, press the printer's **Back** button. The paper size and paper type are displayed.
- For the appropriate combination of the paper settings specified in the printer driver and the paper information registered in the printer, refer to the following.

➡ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Media Type\)](#) (Windows)

- ➡ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Media Type\)](#) (macOS)
- ➡ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Paper Size\)](#) (Windows)
- ➡ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Paper Size\)](#) (macOS)

Cancel print

Cancels printing.

Select this option when you want to change the paper settings specified at printing. Change the paper settings and retry printing.

➤➤➤ Note

- To suppress the misprint prevention message, change the setting as described below. When you suppress the message, the printer uses the paper settings specified at printing, regardless of whether the paper loaded in the top feed matches the paper settings.
 - To change whether to display a misprint prevention message when printing without using the printer driver:
 - ➡ [Paper-related settings](#)
 - To change whether to display a misprint prevention message when printing using the printer driver:
 - ➡ [Changing the Printer Operation Mode](#) (Windows)
 - ➡ [Changing the Printer Operation Mode](#) (macOS)

Cause

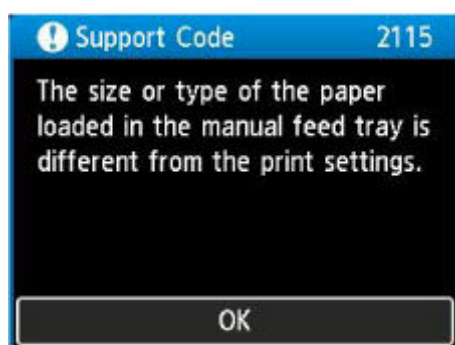
Paper settings specified when printing do not match the paper information for the manual feed tray registered in the printer.

▶▶▶ Note

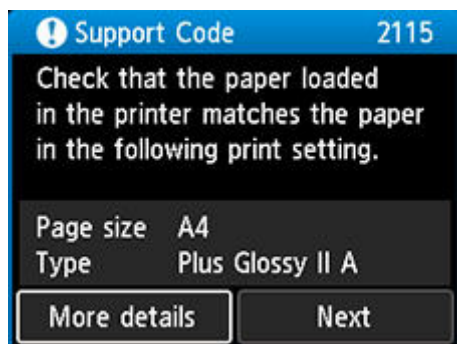
- For the appropriate combination of the paper settings specified in the printer driver and the paper information registered in the printer, refer to the following.
 - ➔ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Media Type\)](#) (Windows)
 - ➔ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Media Type\)](#) (macOS)
 - ➔ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Paper Size\)](#) (Windows)
 - ➔ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Paper Size\)](#) (macOS)
- For how to register paper information in the printer, refer to the following.
 - ➔ [Register Paper Information](#)

For example, if the paper settings specified when printing differ from the paper information for the manual feed tray registered in the printer, the following message is displayed on the printer's LCD.

- Paper settings specified on the printer driver when printing:
 Paper size: **A4**
 Paper type: **Photo Paper Plus Glossy II A**
- Paper information for the manual feed tray registered in the printer:
 Paper size: **A3**
 Paper type: **Plus Glossy II A**

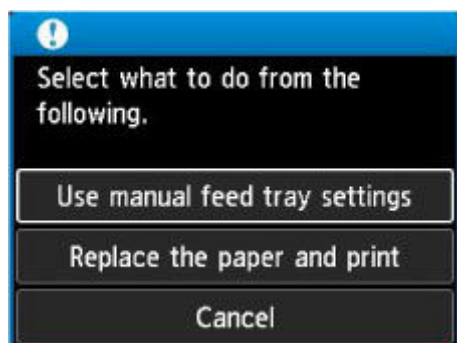


When you press the printer's **OK** button, the paper settings specified when printing are displayed on the LCD.



What to Do

Select **Next** using the ◀▶ buttons and press the printer's **OK** button to display the screen below.



Select the appropriate action using the ▲▼ buttons and press the printer's **OK** button.

▶▶▶ Note

- Depending on settings, some of the options below may not appear.

Use manual feed tray settings

Select this option to print on the loaded paper with the paper settings specified when printing.

For example, when the paper size specified at printing is A4 and the paper information for the manual feed tray is registered as A3, select this option to print on A3 paper loaded in the manual feed tray with the A4 setting.

Replace the paper and print

Select this option to print after changing the paper in the manual feed tray.

For example, when the paper size specified at printing is A4 and the paper information for the manual feed tray is registered as A3, select this option to print after replacing the paper in the manual feed tray with A4 paper.

After changing the paper, the paper information registration screen for the manual feed tray appears. Register the paper information in the printer according to the loaded paper.

▶▶▶ Note

- If you do not know the paper size and paper type to be loaded in the manual feed tray, press the printer's **Back** button. The paper size and paper type are displayed.
- For the appropriate combination of the paper settings specified in the printer driver and the paper information registered in the printer, refer to the following.

➡ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Media Type\)](#) (Windows)

- ➡ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Media Type\)](#) (macOS)
- ➡ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Paper Size\)](#) (Windows)
- ➡ [Paper Settings on the Printer Driver and the Printer \(Paper Size\)](#) (macOS)

Cancel

Cancels printing.

Select this option when you want to change the paper settings specified at printing. Change the paper settings and retry printing.

➤➤ Note

- To suppress the misprint prevention message, change the setting as described below. When you suppress the message, the printer uses the paper settings specified at printing, regardless of whether the paper loaded in the manual feed tray matches the paper settings.
 - To change whether to display a misprint prevention message when printing without using the printer driver:
 - ➡ [Paper-related settings](#)
 - To change whether to display a misprint prevention message when printing using the printer driver:
 - ➡ [Changing the Printer Operation Mode](#) (Windows)
 - ➡ [Changing the Printer Operation Mode](#) (macOS)

4103

Cause

Cannot perform printing with current print settings.

What to Do

Press the printer's **Stop** button to cancel printing.

Change the print settings specified when printing and retry printing.

Cause

Printer error has occurred.

What to Do

If you are printing, press the printer's **Stop** button to cancel printing, then turn off the printer.

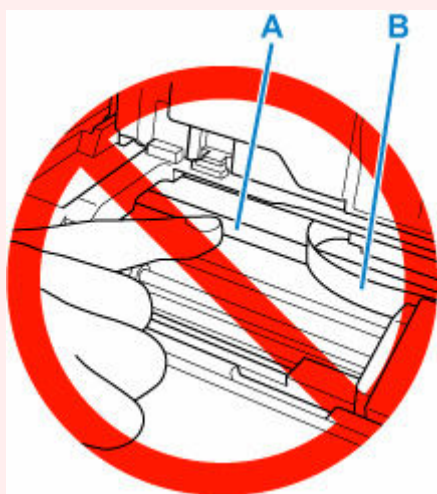
Check the following:

- Make sure print head holder motion is not impeded by protective materials for securing the print head holder, jammed paper, etc.

Remove any impediment.

»» Important

- When clearing an impediment to print head holder motion, be careful not to touch clear film (A) or white belt (B).



If you soil or scratch this part by touching it with paper or your hand, it could damage the printer.

- Make sure the ink tanks are properly installed.

Press ink tanks until they click into place.

Turn the printer back on.

If this does not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

5200

Cause

Printer error has occurred.

What to Do

Turn off the printer and unplug it.

After a while, plug in the printer again and turn it back on.

If this does not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

5B00

Cause

Printer error has occurred.

What to Do

Contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

Note

- In the case of warnings or errors caused by remaining ink levels, the printer cannot print.

6000

Cause

Printer error has occurred.

What to Do

Turn off the printer and unplug it.

Plug in the printer again and turn it back on.

If this does not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.

C000

Cause

Printer error has occurred.

What to Do

Turn off the printer and unplug it.

Plug in the printer again and turn it back on.

If this does not solve the problem, contact your nearest Canon service center to request a repair.